

# NATAL ASTROLOGY

## ***LESSON I***

Introduction  
Study Plan  
Astrology Defined and Defended  
Basic Theory  
The Zodiac  
The Signs and the Human Body  
What is a Horoscope?  
The Sun and Us  
The Moon and Us

## ***LESSON II***

Early Observations  
Early Christian Era  
Astrology in the Middle Ages  
The Renaissance  
Modern Astrological Thought  
Astrology Today

## ***LESSON III***

Reviewing the Signs  
Houses  
The Sun Sign  
Signs and the Elements  
Cardinal, Fixed and Mutable Signs  
Character Traits  
Significance of the Houses

## ***LESSON IV***

Aries  
Taurus  
Gemini  
Cancer  
Leo  
Virgo

## ***LESSON V***

Libra  
Scorpio  
Sagittarius  
Capricorn  
Aquarius

Pisces

## ***LESSON VI***

History of the Heavens  
Sun  
The Moon  
Venus  
Mercury  
Mars  
Jupiter  
Saturn  
Uranus  
Neptune  
Pluto

## ***LESSON VII***

The First House  
The Second House  
The Third House  
The Fourth House  
The Fifth House  
The Sixth House  
The Seventh House  
The Eighth House  
The Ninth House  
The Tenth House  
The Eleventh House  
The Twelfth House

## ***LESSON VIII***

Square or Cross  
Cross of Progress  
Cross of Matter  
Cross of Reason  
Elements  
The Element of Fire  
The Element of Earth  
The Element of Air  
The Element of Water  
Planetary Dignities, Exaltations, and Falls  
Exaltations and Falls (explanation)

## ***LESSON IX***

Moon in the Signs

The Sun in the Signs  
Mercury in the Signs  
Venus in the Signs  
Mars in the Signs

#### ***LESSON X***

Jupiter in the Signs  
Saturn in the Signs  
Uranus in the Signs  
Neptune in the Signs  
Pluto in the Signs

#### ***LESSON XI***

Planets in the First House  
Planets in the Second House  
Planets in the Third House  
Planets in the Fourth House  
Planets in the Fifth House  
Planets in the Sixth House

#### ***LESSON XII***

Planets in the Seventh House  
Planets in the Eighth House  
Planets in the Ninth House  
Planets in the Tenth House  
Planets in the Eleventh House  
Planets in the Twelfth House

#### ***LESSON XIII***

Ascending Signs and Their Decans In The  
First House  
Signs in the 2nd House  
Signs in the 3rd House  
Signs in the 4th House

#### ***LESSON XIV***

Signs in the 5th House  
Signs in the 6th House  
Signs in the 7th House  
Signs in the 8th House  
Signs in the 9th House  
Signs in the 10th House  
Signs in the 11th House  
Signs in the 12th House

#### ***LESSON XV***

Conjunction  
Aspect Interpretation Chart  
The Opposition  
The Trine Aspect  
The Square Aspect  
A Summary of All Aspects  
Aspect Interpretation Chart (summary)  
Terms You Must Know  
Benefic and Malefic

#### ***LESSON XVI***

Local Mean Time  
Standard Time  
Some Simple Exercises in Converting  
Standard Time to Local Mean Time  
Foreign Standard Time  
Places in the Western Hemisphere  
Some Exercises to obtain Foreign Local  
Mean Time  
Daylight Savings Time  
Sample Chart Erection (computations for  
zodiacal positions)

#### ***LESSON XVII***

Stationary and Retrograde  
The Moon's Nodes  
The Part of Fortune  
Sample Chart Erection, cont.  
(computations for planetary positions)  
Interception  
Counter-Clockwise Motion of the Planets  
What is a Parallel?

#### ***LESSON XVIII***

Consideration of Sun Sign (nativity  
delineation)  
Consideration of the Moon Sign (nativity  
delineation)  
Consideration of Ascendant Sign (nativity  
delineation)

#### ***LESSON XIX***

The Houses of the Zodiac

House Delineation (nativity delineation, cont.)

Elemental Considerations (nativity delineation, cont.)

### *LESSON XX*

Computations for Progressions

### *LESSON XXI*

Progressed Aspects

Transits

Procedural Steps for Delineation of a Progression

Geocentric Period of Planetary Transits through the Zodiacal Signs

Solar Periods

Adverse Solar Periods Each Year

Good Solar Periods Each Year

Progressed Moon

### *LESSON XXII*

The Progression of the Ascendant

Progressed Chart Rulership Analysis

Transits

Transits through the House

Transits of Mercury, Venus

Transits of Mars

Transits of Jupiter

Transits of Saturn

Transits of Uranus, Neptune, and Pluto

Business Procedures

Professional Conduct

To top of page

## ASTROLOGY

### *LESSON NO. I*

#### I. Introduction

Astrology is a science – not an orthodox, material one – but a science that is based on centuries of observation and thought. In order to learn astrology, you will have to study, think, ponder and study some more.

Astrology is like many other sciences. It is not difficult, but it takes time and patience to learn the accumulated knowledge of thousands of years. Do not despair, the rewards will be great. You will find, as you progress through the course, a rising sense of personal worth and accomplishment, a feeling that – perhaps for the first time – the world has meaning and value. You will discover that there is much more to the sun than just having a place in it. And you will know why.

#### II. Study Plan

Proper study should be planned. The stars may have planned your destiny, but they're not going to tell you when and how to study. Pick a specific time of day and adhere to it. Tell yourself you are going to devote so many hours – at least one – each day to this course, come what may. Be realistic, too. Don't, for example, tell yourself that you're going to get up an hour early each day and study if you know that you just can't do it. And don't plan on studying on Friday and Saturday nights if you know you will want to go out. Make a plan you know you can follow. If you do, you won't "cut class" and get discouraged.

Materials: Fortunately, astrology doesn't require a lot of expensive tools or gadgets. Your brain is the main tool and you will have to use it a lot. There are certain charts which you will need in future lessons. You will need pencils, pens, a ruler, protractor, and compass – the kind that you can draw circles with.

A stock market analyst is contemplating advising a client on the purchase of a well known stock. The analyst takes the firm's financial information down from the shelf and studies the tables. He then makes careful notes of the time and place the company was incorporated and he figures out the firm's astrological chart. He will also do the same with the charts of the principal's in the firm. Last, he looks over a quarterly news letter that gives an overall picture of the Dow Jones stocks for the next few months. Then he makes his decision.

A psychiatrist expectantly awaits a patient who has been threatening suicide. The analyst must be especially cautious this session because he is certain that if the patient is seriously contemplating suicide he will attempt the act within the next week. This crucial period of the person's life is discerned not from what the patient says but strictly from what an Astrologer

has read in the patient's horoscope. The psychiatrist has carefully consulted the Astrologer and is basing his professional opinion on what the patient's horoscope holds.

A young couple have decided that they are serious enough to entertain the plans for matrimony. They realize that the time and date will be the most important time of their lives. They consult a well known reliable Astrologer and after erecting and comparing their charts he advises them on the most favorable time to commence their marriage.

The potential uses for Astrology are endless. Once you have mastered the intricacies of Astrology you will be equipped to offer people assistance with every single move they make. The beauty of the astrological method is swiftly gaining influence.

Where to Study: You don't need any special place to study but it is important to select a place where you can have peace and quiet. You will have to do some solid thinking, and interruptions and noise will certainly not be conducive to that. You should have a desk or a table, at least where you can lay out your work and charts that demonstrate the meanderings of the planets.

Got everything? Then let's get started!

### III. Astrology Defined and Defended

The word "astrology" comes ultimately from two Greek words – "astron" meaning "star" and "logos" meaning "discourse." Merriam-Webster defines it as "1. Practical astronomy. 2. The pseudo science which treats of the influences of the stars upon human affairs, and of foretelling terrestrial events by their positions and aspects."

Now, Merriam-Webster makes good dictionaries and the definition is a good one except for one word "pseudo." That word is defined in the same dictionary as "sham; feigned; spurious."

Let's tackle this problem right away because you're going to hear the same thing from some of your relatives and friends.

From the time of the Industrial Revolution, with its technological focus on man, it has been regarded as smart and fashionable to think of anything that was not materialistic in outlook as "sham; feigned; spurious." Science would answer all man's questions and cure all his problems. Well, it hasn't happened and it never will.

It is true that astrology is not as much of a slave of the "scientific method" as physics and chemistry are. It is also true that astrology has more than its fair share of quacks and charlatans and that there were many dark years when astrology was in disrepute. It was during those years that Merriam Webster and others casually referred to astrology as being "pseudo," as if there wasn't even another side to the story.

All that has changed, however, and it is certain that dictionaries will delete the prejudicial "pseudo" from the definition in forthcoming editions. Let's look at the facts.

The respected science of astronomy was at one time a branch of astrology, which was broken down into four divisions:

1. Natural Astrology: The study of the motion of the heavenly bodies and their effects upon earth such as earthquakes) weather, etc.
2. Judicial Astrology: Nations and governments as they are affected by celestial bodies.
3. Genethliacal Astrology: Pertaining to birth or "genesis."
4. Horary Astrology: Applying astrology to some specific question of the moment – of the "hour" ("hora" is Latin for "hour")

Natural Astrology became Astronomy while Judicial and Horary Astrology have become specialities of certain astrologers. Genethliacal has blossomed into the more popular and easier-to-pronounce "Natal Astrology". This course covers all branches but concentrates on Natal.

Astronomy isn't the only science connected with astrology. Hippocrates, the founder of medical science and author of the famous physicians' oath, was an astrologer. Copernicus learned his basic science at an astrology school founded by the King of Poland. Ptolemy and Sir Isaac Newton were astrologers. Mark Twain estimated the period in which his own death might occur by astrology, and it did.

In our day there has been a tremendous rebirth of interest in – and corresponding respect for – astrology. Our space program verified many of the cosmobiological claims of astrology. The discovery of electro-magnetic forces within the human body and the same forces in the atmosphere have revived "respectable" scientific theories that there may be a connection between the forces in our bodies and the influences of the heavenly bodies. After all, our bodies are 80% water. If the moon can influence the water in the ocean, why not in our bodies? Sunspots cause changes in the weather, why not in us? The sun warms vast bodies of water and, as we all know, the human body is mostly water.

It has recently been determined that an electric charge sent into a human cell will be emitted in a distinct wave pattern. Each human cell is 80% water. They are all being continuously exposed to electric waves from outer space as well as the moon and the sun. Current research shows that a cancerous cell emits a different wave pattern than a healthy cell!

A two year study by the: police, hospitals and the University of Pennsylvania in Philadelphia, observed human reactions to the phases of the moon. Part of the report states: "Crime against the person seem to increase as the night of the Full Moon draws near. People whose anti-social behavior has psychotic roots (firebugs, kleptomaniacs and homicidal alcoholics) seem to go on a rampage as the Moon turns full, and remember the moon is only refracting sunlight to the earth when we are on the dark side of the sun. They calm down when the Moon begins to crescent."

A Northwestern University professor performed an extremely interesting and now well known experiment showing the moon's influence on oysters. Dr. Frank Brown, a biologist, transferred a shipment of oysters from New Haven, Conn. to Evanston, Ill., where he immersed them in a tank of sea water. For two weeks they opened and closed their shells in rhythm with the tides at New Haven. Then a strange thing happened, in spite of the fact that the nearest ocean was 500 miles away, the oysters began to open and close in time to the tides that would have existed if there were an ocean in Illinois. Since there were no actual tides in Illinois, it was clear that the moon, itself caused the oysters to react in this manner. It is not in the province of astrology to explain why this happened. The astrologer says that the moon had an effect upon the oysters and that is all. The moon is just one of the celestial bodies, and oysters are living organisms.

Astrology is gaining worldwide acceptance and from all indications this new found interest in the Astrological method will continue to increase. Surprisingly, much of this new found interest is among Europeans who once would have mocked the notion that celestial bodies influence human affairs.

The study of the stars as a guide to behavior, personality and a way of life is receiving its most serious appraisal since it was swept off the shelf of respectable divisions of learning, during the first few hundred years A.D. Not long ago, Astrology was strictly a study for the untutored and anyone with a lot of spare time on their hands. Now, however, it has attracted many educated people and it is even a subject of university debate.

Most striking is that thousands of well educated Frenchmen, Germans and other Europeans regularly consult Astrologers or cast their own horoscopes without displaying the least bit of sheepishness about admitting it. France's president, Georges Pompidou readily confessed at a recent press conference that he follows the prophecies of his country's most renowned Astrologer, Madame Solei, with deep interest. At least one prominent French politician is reliably said to consult his Astrologer before making important public speeches.

That the various parts of the universe as well as earth itself influence human behavior is among mankind's oldest beliefs. Until nearly the middle of the 17th Century, it easily commanded as much prestige as the natural sciences. From the time of Sir Isaac Newton, however, the rapid development of natural science coupled with its pretensions of possessing the exclusive key to "truth" condemned Astrology to 500 years of intellectual stagnancy. Yet, we feel that Astrology has answers which the physical sciences do not. This is a direct cause of the now obvious limitations of these physical sciences. They evidently do not answer all the questions which perplex man. Astrology, more than any other science, explains the basic nature of the Universe and man's part in it. The questions Why? and What For? can effectively be answered only through Astrology. No other science seeks to explain the nature of human life in such a realistic way. Astrology is easily the most powerful tool for measuring any man's character and emotional constitution.

It is high time that man should realize what a tremendous help Astrology can be to create a better understanding among men whether at the individual level, the industrial level or most importantly at the international political level where we find the horrible seeds of

genocide. It is our intention in this course to help to spread the true value of Astrology. We can train and unite competent Astrologers throughout the world and together we can reduce the elements causing riots, wars, revolutions, and other major and minor unfortunate misunderstandings among men. We can do this because Astrology teaches us not only to analyze ourselves but also to understand the behavior of our fellow man in its entirety. Let us now look at the basic principles behind Astrology. We are establishing Astro centers, birth information centers which will not only guide man and woman in this profound phase of love and life but also educate them to avoid abnormal births; to understand their offspring and one another as parts of an ever changing universe. (If you are interested in this program let us know with a short note and we will consider you for this special area). Our students are located all over the World and we intend to have centers at all locations sponsored financed and guided by our school and its alumni. The centers will also guide its clients in marriage and all other major life decisions and relations of humans to humans.

#### IV. Basic Theory

It is most difficult to summarize astrology in a few paragraphs; basic principles can be stated as follows:

1. All bodies in the Universe – the stars, the planets, the moon and the sun have effects upon earth and everything in and on it. The result of these effects is precisely what the study of Astrology is all about. Perhaps it is magnetic fields, sunspots, heat, light, or other unknown forces. We are not sure, but the effects are undeniable and they are vital life indicators.
2. Man's living organism (just as the New England oysters organism after removal to the mid-west) is affected by the stars and the other heavenly bodies. The stars (meaning all bodies of the universe, for the sake of brevity) have a continuing influence upon the life of each individual, but one of the biggest factors in his life is the position of the heavenly bodies at the time of his birth. The closer the astrologer can come to the exact minute of birth, the more accurately he can "write the horoscope."
3. An astrologer writes a horoscope by determining the position of the sun, the moon, the planets and the "houses" of the zodiac, (we will deal with the zodiac shortly.) Since no man knows the position of the heavens at the time of his own birth, the astrologer determines this from his knowledge of astronomy, and his ephemeris (Ephemeris is a book of statistics showing every position of all bodies of the universe at any given moment and place on earth) and charts. (More about ephemerides later.)
4. Once the position of the heavens at the time of birth is known with precision, the astrologer is able to determine the character, life-style, destiny and other influencing factors in a person's life. Since two people in only extreme rare situations have the same horoscope, these influences are constantly shifting. Thus, the horoscope becomes as individual as the personality. It is your own celestial "fingerprint."
5. Since a horoscope is such an individual matter, the serious student of astrology can know only the most general influences from the so-called "daily horoscopes." The continuing influence of the heavens can be determined only after the natal horoscope is erected.

## V. The Zodiac

There is a great deal of confusion in the average person's mind over the signs and the houses of the zodiac. The zodiac is a map of the heavens and is based on astronomical positions of the stars. The signs were originally named after constellations of stars, which were thought in the beginning to move through the heavens. We know now – as an astrologer named Manilius told us in the days of Julius Caesar – that the world is round and that the earth revolves, not the stars. It may be mistakenly thought that astrology contradicts known science by presuming that the heavens move around the earth. Actually, astrology knows that the sun is the center of the solar system, but places man in the center of the zodiac for convenience. It is much easier and clearer to plot the position of the universe in relation to man than vice-versa

If the student stares at the universe on a clear night, it appears that he is inside a giant sphere. ([See Illustration I](#)) We know, of course that there is a great deal more of this sphere below our horizon. Within the entire sphere lie twelve constellations of stars. Watch long enough and you will note that the stars "move" across the skies – from one "house" to another (more about "houses" later).

To demonstrate this phenomenon, if you left a camera with the lens open pointing towards the sky in the morning, you have nothing but streaks on the film showing how the stars move in a slightly curved line against the sky.

These constellations were given names by ancient astrologers and originally conformed to one constellation within each house at a given time of day. Groups of stars were thought to convey certain images, like the stars of the Big Dipper. The constellations were named after the images they presented to the astrologers. Sometimes it is difficult for us to associate these names with the constellations. The astrologers had good imaginations! Perhaps the easiest one to see is Scorpio. Its winding shape does remind the present-day stargazer of a scorpion. The constellations of the heavens and the signs of the zodiac have the same names and so they are often confused. They have identical names because their positions used to coincide approximately. In actual time, this was about the year 2000 b.c.) when the spring equinox was posited in the constellation of the Ram. Now the signs and the constellations are nearly one sign apart. Astrologers have corrected delineation records through the years so as to compensate for this change.) The spring equinox lies in the sign Aries, although it is in the constellation of the Fishes. The Astrologer uses the sign and not the constellations when he lists the various planetary positions. The signs are merely thirty degree divisions of space in the heavens and the first sign, Aries, is the first thirty degrees of space that subtends the vernal equinox. The vernal equinox is the day in Spring when day and night are equal in time. Astrologically, the equinox falls on the day when the Sun reaches the zero degree, Aries. Our signs are thus calculated from what is termed by Astrologers "the Aries ingress," meaning the time the sun enters Aries.

ZODIAC is a Greek word meaning "circle of animals." It is a group of twelve constellations forming the apparent pathway of the sun around the earth. The moon and the nine planets also follow this path. Aries, the Ram; Taurus, the Bull; Cancer, the Crab; Leo, the Lion;

Scorpius, the Scorpion; Capricornus, the Sea Goat; and Pisces, the Fishes – these seven are the constellations named for animals by the Greeks. The other five are: Virgo, the Virgin; Sagittarius, the Archer; Gemini, the Twins; Libra, the Balance; and Aquarius, the Water Bearer. The Zodiac constellations are useful in locating planets.

It is important to remember that there are twelve zodiac signs and that these revolve astrologically in a clockwise manner. They are said to rise in the Ascendant from a nine o'clock position to the Descendant, at three o'clock. ([See Illustration II](#))

The signs are as follows:

Aries	<a href="#">*March 21</a> – April 20
Taurus	April 21 – May 20
Gemini	May 21 – June 20
Cancer	June 21 – July 21
Leo	July 22 – August 21
Virgo	22 August – 21 September
Libra	September 22 – October 22
Scorpio	October 23 – November 21
Sagittarius	November 22 – December 20
Capricorn	December 21 – January 19
Aquarius	January 20 – February 18
Pisces	February 19 – March 20

*\*Note: the dates for each sign vary slightly that is, by one or two days in different years. This is because the sun ingresses and egresses the sign at a slightly different time from year to year. The dates given here are average and generally accepted.*

The above symbols are to the astrologers as the alphabet is to a writer. Actually, they are no different from symbols which are used to express numbers. When you see the number "3" you immediately envision a group of three objects of some kind. When you see a zodiac symbol, in the future, you will instantly be reminded of a certain group of stars which represent a specific place in the horoscope. Actually, the word "horoscope" means "hour pointer," so start with Aries at nine o'clock and memorize the signs in a counter-clockwise fashion around the zodiac; i.e. Taurus is at eight o'clock, Gemini at seven, etc. ([See Illustration III](#))

This is a little confusing at first, but remember again that the constellations move clockwise as we view them. Therefore, when Aries moves from nine o'clock to ten o'clock, Taurus then assumes the ascendant position at the horizon and becomes nine o'clock. Therefore, we named them backwards, so to speak. Imagine, if you will, the numbers of the

clock moving in a clockwise direction around the clock. The nine would move to ten o'clock and the eight would move up to where the nine was. As the numbers revolve clockwise, the ascendant position would read nine, eight, seven, etc., and we would be counting backwards.

### The Signs and the Human Body

There are many things to learn about the signs, but these will come later. You should know, however, that the signs also correspond to various parts of the body and that taken together the signs represent a complete human body. The bodily breakdown is as follows:

Aries	Head and face
Taurus	Neck and throat
Gemini	Arms, shoulders, hands and lungs
Cancer	Breast and stomach
Leo	Heart and spinal marrow
Virgo	Intestines
Libra	Loins and kidneys
Scorpio	Sex organs
Sagittarius	Thighs
Capricorn	Knees
Aquarius	Legs and ankles
Pisces	Feet

There is a vast amount of specialized knowledge for each of the signs, this, too, will be covered in future lessons. Remember that, even though you were born under a certain "sign", that this refers only to your Sun sign, and that everyone has a head and a foot, etc. All twelve signs are in everybody's horoscope, so try to understand and appreciate the ramifications of all the signs. Despise none, for each has its say in your destiny.

### What is a Horoscope?

A Horoscope is a map of the heavens erected for the specific purpose of determining the general life patterns of a person born at a specific time and place on the earth. Often the horoscope is confused with the solar horoscope. A solar horoscope, although somewhat useful, is not a map of the heavens at all, but simply a reading depicting solely the influence of the Sun. Since there can be only twelve solar horoscopes, it stands to reason that these cannot possibly account for the millions of different people around the world. In our course, we refer to the horoscope as a "Nativity", and the person whose data is used is termed the native. Specifically, a Nativity is a horoscope which is based on the exact birth date. It will also be referred to as a Natal Chart. The Nativity which you will be taught includes the exact

positions of all the Signs and Planets. A completely erected Nativity will contain in the neighborhood of 1,700 separate influences. Of course, there is an order of importance of the influences and you shall learn the exact order of these influences.

By our definition of a Nativity, it is imperative for us to know the exact latitude and longitude of the birth place along with the exact time and date of birth before we can erect an accurate horoscope. This exact data or chart of the heavens related to time and place, is essential before we can proceed toward any definite interpretation and judgement.

The Nativity, when intelligently read, can reveal not only the beneficial aspects of a native's life, but also the bad areas. It will indicate which departments of life the native can hope to find the most success and in many other things.

The mathematics of chart erection is a comparatively easy task for any person who can add, subtract, and multiply. The reading (we will refer to this reading as a delineation) of the chart, however, calls for the faculty of judgement, that is, the ability to deduce what is likely to happen when two or more forces are put into action. You must always be aware that nothing in this world is definite, yet there are some probabilities that are greater than others. When we judge a Nativity this is precisely what we do, we depict and define the matters with the highest degree of probability. To determine such matters requires a tremendous amount of reflection, time and consideration. Therefore you can only acquire skill in this field by a carefully constructed course of study which leads you step by step to the knowledge necessary to be a practicing astrologer. This is what we will do for you if you apply yourself and study.

## THE SUN AND US

Ever since man has looked up to the heavens he has invariably pondered the effect the Sun has on the earth. From the most ancient times people dedicated to the Sun their best sagas and mythology and built resplendent shrines in it's honor. Man no longer has to rely on intuition alone to understand that his life is directly dependant on the ever changing subtle activities of the Sun. Professor Golovanov, a Russian biophysicist, says that the new horizons of science – cosmobiology, cosmic biorhythms – are beginning to reveal patterns of solar influence, resplendent in themselves, as they shoot through the fiber of life. Much of the pioneering work on the sun's impact in earth has been carried out in Professor Golovanov's own country, Russia.

Periodically, we on earth, are treated to dazzling displays of power even though some of us are not aware of it. We can observe this incandescence on a grand scale, as abrupt, gigantic flares explode on the Sun. Colossal torrents of energy, radiation and high speed particles blown out from the Sun stream towards us to affect earth's magnetic field and atmospheric electricity. These tremendous combusting flares are related to sunspots, which are huge spots or dark areas sometimes hundreds of million of square miles in size, periodically moving across the face of the Sun. Approximately every 11 1/2 years sunspot activity reaches a peak. After years of investigation it is our contention that this sunspot activity has a direct influence on the earth and human life.

One of the first to ponder the question of sunspots was Dr. Alexander L. Chijevsky, a Russian historian. By a historian's very nature he is keenly interested in the seemingly cyclical nature of human events. Chijevsky was a bit different than most of his colleagues, as he was also curious about events on the distant Sun – namely sunspots. Eventually, he worked out a vast canvas of correlation (concerning the years 500 B.C. to 1900 A.D. inclusive) demonstrating that wars, revolutions, political unrest, migrations and epidemics all correlated with years of high sunspot activity.

According to Golovanov, "This marks the first time that a large amount of empirical data offering evidence of the inseparable unity of the solar-terrestrial mechanism was demonstrated to the scientific community."

By the beginning of the 1930's, Dr. Chijevsky commenced a delicate investigation concerning the effects of the sun's radiation on the rhythms of nature. He discovered that outbreaks of disease among plants, animals or humans are examples of problems that develop with the changing cycling rhythm of the Sun. He ascertained that cholera, diphtheria, and typhoid all grow more virulent as the sun grows more active.

Dr. Chijevsky soon found that other activities intensified as the solar eruptions increased. Experimentally he showed that intensive reproduction among certain bacteria peaked with the highs in solar activity.

According to these fantastic statistics compiled by Dr. Chijevsky the sun's activities facilitate political upheaval. A familiar example would be the spectacular disturbances on the Sun in 1917. There were outer signs of tremendous nuclear processes within raging to extreme heights. At the same time, in Russia, revolution burst into the open to offset a century old order. Eruptions on the Sun do not necessarily cause a man to rush out and attempt an overthrow of his government. Yet, if unjust conditions should happen to exist they are incensed by the torrent of radiations from the Sun which incite events and confuse the leaders of the world.

Dr. Chijevsky's voluminous work was published in the uncertain decades following the Revolution. The idea that something as far away as the Sun would exert an influence on life on earth was enough to disturb the narrow-minded Marxists of the day. The vicious winnowing of the great Soviet purges swept with intensely mounting energy from 1927 to 1939 – years of greatest activity for sunspots. Through the ignorance and foolishness of the Soviet leaders, Dr. Chijevsky was exiled and sentenced to Siberia. This incredibly brilliant man was to die free, but he was not to have more than a few years of life out of confinement. Finally with Krushchev firmly in power Chijevsky emerged, fully rehabilitated by the state.

## THE MOON AND US

There are many concrete reasons to believe that the Moon actually affects human beings. A careful consideration will demonstrate one of the more obvious reasons. The ancients and unsophisticated people throughout the centuries ascribed to the Moon's influence.

Scientists, however, lacked techniques and concepts to consider any lunar weather influence until fairly recently. Svante Arrhenius, a Nobel laureate in chemistry, introduced the new scientific look concerning the Moon's influence on weather around the turn of the century when he discovered a lunar effect on the aurora borealis. He also found that thunderstorms are directly connected to the Moon. More intense storms seem to occur during the waning of the Moon than during the waxing. It is quite apparent that ordinary rainfall is also Moon related. A sixty two year study of meteorological records in the United States, beginning with 1900, uncovered excellent evidence that precipitation in North America peaks three days after the new full Moon. There is generally a good deal less rain or snow during the second and fourth weeks of the lunar month.

Various other modern inquiries have demonstrated that the angles of the Moon and its tidal attraction of earth's atmosphere variously affect our weather. It is universally known and accepted that weather has a distinct affect on human ills. Amateur weather predictors who note their rheumatic aches are legendary and usually right. Medical climatology has uncovered that many other health problems – hemorrhages, colic, migraines, angina – can be correlated to weather. Intensive European investigations have shown that thunderstorms can change your sense of taste and cause pain in an amputee's "phantom limb". New weather fronts can also be related to a rise of infection and a rise in the death rate. These fronts can tend to slow down reaction time; one German investigation was even able to link a surge in Hamburg traffic accidents with a change of weather.

Aside from the obvious Moon effects on the weather, the Moon influences the electrically charged atoms in our atmosphere. Positive ions in atmosphere have a noxious effect mentally and physically. The stuffy, headachy, faint feeling that comes in a overcrowded, smoky room is caused by an excess of positive ions. Negative ions, however, are an upbeat for most people, and negative ionization is already used medically, particularly in the Soviet Union, to speed up the healing of wounds and to relieve mental and physical fatigue. One American investigation concluded that negative ions slowed down the alpha brain rhythm and brought a feeling of release in people. The full Moon brings more positive and the waning Moon more negative ions.

A team of psychiatrists researchers have recently discovered that outbreaks of murder may be triggered by the Moon tugging at "biological tides" inside the human body.

Dr. Arnold L. Lieber, a senior resident in psychiatry at the University of Miami's medical school, said that a two year study has established a scientifically sound relationship between phases of the Moon and the murder rate in Dade County. Lieber said a chart of Miami area homicides over a 15 year period plotted according to the moon phases looked remarkably like a chart of ocean tides. Using computer programs, Lieber and Dr. Carolyn B. Sherin of the University of Miami analyzed nearly 1900 murders that occurred between 1956 and 1970. The data revealed that the county's murder rate began to rise about 24 hours before the full moon, reached a peak at full moon, then dropped back before climbing again to a secondary peak at the new Moon.

The two researchers also examined more than 2,000 homicides over a 13 year period in Cleveland. Here again there were similar peaks near the new and full Moon.

Lieber says that the gravitational pull of the Moon is enough to touch off emotional instability. He says that this instability is reflected in the murder rate, which he terms a reliable measure of its influence on the general population.

Lieber has said that the physical make up of the body itself has helped him to turn to the concept of "biological tides" to explain the phenomenon. The body is a microism compromising essentially the same elements and in similar proportions as the earth's surface, 70% – 80% water and 20% – 30% minerals. It is pure folly to suggest that the Moon influences the tides of the earth and not the tides of our bodies.

### Conclusion

Astrology is a vast and intricate field of study, and this first lesson has tried to give you a few basic and general ideas about this science. Future lessons will delve into the implications of each sign, each house, each planet – and the combinations in minute detail. For the moment, you will have learned enough if you have mastered the overall theory of astrology, the twelve signs and their relationship to the human body.

In our method of teaching we proceed from the known to the unknown. We must very carefully build fact upon fact with each one providing the base for the next. There is nothing mysterious or magical about Astrology, in fact it is so logical and understandable that you will be amazed. We must proceed cautiously, because each part of your development as an Astrologer is integral and it must be understood.

The longer and deeper you delve into the study of Astrology the more interesting and enlightening it will become. Aside from the Nativities and predictions, Astrology has a tremendous significance in your own life. You will be able to consider the events of your life in a more intelligent matter because you will be able to understand and explain the forces which bring about the events. As your development continues, your mind will mature astrologically and you will constantly search for the reason why things happen. You will eventually understand the principles behind the cause and effect relationship and for this reason you will become less impatient with life. When you can understand the forces that are operating, you can cope better with the problems of life. You will be able to seize opportunity at the right moment. You will discover that when one line of action is not propitious, another line of action may be feasible.

You should approach Astrology as a philosophy, that explains life and its hardships and happiness, and not merely as a predictive science. Astrology will be the searchlight and reveal your true complete self to you. You will discover the wealth of your being. Here, you will find many qualities that you have never used. Astrology will help you, not only to set your qualities in motion, but also to control them so that your life will be more complete, purposeful and more useful. You will learn why your fellow man acts as he does. More important you will be able to help him which will give you profound feeling of satisfaction.

One of my students so aptly put it when she said "Again we return to the basics in Astrology. First, looking at what we can prove, we find that the magnetic forces of the Moon cause our tides. It has also been scientifically proven that Sun Spots affect our weather. Further data has been gathered to show that the movements of the planets cause the Sun Spots. Scientists are now cognizant of the fact that the human body contains electricity and magnetism. The logical explanation of our galaxy and its orbit is based on magnetism and electricity.

By the positions of the planets at the time of our birth we find electro-magnetic forces which create permanent impulses in our bodies. Although some scholars believe this should be considered at the time of conception, we hold that a child in a mother's body is living on his mother's impulses until that point of independent life. The electro-magnetic forces at that time create the pattern of impulses that mostly affect him throughout his life, tempered by variations in these impulses as the universe around him changes."

## ***LESSON II***

### Introduction

Again, congratulations. Now that you have passed the exam in lesson one, you are ready for a concise lesson in the history of astrology. One important thing in this and all the lessons – you will come across words you do not know – look them up. You will thereby develop your vocabulary for later use as an astrologer.

The term "prehistoric" is literally a misnomer. How can anyone possibly relate the history of something which existed before history itself? Nonetheless, we have to depend on "prehistoric history" to determine the origins of astrology. Like many other ancient studies, arts and crafts, astrology existed long before anyone sat down and recorded the thoughts of astrologers "for the record."

That astrology was one of the world's most ancient studies is shown by the astrological symbols which are the same today as on the ancient caves, tombs and pyramids. Mesopotamian tradition places the first primitive zodiac somewhere between 8000 and 6000 B.C.!! Not only is astrology a universal language today but a universal language connecting all races and all nations back through centuries of history.

Actually the story of man's quest for an understanding of the heavens begins long before the time records were written. There exists very little doubt that astrology is the father of all science. It is perfectly logical to assume that astrologers were the first wise men in even the most primitive of civilizations. Pinpointing the exact beginning of astrology is pure folly because as we have already said, it is perfectly feasible that astrology is older than man himself. Surely the conceptual method of astrology is as old as the universe itself and the evidences of it on life, as we know it must be as old as that life itself. When the Sun goes into total or partial eclipse, animals become restless and anxious; they seem very cognizant of some sort of imminent danger. The beautiful music of the birds ceases and apes leave their trees to band together for mutual protection. (This calls to light an amazing branch of astrology about which there has been very little published. We are presently conducting an in-depth investigation into astrology of creatures because we feel so strongly that the answers to the problems facing all species are inherent within the zodiac.)

### Early Observations

The easiest method for us to discover the reason why ancient astrologers occupied such a respected position in even the earliest of civilizations, is to put ourselves in their places. For primitive man, the sky was lavished with marvelous and awesome wonders. We must make an effort to imagine the way of life of the days when men wandered in nomadic tribes over the expanse of the Near East and subsisted from the land around them. Try and imagine yourself in that prehistoric world and let the bare sensory experience of that world be your ultimate source of knowledge.

The first and most evident phenomena you would notice is the alarming alternation between night and day. It is light and warm during the day but colder and dark at night. There is a great bright ball in the sky which appears and disappears coinciding with the periods of light and dark. Daylight ends when the "thing" reaches a direction opposite to that from which it started. Like anything else you must give it a name and you call it the "Sun".

Clearly, it is an object of the most immense power. It provides you with warmth and daylight and, in addition, is the brightest of all the objects which shine down from above. At night, you can notice that the situation is very different. The Sun is no longer visible, yet, there are numerous specks of light which illuminate the heavens. These you call stars, and they seem to appear in the same places night after night.

However, there are some stars that do not fit into these patterns because they never really stay still in the sky but continually weave and wander in and out among the rest. These stars seem to wander and have their own lives quite independent of the other stars that move around the sky together. Because of their very distinct motion, you refer to them as "the wanderers."

At night there is another body, seeming to take the place of the Sun, which appears regularly. Similar to the Sun it starts its journey from one side of the Earth and ends up on the other. It is most confusing because it continually changes its shape. Although it does not keep us warm, it does provide us light at night and seems to have a peculiar effect on the bodies of water which surround us. Again you must find a name for it, and you come up with the word "Moon."

As you and your contemporaries soon discovered, your most obvious need was for some sort of a calendar to guide your daily actions. It was the changing shape of the Moon which provided you with the most satisfactory answer, for the 29 1/2 day interval between one new moon and the next was neither too long nor too short. It was simple to remember and easy for counting long periods of time. The use of the Moon's phases as a calendar was extremely valuable for night expeditions for it told when to expect bright nights and when to expect dark ones. The earliest human civilizations relied on herding, farming, fishing, or hunting and were at the whim of the vagaries of nature. The creation of the calendar limited natural crop disasters for it taught man to plant at the most opportune time. The actual definition of the Sun and Moon and the creation of the calendar produced Man's first astrological knowledge. The door was opened and what was to follow can only be properly labeled wisdom.

If a person delves into the history of any of the great civilizations of mankind, he finds that almost all of the early writings reflect an uncritical belief in the influence of the stars and extra-celestial beings upon the behavior of mankind, the animal and plant kingdom. Just as all the prehistoric civilizations independently came to an acceptance of the idea of some order of Supreme Being, primitive man also came to remarkably similar beliefs regarding the influence of the heavenly bodies upon man.

The first chapter of Genesis contains references to the zodiac, although the account is incomplete. Some astrological historians speculate that the zodiacal cycle may have been complete in the original Genesis, but that the various translators did not understand the significance and so were unable to properly turn the signs into their native tongues.

When the Assyrian King Ashurbanipal (669–626 B.C.) came into power at Nineveh, he decided to add to the collection of the royal library. Some of his contributions were clay tablets which described the astrology of the ancient Babylonians, who in turn had borrowed the substance from their Sumerian invaders. A series of the clay tablets was attributed to Sargon I, King of Agade (3000 B.C.), who wrote what has been called The Day of Bel.

Recently, some clay tablets were unearthed near the site of Babylon which show that the Babylonians knew an astoundingly large amount of early astrology, dating as far back as perhaps to 8000 B.C.

But it was not only in the primeval origins of the Tigris and Euphrates, the cradle of life, so to speak, that ancient evidence is found. All around the Mediterranean Sea, early artifacts show the existence of astrology. Even more mysterious is the fact that the ancient Chinese, Hindu, Mayan and Aztec cultures show extensive use of astrological signs and methods. This points up a most remarkable fact. If you met a reasonably intelligent man from the other side of the world, e.g. China – and you did not know a word of his language nor he one word of yours, – you both would have an immediate language through which you could relate to one another – the signs of the zodiac! The language of Astrology naturally transcends all spoken languages. It is truly the universal language of all mankind. (See [Illustration I](#), Arabian Zodiac of the Middle Ages.).

One of the more ironic anthropological finds was the Mexican calendar stone, which was discovered early in Mexican history by a group of unknowing people who promptly re-buried it. It was not until centuries later that the stone was rediscovered. Its earlier finders did not understand the astrological significance of the stone's markings and they feared what they did not understand.

Other theorists place the beginnings of astrology in such fabled places as Atlantis and Lemuria. Although many poets and philosophers have talked of Atlantis and Lemuria (or "Mu," for short), there has never been any exact proof that they existed.

### Early Christian Era

Mesopotamian culture is believed to be the basis for astrological thought in the Western world, although there have been many significant contributions from the Orient. Like other arts and sciences, astrology is believed to have spread via the trade routes from Babylon to Egypt, from Egypt to Greece and from ancient Greece to the Roman Empire.

That astrology had a great place in the lives of the ancients is indisputable. One of the earliest Roman books we know of is the Astronomicon, a first century A.D. poem by Marcus Manilius. Ptolemy, the great mathematician and astrologer of the second century A.D., wrote

Four Books on the Influence of the Stars, or Tetrabiblos in Latin. Shakespeare's plays, which are based on early writings such as Plutarch's Lives, are replete with references to the respect accorded astrological predictions. ("Beware the Ides of March," as one well known example.)

At the same time that Ptolemy was summarizing the astrological knowledge that had been accumulating for centuries, counter-attacks on these beliefs were being prepared in various quarters both Pagan and Christian. The most powerful of these attacks came from the Christian apologists who were then finding their voices. Usually, the Christians simply turned the tables on their attackers rejecting necromancy, oracles, divination, augury, and astrology, all as being inventions of demons. The Christians were not opposed to astrology because it was unscientific, but because it was, they thought, immoral. It is interesting to note that the majority of Christians also tended to think that science was immoral too.

St. Augustine had a tremendous influence on the development of Christianity, which implies that he was one of the principal molders of the world in which we live. His arguments against Astrology were among the best known in the Middle Ages. Although his arguments were so vehement, he readily admits in his "CONFESSIONS" that he was turned from astrology not by argument but by hearing that a certain wealthy landowner had been born at precisely the same moment as a wretched slave on his estate.

Earlier in the 4th century there was a certain aristocratic Roman intellectual and Christian who wrote a massive defense of astrology that is still today regarded as an astrological classic. This particular writer, Julius Firmicus Maternus, held that because the astrologer meditates between human soul and celestial being, he must lead a pure and austere life. The human soul itself is a spark of that divine mind that exerts its influence through the stars. Therefore, Firmicus concluded astrology is a useful and elevated pursuit; its truth can be tested experimentally.

Aside from Firmicus, there were some less well-known writers who appear to be looking backward, but who in fact, would have been very much at home in Europe a thousand years later. Solinus who wrote a hodgepodge geography that was much used in the middle ages was interested in occult medicine. He sometimes refers to the discipline of the stars and repeats from earlier writers a description of the horoscope of the city of Rome itself. This particular retrospective horoscope apparently revealed that Rome's first foundation stone was laid by Romulus on the eleventh day of the Halends of May between the second and third hours when Jupiter was in Pisces, the Sun in Taurus, the Moon in Libra, and the other four planets in Scorpio.

### Astrology in the Middle Ages

The zodiac, the Greek word meaning "circle of animals," at this time had been meticulously categorized by careful observation into twelve distinct symbols which described the particular terrestrial situation when the Sun was in that part of the sky.

The sign Aries, then, the Ram, describes in its sudden rush, the initiate appearance of the spring corn, while Taurus, the Bull, denotes the gathering charge and the natural growth of plants and mating of animals. Gemini, symbolized by the Twins, expresses the proliferations and interconnection of the ecological pyramid. When the Sun is in the sign Cancer, the sign of the Crab, nature invariably seems to be full of liquid succulence, each plant and animal charged with the sap of life. At high summer Leo the Lion's strength and mane demonstrates the Sun's fiery power. Leo precedes Virgo which symbolizes the harvest and the seed for next year's season. The sign of Libra, the sign of the scales of balance, which signals the autumnal equinox, describes the process by which summer's heat becomes milder before the cooling off decay process of nature transforms into the sign of death in Scorpio. Sagittarius brings the year to a period of serious reflection, implied by the archer looking back as he gallops towards the winter solstice. The fish-goat sign of Capricorn denotes the transition point from the old to the new as the sun begins to climb again. The man pouring water to the ground, symbolized in the sign Aquarius, is the time of the winter rains, and the Fishes, Pisces, indicate the living but unseen movements beneath the soaking earth which precede Aries and the first day of spring, the commencement of the cycle.

Like other branches of knowledge, there was little progress in astrology during the Dark Ages. Astrology itself seemed to have vanished from western consciousness. Yet, in the tenth century, the civilization of the West was reawakened to the mysteries of astrology because of the emergence of Arabic translations that had been the only survivors of the Hebrew, Greek and Latin originals.

At any rate, the discovery of the Arabic manuscripts began a new era of astrological interest culminating with the masterly works of Abelard of Bath, who discussed the achievements of the East in regard to culture and science in comparison with the stagnant learning of the West. Abelard pointed out the influence of the planets on nations, and dovetailed his astrological wisdom with the sciences of mathematics and animal behavior. He was also an alchemist, a scientist who tried to turn base metals into gold. Although their experiments were doomed to failure, the alchemists paved the way for other modern sciences.

From the time of Abelard to the twelfth century, the original learning of the West was returned to it via Arabic translations, which added their own unique brand of eastern wisdom in passing. As the reawakening progressed, scholars demanded more and more knowledge, and there was a great rebirth of mathematics, astronomy, astrology and the experimental sciences.

The great awakening of knowledge led, of course, to many spectacular scholarly arguments, with the usual extremism on all sides. Although most of the people of the time were comfortable with both astrology and religion, scholars were fond of trying to prove that one or the other was "better" or even the "only" true knowledge. This began a division that exists to our day, with people erroneously assuming that if you believe in astrology, you can't believe in God and vice-versa.

In the twelfth century, some scholars contended that astrology was the only truth and that religion was all superstition. Other philosophers took exactly the opposite viewpoint. In spite of all, the common man took the sensible position that religion and astrology were perfectly compatible and could exist side by side.

It was during the Middle Ages that astrology began to branch out into its four branches as explained in [Lesson One](#). These, again, are:

- Natural Astrology or Astronomy
- Judicial Astrology, or the study of the influence of the stars upon nations and governments
- Genethliacal or Natal Astrology
- Horary Astrology or Astrology applied to specific questions of the moment.

The writers of the Middle Ages were well aware of the meaning of astrology. Chaucer refers to astrological theory in a casual way, so as to intimate that astrology was not only accepted by the masses he portrayed, but that it was as much a part of their lives so as to be beyond debate. Astrological symbols and references are woven into the very fabric of his Canterbury Tales. As a matter of fact, Chaucer actually cast horoscopes for characters such as the lusty Wife of Bath. According to the good Wife, she owed her sensuousness to the fact that her horoscope placed Mars in Taurus.

Another medieval writer who placed heavy emphasis on astrology, side by side with religion, was the great Italian author, Dante Alighieri. References to astrology are contained throughout the Divine Comedy. Milton, Spenser and later Shakespeare used astrological allusions abundantly in their works.

As the Middle Ages gave way to the Renaissance, astronomy also enjoyed a rebirth of interest. In the latter part of the 13th century, mathematician Johannes Campanus is reported to have systematized the division of the horoscope into the twelve houses of the zodiac. Like Hippocrates and Paracelsus, the founders of medical theory, Campanus was a physician. He was both doctor and chaplain to Pope Urban IV. In the 15th century, Johann Muller, a professor of astronomy and author of several books on trigonometry, published a translation of another of Ptolemy's books on astronomy called Almagest.

### The Renaissance

During this period, astrology and astronomy were still intertwined, and one important exponent of both was Tycho Brahe, a Dane who lived in the 16th century. In addition to working with metal instruments, Brahe studied the tables of Copernicus (an early follower of astrology) and perfected and corrected them. He brought the study of the planets into such a precise form that his brilliant pupil, Johannes Kepler, used Brahe's study of the celestial bodies – particularly Mars – to discover his triple laws of universal gravitation. Other discoveries of Kepler were later utilized by Sir Isaac Newton in his study of dynamics. (Sir Isaac was also an astrologer.)

Kepler was an avid astrologer and designed one of the early telescopes to assist him in his study. Kepler strongly believed that astrology and religion were irreversibly enmeshed. It was his feeling that God made man from the elements, and the elements were absorbed by man from the stars as man absorbed food and drink. From this, he concluded, that "man must also, like the elements, be subject to the influence of the planets."

Galileo made many scientific inquiries into clocks and telescopes. He, too, was an astrologer who wrote and published two books containing horoscopes which were personally erected by him.

The most famous astronomer of all during this period was Michel de Notre-Dame, known popularly as "Nostradamus." Many of his predictions came true in his lifetime; others came true shortly afterward, such as the rise of Cromwell and the birth of Napoleon. He also predicted the exact date of the end of World War II.

It was said of Nostradamus that he feared that the world was not ready for the whole truth and that he was afraid of adverse effects from some of his predictions. Consequently, he wrote many of his predictions in deliberately obscure verses which astrologers who followed him to this day have been trying to decipher.

William Lilly was the most renowned astrologer of the following century. Typical of the age in which he lived he was very knowledgeable in a number of arts and crafts, from medicine to writing. (Note how many astrologers were also in the field of medicine.) He was a professional astrologer who wrote one of the earliest books of prophecies in "almanack" form. He also published a famous book called Christian Astrology, modestly treated of in three volumes. He had a penchant for solving crimes by horoscope and for predicting calamities. One such prediction brought him a great deal of notoriety. By careful mundane astrology he forecast and announced the fact that a large fire would take place soon in London. Not long afterward the great fire of London broke out and Lilly was summoned before the committee of inquiry set up by the House of Commons. He was eventually acquitted of any wrongdoing since he had only forecast the fire but had nothing to do with its origin.

During this same 16th and 17th century period very learned men studied astrology along with philosophy, theology, medicine, law, physics and mathematics. Since the study of these subjects required readings in many different languages, the scholars of the time routinely learned languages other than their own, in addition to ancient Latin, Greek and sometimes Arabic and Hebrew.

Those were the days of educational and wealth separation, either a man was very rich and very well educated, or he was very poor and had no education at all. Typically, there were people who took advantage of the situation. The highly scientific inquiries of the scholar were plagiarized, and watered down to simplistic notions and sold to the poor in their most elemental form. Astrology was no exception. For those who had some knowledge of reading, there were "penny dreadfuls" in their early forms of almanacs and handbooks. For the completely illiterate, there were charlatan star-gazers and others who would write what they

called a horoscope in an instant for whatever fee the traffic would bear. Unfortunately there are many who do it today.

Naturally, these excesses cast the science of astrology in a poor light as being the property of fakery and quackery. Johannes Kepler pointed out that the uneducated were an easy mark for these sensational predictions, portents and signs to give meaning to their lives of "quiet desperation." Kepler accurately predicted that astrological frauds would prey on these instincts, but insisted that this in no way discredited legitimate astrological pursuits, no more than medical quacks discredit licensed physicians.

In spite of the efforts of Kepler and other scientists, these charlatans cast a gray cloud over the science of astrology in the eighteenth century.

### Modern Astrological Thought

It was not until the later 19th century that astrology again rose, phoenix-like, from the ashes of the charlatans. One of the reasons for the renewed interest was the closer contact with nations of the Far East, particularly India.

Two writers in particular are responsible for the rebirth of astrology in the late 19th and early 20th century. One was a man, Alan Leo; the other a woman, Isabelle Pagan. These two astrologers performed extensive research into ancient astrological texts and have written what are considered by astrologers to be classics. Alan Leo's works on the position of the Moon at the hour of one's birth are still foundations for present texts, and Isabelle Pagan's penetrating analyses of character determinants according to zodiac signs are the basis of serious astrological studies today.

In our century, much of the hokum formerly associated with astrology has disappeared. We still have "instant" horoscopes in the daily papers and there are those who take them quite seriously. The sober student knows that these are very general in nature and give only the broadest analysis of people born in any year under the widest range of their sign. Yet, it would seem that the "daily horoscopes" are taken only as seriously as they are intended, and that there is a tremendous revitalization of interest in the deeper and more scientific aspects of astrology.

The number of people currently interested in astrology on a world wide basis is legion, but to illustrate the compatibility of modern astrology with modern science, let us consider two stalwarts in the world of twentieth-century science – Albert Einstein and Carl G. Jung.

Einstein, of course, needs no introduction. This greatest modern scientist of them all had a deep rooted respect for astrology and is quoted as having a marked appreciation for the "cosmic religious sense." By this, Einstein meant that the heavens played an incontrovertible part in the destiny of mankind and his physical world.

Carl Jung is perhaps less renowned, but among astrologers he is a guiding light. Jung was the protege of the often mentioned Sigmund Freud, and, even though he later disagreed with Freud on several points, Jung remains one of the very greatest psychiatrists of all time.

Dr. Jung devoted the time necessary to establish the relationship between behavior of people and the movement of the stars.

He went so far as to cast the horoscopes of 800 of his married patients and to compare the findings in a scientific work called Interpretation of Nature and the Psyche. Jung studied the combinations of the Sun and Moon signs as they related to husband and wife. Jung, who had an astrologer as a member of his staff, was quoted by Astrologie Moderne as saying:

"There have been many striking analogies between the astrological and the psychological event or the horoscope and the characterological disposition . . . One can expect with considerable assurance that a given well-defined psychological situation will be accompanied by an analagous astrological configuration. Astrology consists of configurations symbolic of the collective unconscious, which is the subject matter of psychology." Lesser known was Dr. L.D. Broughton, who wrote in the Monthly Planet Reader, Jan. 1, 1861, that the secession of South Carolina would lead to civil war (an idea widely scoffed at then.) Dr. Broughton also accurately predicted that the nation would not see peace until the summer of 1865. Dr. Broughton's work was based on the pioneering principle that the passage of Uranus through Gemini was a hostile omen. Later many astrologers would forecast a major war when Uranus next returned to Gemini – which occurred in 1941 and 1942.

Mark Twain was another famous person who dealt in astrology as an avocation. He no doubt might have done more in astrology if he had known that his charting of his own death was more accurate than he dared dream.

Although astrology is a pure science, containing many unproven theories similar to such sciences as physics and chemistry, many people have used astrological predictions to definite financial advantage. While it has been common for years in eastern countries for businessmen to consult their astrologers before making important commitments, western business people are just beginning to realize the distinct advantage of this practice (which may explain why many eastern countries have a decided stability while western civilization seems to be in a constant state of turmoil).

A notable exception to this generality was J. Pierpont Morgan, who regularly employed a sincere (and very successful) astrologer named Evangeline Adams. Evangeline had an office in Carnegie Hall from which she advised many outstanding individuals at what was then considered (early 20's) a very high fee of \$25 per hour. Actors and actresses by the dozens, including the great Caruso, regularly appeared at her door, in addition to the solons of Wall Street. Later in her life, she was sponsored by a consumer product company in a program which was aired nightly to millions of radio listeners. She also wrote many popular books, including the best-selling The Bowl of Heaven.

## Astrology Today

Today, once again, astrology is a revered and honored serious study which has touched the educated masses with the astounding depth of its logical beauty. This transitional process has occurred for a number of definable reasons. People in general, have been let down by the conclusions which astronomy (and related sciences) have arrived at in describing man's relationship to the universe and are looking and relying more and more on astrological interpretation. Another contributing reason is that many highly accepted and respected sciences are gathering evidence data describing an integrated network of celestial, terrestrial, and ecological relationships. These vast studies have revealed a relationship between occurring phenomena on earth and certain astrological configurations. Many of the ancient traditions which guided our brothers and sisters of the past are commanding (and getting) the respect of our contemporary scholars and professionals. Certainly no intelligent person can deny that advanced physics and psychology are on the frontiers of philosophy and mysticism. Now that the earth is being viewed as a whole, known to be influenced by galactic, stellar, solar, and planetary forces, many astrological laws are constantly being verified and the process will certainly expand as we discover more and more about our relationship to the universe. Astrology is now in the process of being honored, as it was in the past, by those who perceive no separation between Heaven and Earth.

No one needs proof of the popularity of astrology in our day. A quick review of the books and magazines at the nearest bookstore should provide plenty of evidence. Such respected journals as Science and the Wall Street Journal have published articles sympathetic to astrology. There are over 30,000,000 people in the United States alone who now have a more than passing interest in astrology and the number grows every day.

Recent world-wide recognition of astrology as a useful science appeared as a result of statements by two outstanding men – one in the Eastern Hemisphere and one in the Western Hemisphere.

In Czechoslovakia, Dr. Eugen Jonas, a renowned psychiatrist, revealed that he had been charting his women patients' horoscopes since the 1950's. Relying on these charts, he has been able to determine their fertile periods with a 98% degree of accuracy. He has also, by use of these charts, been able to decrease deformations of birth, avoid miscarriages and even enable his clients, in many instances, to choose the sex of their new born. As a result, the vast majority of Czech women rely on his charts rather than any artificial devices, pills or drugs which often produce side effects.

In New York City a former President of the Board of Education, Isaiah Robinson recommends that astrology should be used among the 1,100,000 school children under his jurisdiction. He indicated that if you place certain children in with certain teachers, conflict will be present just because they have certain birth signs which produce this aura of conflict.

The history of astrology reads very much like a graph of the stock market. (The New York Stock Market receives an average of 7 phone calls a week requesting the time, date and exact location of the beginning of the stock market!) During the days of prejudice, astrology

was clouded by lack of knowledge. Now that the public mood is one of open mindedness and world wide communication is instantaneous, astrology has bloomed and is flourishing like a geranium after a long winter.

During all ages, there have been those who would take advantage of the public's readiness to believe anything that can be "foreseen" about the future. The serious astrologer must fight not only the narrowness of those with closed and empty minds, he must carry the standard against those who would in all earnestness delude the public into thinking that a casual glance at the heavens can foretell the coming events of people, of the world and of the universe.

### Conclusion

The functions of astrology for your own personal benefit, and on a much broader scale, society in general are endless. We will specify a few here for introductory purposes for you, but we want you to understand that the potential number of uses or benefits in Astrology is equal to the infinite number of possible zodiacal combinations. It will take you some time to become proficient in this field because you are dealing with a profound science which concerns itself with the improvement of human existence both on the individual and societal basis.

Most of the people who will approach you for astrological assistance will want to know immediately just how it is that astrology can help them. You, as a qualified astrologer, can be helpful to them in an infinite number of ways. Here are just a few of the areas in which your astrological services can be helpful to your client.

### HEALTH

One of the most crucial areas of service the astrologer can provide is advising his client of his fundamental health potential. This is a very delicate field and we have a very specialized segment of study devoted to it so that you will be quite competent to provide solid advice in this area. Using traditional astrology, it is also possible to warn which areas of the body may be weak and should be specially watched and checked by a doctor and at what times this is likely to happen.

### CAREER GUIDANCE

You, as a qualified astrologer, will be able to provide your client with invaluable advice as far as what occupational potential he possesses and in which field he is most likely to succeed. We also devote precious study time in an Advanced Course to this most delicate area of professional advice. Many will come to you, in this particular area, because they are restless in their present job, and they feel they need a change. You can direct them to make the most beneficial moves along these lines.

### LOVE GUIDANCE

Probably one of the most fascinating and most demanded astrological services available to your client is guidance through their love and sex problems. This area of astrological phenomena is referred to as SYNASTRY (a term for the comparison of birth charts). In Synastry you, as the astrologer, by careful chart comparison can assess just how well two people are suited for each other. You can define for them the areas they are most likely to get along in, and those areas in which they are most likely to experience disagreement. You can also define sexual potential, attitude, and feelings and guide people through the natural traumas that they will undoubtedly experience. Are you beginning to realize the incredibly significant position you are about to occupy in society? The advice that you can ferret out to clients will be both professional and accurate. You will be able to patch up failing marriages, to recommend remedies and cures to all the ills of love. You are becoming a refined specialist in every sense of the word. In every marriage there are difficult times, and as an astrologer, you will not only be able to see such periods approaching, but you will also be quite capable to differentiate between a permanent break and temporary ones.

### FAMILY AND CHILD GUIDANCE

You can also guide people through the natural inherent family problems which any family is sure to experience. You can advise parents on how best to deal with their children and also on just what to expect from different children as far as emotional problems are concerned. You will be able to assist in every phase of the natural domestic experience. The personal insight and wisdom which you gain will only be exceeded by the individual and social benefits which are derived from your concentrated analysis.

### SELF KNOWLEDGE

Most people, although they do not want to admit it, do not know as much about themselves as they would really want to. This is an area where astrology can be of incredible significance for everyday people. Astrology can accurately reveal, through a careful analysis of the transits, the days when someone may be feeling strangely impatient or those peculiar days when their temper may be snappy. So too the easy days when someone will feel particularly relaxed are readily evident in your careful analysis of their horoscope.

In short, (once you have completed our prescribed course of study and attained our standard levels of competency) you will then assume the position of an astrologer and place yourself among that select group of people who dedicate their lives to guiding other people through the most delicate periods of their lives. If you are not interested in practicing professionally you can simply employ your knowledge to further your self-wisdom and to help your close ones, family and friends. You may also want to practice just for a hobby. The possibilities are endless. The knowledge you will gain from your practice is a more complete understanding of why the world is the way it is and the reasons for all the incredibly different types of people. You will know the whys to all the questions which perplex you.

We will now, in the next lesson, turn to the specifics of Astrology. You will often be called upon to defend astrology and/or why you believe in it. The first 2 lessons give you the answers for this type question. You don't have to memorize those 2 lessons, but you should

have the knowledge contained therein at your fingertips. In this way no one will be able to ridicule or attack your belief in Astrology.

ASTROLOGICAL AGES TIME TABLE

8423 B.C. begin Cancer Age  
6274 B.C. begin Gemini Age  
4125 B.C. begin Taurus Age  
1976 B.C. begin Aries Age  
544 B.C. begin Sagittarius sub-age  
365 B.C. begin Capricorn sub-age  
186 B.C. begin Aquarius sub-age  
7 B.C. begin Pisces sub-age  
172 A.D. begin Pisces Age (Aries sub-age)  
351 A.D. begin Taurus sub-age  
530 A.D. begin Gemini sub-age  
709 A.D. begin Cancer sub-age  
888 A.D. begin Leo sub-age  
1067 A.D. begin Virgo sub-age  
1246 A.D. begin Libra sub-age  
1425 A.D. begin Scorpio sub-age  
1604 A.D. begin Sagittarius sub-age  
1783 A.D. begin Capricorn sub-age  
1962 A.D. begin Aquarius sub-age  
2141 A.D. begin Pisces sub-age  
2320 A.D. begin Aquarius Age



## ***LESSON III***

### BASIC PRINCIPLES OF SIGNS AND HOUSES

#### *\* Introduction \**

With the historical and background information safely behind us, we will now proceed with the core material of astrology – the study of the zodiac, the signs, the houses, planets, etc. – all of the influence of the universe upon our lives.

You will recall that in Lesson One we compared the signs and houses to a clock. Since this is not always easy to understand at first, let's review it briefly.

#### *\* Reviewing the Signs \**

The heavens were divided many centuries ago into twelve spheres of influence named after the constellations which happened to lie within them. This link with astronomy is quite interesting. However, all the astrologer must remember is the names and relative positions of the signs. The zodiac begins as the Sun does – in the East, at the horizon. If we face South, (we know the Sun although apparently overhead is South of us from the northern hemisphere) and look at the imaginary horizon, the Ascendant position is at 9:00 o'clock. At this exact horizon point, Aries is just about to appear. Aries, therefore, is the first sign. As Aries moves up to the 10:00 o'clock position, Taurus appears. As Taurus moves to 10:00 o'clock (and Aries to 11:00 o'clock) Gemini appears on the horizon. Next comes Cancer, etc. So you see that the twelve zodiacal signs are named as they appear in the Ascendant position on the horizon. (Remember this from [Lesson I!](#)) The reason for the repetition is because this must become "second nature" to you.)

Conversely, the signs "disappear" in the West as they descend below the horizon. The 3:00 o'clock position is therefore referred to as the Descendant. If one were to watch any one point in the horizon clock, the signs would go by in procession every twelve hours. First Aries, then Taurus, etc. But we don't have time to watch this procession for twelve hours merely to get the order straight. For the sake of convenience, we "count" the signs counter clockwise.

#### *\* Houses \**

To continue the previous analogy, the houses can best be imagined as the areas on the clock between the numbers. If you were, for example, to divide the 360 degree face of your clock into 12 equal "slices," you would have a "pie" consisting of 12 divisions with each piece consisting of 30 degrees. Now imagine that the numbers of the clock move instead of the hands; as 9:00 o'clock moves up into the 10:00 o'clock position, the slice between 9:00 and 10:00 remains as it was. Similarly, Aries and the other signs move up from their positions in the Ascendant to the next house. The houses are "counted" counter-clockwise, too,

beginning with the house just below the horizon (between 8:00 and 9:00 o'clock). As Aries moves to the next house, Taurus moves from the second house to the first, and so on.

Houses, then, are permanent sections (slices) of sky through which signs and planets move in a perpetual pattern since before man's existence. This method of measuring the Houses is known as the "Equal House Division" Method.

#### \* The Sun Sign \*

Popular horoscope columns lead people to believe that there was only one sign under which each person was born. i.e. The Sun sign for the month in which they were born. A true horoscope requires a detailed examination of all the signs, houses and planets at the minute of our birth. Nevertheless, our Sun sign with its many ramifications is one of the most important signs in our horoscope.

What is the Sun sign and what does it mean? The Sun crosses the celestial equator at approximately the same date each year – March 21st. This is the spring equinox, or the time when there are equal portions of day and night. As the year rolls on, the Sun wanders back and forth over the equator (always, assuming that man is the center), and that is why we say that a person is born under a certain "sign." What people mean is that the Sun was in a certain position or "sign" when the child was born. This has a very profound influence at the time of birth.

It must be noted, however, that at the time of the birth, some sign was in the Ascendant; the Moon was in a certain position in relation to the Sun; each of the planets was in its particular position on that particular day at that specific time; and the birth took place at a particular longitude and latitude on the earth. This establishes the relationship of everything to the point of birth. In other words, there are a lot of conditions. A sign means an indicator, a portent, a shadowing of things to come. A sign is the outward manifestation of the destiny that is within.

Those born under a certain Sun sign have definite character traits that are more dominant in that group than in others. But, again, it is a relative thing. The dominance of the Sun traits are modified by the relationships to the "cusp" or dividing line between the houses; by the amount of influence from the Moon and the planets; and by the complicated interaction among them all. The "cusp", although a thin line, marks the day when the Sun enters a new sign. Some years this happens a day earlier or a day later and this is the reason you will notice slight variations in dates listed for signs by same astrologers. Later you will learn that people born on the cusp will be influenced by both signs.

The legitimate astrologer hesitates to even describe the general characteristics of the Sun signs because individuals say things like, "He's certain to be an aggressive businessman, because he was born under Aries." Nonsense. That person may show a greater tendency toward aggressiveness, especially if he were born near the middle of the sign and with the Ascendant also in Aries; but he could also be born with Gemini in the Ascendant, which would give him artistic qualities. The geography of his birth would play a large part, and so

would the position of the other celestial bodies – perhaps enough to cancel out all the traits which make a good businessman!

\* Signs and the Elements \*

We now know, of course, that there are over 100 different known chemical elements, and that fire, water, earth and air do not constitute the earth's original compounds. Early astrologers used these compounds as symbols, however, and even today they tend to point up the characteristics of the astrological groups into which man is classified. We can divide the signs and their characteristics in several ways.

Fire signs	Inspirational group	Masculine	Electric	Positive
Water signs	Emotional group	Feminine	Magnetic	Passive
Air signs	Mental group	Masculine	Electric	Positive
Earth signs	Practical group	Feminine	Magnetic	Passive

These groupings are discovered by a tripartite division of the zodiac into four groups. This is known as trigon or triplicity.

Thus we have:

<u>NAME OF SIGN</u>	<u>Birth dates</u>	<u>Gender</u>	<u>Element</u>
1. ARIES	Mar. 21 to April 20	Masculine	Fire
1. TAURUS	April 21 to May 21	Feminine	Earth
1. GEMINI	May 22 to June 21	Masculine	Air
2. CANCER	June 22 to July 23	Feminine	Water
2. LEO	July 24 to Aug. 23	Masculine	Fire
2. VIRGO	Aug. 24 to Sept. 23	Feminine	Earth
3. LIBRA	Sept. 24 to Oct. 23	Masculine	Air
3. SCORPIO	Oct. 24 to Nov. 22	Feminine	Water
3. SAGITTARIUS	Nov. 23 to Dec. 22	Masculine	Fire
4. CAPRICORN	Dec. 23 to Jan. 20	Feminine	Earth
4. AQUARIUS	Jan. 21 to Feb. 19	Masculine	Air
4. PISCES	Feb. 20 to Mar. 20	Feminine	Water

*NOTE: If you have been carefully observant you should have noticed that the Sun sign dates vary here from the dates listed in Lesson I. You will also notice a further slight variation in those dates later in this lesson. This was done deliberately to make you aware of the variable*

*time ingress of the Sun into the signs. This is part of fallacy of the general horoscope forecasting. People born on or near the cusp will be in one sign based on some newspaper column type horoscopes and in another for a different newspaper You will learn how to determine the exact ingress of the Sun into a sign with reference to a client's horoscope during this course. You will then make the necessary corrections for each client's actual chart which is not based on generalities but on the exact ingress time for the year of birth in question.*

\* Cardinal, Fixed and Mutable Signs \*

Another grouping of sign qualities is as follows:

	<u>Cardinal</u>	<u>Fixed</u>	<u>Mutable</u>
Fire	Aries	Leo	Sagittarius
Water	Cancer	Scorpio	Pisces
Air	Libra	Aquarius	Gemini
Earth	Capricorn	Taurus	Virgo

The cardinal signs are placed at the four points of the astrological compass, corresponding to the directions North, South, East and West. They are said to represent the initiative or active temperament and to partake of the nature of the Ascendant.

The fixed signs are the powerhouse signs and have been known by various names throughout the centuries. All the names, however, have referred to the executive, unchanging or foundation qualities of an individual. The fixed signs tend to balance and stabilize the other leading signs.

The mutable signs are the versatile, mediator signs. They represent the ability to bend and to adapt to circumstances. They have been called "Dual" signs because of their ability to reconcile conflicts. Note for example, that Sagittarius is half-man, half-horse, that Gemini includes the twins, and Pisces two fish. Virgo is a female who may bear male offspring.

Since there are four signs in each of the above groupings, they are known as the Quadruplicities. Another tripart division represents the four seasons, and this grouping is called the Trinities. This grouping divides the zodiac into four sectors of 90 degrees each:

<u>Spring or Intellectual</u>	<u>Autumn or Reproductive</u>	<u>Summer or maternal</u>	<u>Winter or Serving</u>
Aries	Libra	Cancer	Capricorn
Taurus	Scorpio	Leo	Aquarius
Gemini	Sagittarius	Virgo	Pisces

\* Character Traits \*

The following character traits are commonly associated with each of the twelve signs:

Aries	Aspiration
Taurus	Integrity
Gemini	Vivification
Cancer	Expansion
Leo	Assurance
Virgo	Assimilation
Libra	Equilibrium
Scorpio	Creativity
Sagittarius	Administration
Capricorn	Discrimination
Aquarius	Loyalty
Pisces	Appreciation

\* Summary of Signs and Their Aspects \*

A brief summary of the significant characteristics of each of the Sun signs is listed on the following pages. Other common relationships are also listed. This is introductory. In the next two lessons we go into considerable detail.

ARIES The Ram March 21 – April 20

- Sign of the warrior and pioneer. An Aries is generally energetic, enthusiastic, positive, enterprising and impulsive.
- A fire sign.
- A cardinal sign.
- Sagittarius and Leo are harmonious signs for marriage, friendship or business.
- Gems are amethyst and diamond.
- Color is red.
- Metal is iron.
- Ruled by Mars.

TAURUS The Bull April 21 – May 21

- Sign of the builder or producer. A Taurus is steadfast, systematic and stubborn. He is also kind hearted, persevering and sometimes quite musical.
- A fixed sign.
- An earth sign.

- Capricorn and Virgo are harmonious signs for marriage, friendship or business.
- Gems are emerald and moss-agate.
- Colors are blue and pink.
- Metal is copper.
- Ruled by Venus.

GEMINI The Twins May 22 – June 21

- Sign of the inventor or artist. A Gemini is creative, clever, expressive and versatile. He is also restless and exuberant.
- A mutable sign
- An air sign.
- Aquarius and Libra are harmonious signs for marriage, friendship or business.
- Gems are beryl and aquamarine.
- Color is yellow.
- Metal is quicksilver.
- Ruled by Mercury.

CANCER The Crab June 22 – July 22

- Sign of the prophet or teacher. A Cancer is sympathetic, sensitive, protective, changeable and easily influenced. At the same time, Cancer is tenacious and patient.
- A cardinal sign.
- A water sign.
- Scorpio and Pisces are harmonious signs for marriage, friendship or business.
- Gems are emerald and moss-agate.
- Color is violet.
- Metal is silver.
- Ruled by the Moon.

LEO The Lion July 23 – August 23

- Sign of presidents and kings. A Leo is proud, energetic, authoritative, domineering, generous and trusting.
- A fixed sign.
- A fire sign.
- Sagittarius and Aries are harmonious signs for marriage, friendship and business.
- Gems are diamond and ruby.
- Color is orange.
- Metal is gold.
- Ruled by the Sun.

VIRGO The Virgin August 24 – September 23

- Sign of craftsmen and critics. A Virgo is generally methodical, exact, discriminating, industrious, intelligent and chaste.

- A mutable sign.
- An earth sign.
- Taurus and Capricorn are harmonious signs for marriage, friendship or business.
- Gems are pink jasper and hyacinth.
- Colors are navy blue and gray.
- Metal is quicksilver.
- Ruled by Mercury.

LIBRA The Balance September 24 – October 23

- Sign of the statesman and manager. A Libra is generally well-balanced, honorable, sympathetic, artistic, alert, just, affectionate and painstaking.
- A cardinal sign.
- An air sign.
- Aquarius and Gemini are harmonious signs for marriage, friendship or business.
- Gems are diamond and opal.
- Color is indigo blue.
- Metal is copper.
- Ruled by Venus.

SCORPIO The Scorpion October 24 – November 22

- Sign of the governor or inspector. A Scorpio is generally independent, passionate, determined and energetic. Scorpio has strong likes and dislikes.
- A fixed sign.
- A water sign.
- Cancer and Pisces are harmonious signs for marriage, friendship or business.
- Gems are topaz and malachite.
- Color is deep red.
- Metal is steel.
- Ruler is Pluto.

SAGITTARIUS The Archer November 23 – December 21

- Sign of the sage and counselor. A Sagittarius is restless, impatient, impulsive, candid, generous and extremely curious. Sagittarius loves nature and sports.
- A mutable sign.
- A fire sign.
- Aries, Leo and Sagittarius are harmonious signs for marriage, friendship or business.
- Gems are turquoise and carbuncle.
- Color is light blue.
- Metal is tin.
- Ruled by Jupiter.

CAPRICORN The Goat December 23 – January 20

- Sign of the ambassador, scientist or priest. Capricorn is quiet, reserved, persevering, ambitious and diplomatic.
- A cardinal sign.
- An earth sign.
- Taurus and Virgo are harmonious signs for marriage, friendship and business.
- Gems are white onyx and moonstone.
- Color is green.
- Metal is lead
- Ruled by Saturn.

#### AQUARIUS The Water Bearer January 21 – February 19

- Sign of the scientist or seeker of truth.
- A fixed sign.
- An air sign.
- Libra and Gemini are harmonious signs for marriage, friendship or business.
- Gems are sapphire and opal.
- Color is sky blue.
- Metal is uranium.
- Ruled by Uranus.

#### PISCES The Fish February 20 – March 20

- Sign of the poet or interpreter. A Pisces is kind and gentle. Pisces is also sensitive, retiring, often unlucky and melancholy.
- A mutable sign.
- A water sign.
- Cancer and Scorpio are harmonious for marriage, friendship or business.
- Gems are moonstone and chrysolite.
- Color is aquamarine.
- Metal is tin.
- Ruled by Neptune.

#### \* Significance of the Houses \*

As discussed above, the houses are divided into twelve celestial segments, beginning with the First House just below the eastern horizon, and progressing counter clockwise to the Twelfth House, which is just above the eastern horizon. The First House corresponds with Aries on the zodiac, and the Twelfth House with Pisces. But remember the houses remain stationary and the signs move through them. When discussing the houses, we must locate the Midheaven, which is the point in the sky directly above the observer. It is called the "Medium Coeli" in Latin but we only mention that so you will understand the abbreviation for it M. C. The "Imum Coeli" (also Latin) which is directly opposite the Midheaven is abbreviated I. C. The M. C., located on the cusp (or dividing line) of the Ninth and Tenth Houses is the highest spot on the horoscope chart. (To go back to our clock analogy, the Midheaven would be at 12:00 o'clock, the I. C. would be at 6:00 o'clock.

The influence of the planets on the houses has been observed by astrologers to follow the general pattern below:

- First House:: The early environment, shape and condition of the body, home and childhood.
- Second House: Finance and other material conditions.
- Third House: Travel, literature, useful and practical arts, brothers and sisters.
- Fourth House: Old age, conditions in the home during later years.
- Fifth House: Children, amusement, courtship, speculation.
- Sixth House: Health, labor, servants.
- Seventh House: Marriage, the fine arts, partnership and relations with the public.
- Eighth House: Death and inheritance.
- Ninth House: Intellect, religion, philanthropy, justice, idealism.
- Tenth House: Social position, ambition, livelihood.
- Eleventh House: Friends, hopes and wishes.
- Twelfth House: Sorrow, troubles, hospitals, prison.

\* Conclusion \*

The signs of the zodiac and the houses of the heavens are two separate and distinct concepts. The zodiac is in motion as it travels around the earth, as seen by the astrologer's eyes from a fixed earth point of reference. The houses are the fixed man designed sections of the sky through which the signs of the zodiac move. This combination has an immediate effect on an individual at his birth time and a continuing one throughout his life. Some astrologers hold that this initial effect is at the moment of conception, however medicine has demonstrated the tremendous protection of the unborn baby in the mother's womb from all outside influences. As a result the great majority of competent astrologers work with the time of birth when the person is first exposed to the effects of all external things in the universe.

Understand that you have now only been introduced to some general concepts about the meanings of the houses and signs. In the next two lessons you will be taken through considerable details on the vital principles of the signs.

## LESSON IV

### SIGNS ARIES THROUGH VIRGO

#### \* Introduction \*

In the previous lesson you were introduced to a basic portrait of the twelve signs of the zodiac. The following two chapters will afford the student a more elaborate description of each sign. You will learn the history of each symbol and its relationship to the sign. This is very important for your complete understanding of the signs. In short, you will learn the biography of each sign and its relationship with other signs. It is crucial at this stage in the course, for you to develop a sound basis of comprehension for the individual signs. It is impossible to tell you how many times during the course, and your career, you will refer back to this basis. The stronger your conception of the signs, we guarantee the stronger the confidence of your client in your analysis.

I. ARIES is the first sign of the zodiac and it is indicated by a Ram. Thus the symbol of Aries has been designed to suggest a ram's horns. It also has been said that it represents two spirals, the future and the past. Aries as new life, starts in the past and projects into the future. The history behind the ram symbol of Aries is both interesting and informative. A brief knowledge of this history is essential to your understanding of the sign of Aries.

In ancient Thessaly, part of the present day Kingdom of Greece, much strife surrounded the crown. It seems that the affections of the King were so alienated from his spouse, the good Queen Nephele, that she felt that the lives of her two children, the Prince Phryxus and the Princess Helle were endangered. The queen, in a desperate state of anxiety and fear, appealed to Mercury for aid. This great and busy deity possessed a ram whose fleece was so lovely that it shone like gold and who could leap so far and so fast that none could out distance him. Mercury persuaded Queen Nephele to seat her two children on the back of the Ram to carry them to safety. While swooping through the air over the Dardanelles Strait which separates Europe from Asia Minor, the little princess lost her balance and fell into the water below. Even now the tip of Gallipoli Peninsula is known as Cape Helles or Hellespont. Lonely and sorrowful, the little Prince Phryxus, astride the Ram, landed in Colchis on the shores of the Black Sea. Here on the shores of the Black Sea his royal father-in-law, Acetes, welcomed him. Phryxus promptly sacrificed the Ram to Jupiter in a sincere Thanksgiving for his safety. First he skinned it and took the Golden Fleece and nailed it to a tree in the sacred grave that was dedicated to Mars, where a fearsome dragon was appointed to guard it. Covetous of the valuable trophy, however, King Acetes then murdered his youthful son-in law. Jason who commanded the heroic and famous Argonauts, heard of this atrocity and vowed to avenge it in the name of the good Queen Nephele. Along with his fearless comrades he boarded the vessel Argo, setting sail from Iolcus to the land of Colchis. A tremendous battle ensued in which the Golden Fleece was recovered. Another series of battles followed after which Jason regained his own throne back from his daring Uncle Pelias, who had stolen it during his absence. As a fitting end to this galaxy of victories, Jason was coronated King. Then to assure the safety of the Golden Fleece for all time, the gods

transported it to the sky, where it maintains its place with golden splendor as the Constellation Aries, the sign of the Ram.

Aries is of the Fire element. Cardinal quality and intellectual trinity. Its keywords are dauntless and ardor. (Before reading further review all characteristics of Aries in [Lesson III](#).) In nature, this sign is masculine or positive, active, expressionable and dominant. Some unfavorable qualities are: restless, impulsive and hot-tempered. Some favorable qualities are: ambitious, energetic, witty and strong in military matters. They make good police officers. If thwarted, Aries can demonstrate fierce anger but it possesses sufficient spirituality not to harbour resentment too long. Strong planetary tenancy of this sign gives power to the natives of any other sign. Its fearlessness can be a detriment as it may lead to a reckless abandon.

In employment, he generally succeeds in any line paralleling the affairs of his birth sign, or the interests of the house in which the Sun finds itself in his horoscope. In alliances, such as business, fraternal and marriage, he gets along well with those born under his own sign or one that is opposite. (180° is opposite) (trine to it, 120° from it) (sextile, 60° from it). To understand this position clearly see [Illustration I](#).

(1) The [Sun – Moon\\*](#) relationship (1) is most conducive to a successful marriage. This means that this statement also assumes there are no other aspects of both parties horoscopes which may negate or modify this favorable condition.

(2) [Decanate division\\*](#) shows that those born when the Sun was in the first ten degrees (decan) of Aries are endowed with activity, adventure, zeal, notoriety, sometimes dishonor and misfortune. Those born with the Sun in the second decan show affections as the source of power to sway others and the mind joining the promptings of the heart. If the third decan is involved they are easily victimized by propaganda, the spiritual possibilities of the valiant soul at grips with sordid conditions.

The essential dignities of Mars, the planetary ruler of Aries, are; it governs Aries and is exalted in Capricorn; the essential debilities of Mars are; it is in detriment (danger) when in Libra and in fall (washed out) when in Cancer.

In mundane astrology (mundane astrology means astrology of things and affairs rather than people), Aries indicates the style of policy followed by the government; changes in expression, such as constitutional amendments and creation of laws that liberalize or restrict the people.

*(\*1) A successful Sun-Moon marriage relationship means that one partner has his or her Sun in the sign in which the other's chart shows the Moon in the same sign.*

*(\*2) Decanate – a ten degree division of each sign's 30° section of the horoscope chart (see [Illustration I](#)). Two patterns of rulership exist for each decanate. The first is: the three decans of each sign are divided according to the element of the sign itself, which govern the first decan. The second decan is governed by the next following sign of that same element, and*

*the third by the third sign of that same element. Thus the first decan of Aries, is governed by Aries (fire) itself, the second by Leo (fire), the third by Sagittarius (fire). The first decan of Taurus is governed by Taurus (earth) itself, the second by Virgo (earth), and the third by Capricorn, (earth). Leo's first decan is governed by Leo itself, Sagittarius governs the second and Aries the third. Sagittarius governs its own first decan, Aries the second, and Leo the third and so around the entire wheel. Thus the planetary ruler of the decan is the ruler of the sign governing that decan. An Aquarian decan is ruled by Uranus, Sun governs a Leo decan and so on. For now a knowledge of this first pattern of decan rulership will suffice. In a future lesson you will learn the second pattern of decan rulership known as Chaldean and also details on planetary rulership.*

**II.** The second sign of the zodiac is Taurus and it is indicated by a bull. Thus the symbol of Taurus indicates a bull's head and horns. The history behind the bull is just as interesting and informative as the symbol of Aries. Again, to clearly understand this sign, a familiarization with it's history is imperative.

The pagan religions of ancient times praised and worshiped the bull as if it were a god. The Egyptians and Persians also held the animal in high esteem. To this day, it is looked upon as a crime among some oriental races to harm a bull.

The relationship of the bull and the sign Taurus stems from the old Greek legend recounting the infatuation of Jupiter for a lovely mortal maiden named Europa. According to the legend Jupiter was forbidden to court a mere mortal. He took the form and shape of a white bull to attract Europa secretly. While innocently toying with her brothers in a meadow one day, Europa spied a white bull and was delimited and astounded with its sheer beauty. Gleefully and expectantly, she approached the bull and found it friendly and inviting. She mounted its broad and handsome back and instantly the bull galloped off toward the sea, taking with him the frightened maiden before her startled brothers could run to her rescue. Plunging into the raging waters, the bull began to swim with the grace and assurance of a great fish. From the shore the startled brothers could only see the bull's head and paws as he slowly disappeared on the horizon. The rest of the bull's body was submerged and this accounts for the partial outline of the bull's forepart in the Constellation Taurus. Europa was visibly shaken and very puzzled at what was happening to her. Jupiter sensed this and to quell her growing fear, he explained his actions and intentions to her utter amazement. She immediately fell in love with Jupiter and to commemorate their happy romance, Jupiter transformed himself once more. This time he took the form of a planet – the largest in the solar system, as was befitting his importance. Then to honor his mortal love the legend says he named the Continent of Europe after her. Look at the stars on a clear night and observe the Constellation Taurus in the Zodiac. The bull's bright right eye is the star Aldebaran. You can see the head and shoulders of the bull.

Taurus is the sign of production yield and together with Virgo, a sign of the working masses, Taurus is related to the gross national product in mundane astrology. It embraces all that concerns instruments of monetary value. The Sun usually enters Taurus on or about April 21. Taurus is Earth element. Fixed in quality and Intellectual in trinity. Some key words

used with Taurus are endurance and stamina. Before continuing refer back to your chart of Taurus in [Lesson III](#) and review it's basic characteristics.

In nature, this sign is feminine or passive, it is dormant, silent and reflective. Some favorable qualities are: self reliance, patience and affection. Some unfavorable qualities are: jealous, stubborn and hot-tempered. It is hardworking, indifferent, industrious and domineering. Very intense, Taurus makes a good friend but a bitter enemy. Materialistic, it is deeply mathematical.

In employment, he generally succeeds in any line paralleling the affairs of his birth sign, or the interests of the house in which the Sun finds itself in his horoscope. In alliances, such as business, fraternal and marriage, he gets along well with those born under his own sign or one that is opposite, trine to it or sextile: Taurus, Cancer, Virgo, Scorpio, Capricorn, Pisces. The Sun-Moon relationship is most conducive for a successful marriage. (See [footnote 1](#) on page 6.)

Decanate division shows that those born when the Sun was in the first ten degrees of Taurus have determination. Those when the Sun is in the second decanate: struggle and the conflict for superiority. Third decanate: mastership and triumph over physical and environmental limitations. (Bear in mind that these general statements will undoubtedly be enhanced, diminished or even negated when considered in, light of a client's entire horoscope. Remember this is always true when we mention any general indication.)

The essential dignities and debilities of Venus, planetary ruler of Taurus, are: dignities – it governs Taurus and Libra and is exalted in Pisces; debilities – it is in its detriment when in Scorpio and in its fall when in Virgo.

**III. GEMINI** is the third sign of the zodiac and is known as the twins. It is accepted that Gemini suggests the mutability – the "from one to the other" idea – of the signs quality, double-bodied or bi-corporal. Legend speaks of the twins, Castor and Pollux, who are immortalized in the sign Gemini.

A lovely young maiden named Leda took Jupiter's fancy. Once again as with Europa, he took another form to attract her. This time he took the body and shape of a graceful swan. Leda immediately took a liking to Jupiter and allowed him, as a swan, to court her. As a result of this union, the twins Castor and Pollux were born. They had great mutual admiration for one another and became inseparable friends. They were so close that one was never seen without the other.

They soon became crew members of the great and famous Argonaut fleet, and they were of great assistance in the restoration of the Golden Fleece. Castor trained the Argonauts to ride horses. It is fitting that the Romans considered him as the patron of their cavalries. Pollux's great talent was as a fighter. They were courageous and knew no fear, their fame swiftly spread around the world. On a particularly stormy night with the ship Argo in extreme danger, they set an incredible example of sheer courage which is still remembered today. For this reason, the Olympian gods set them apart from mere mortals and placed

them as twin stars in the Constellation Gemini. Ever since, seafaring men have used the light of these dual stars to plot the course of their ship. You can locate this sign and constellation in the evening sky by finding the two bright stars named after the twins Castor and Pollux.

Gemini is the sign of opinion and discussion e.g. the teacher–pupil relationship. Gemini embraces all forms of communication including the scientific. The Sun usually enters this sign on or about May 21st.

Gemini is of the air element, mutable and intellectual in trinity. The key words are vivification, intellect and diversity. (Before reading further review all characteristics of Gemini in [Lesson 3](#).) In nature this sign is masculine or positive, active, expressionable and dominant. Some favorable attributes are: clever, intuitive, refined and affectionate. Some unfavorable: restless, sometimes too clever, often misunderstood.

Gemini is the quickest walker, physically moving faster than the other eleven signs. Geminis think on their feet and are as mentally agile as they are physically swift. They have unruly curling hair at the temples seeming to fringe out and away from the temples in a wind–blown effect. The general facial expression is open, as if ready for speech. The body remains slim and trim throughout their lives.

He is generally successful in employment in any line parallel with the affairs of his birth sign or the interests of the house in which the Sun appears in his horoscope. He is compatible with those born under his own sign or one that is opposite it, trine to it or sextile: Gemini, Leo, Libra, Sagittarius, Aquarius, Aries. Once again the Sun–Moon relationship is best for marriage (see [footnote 1](#) on page 6.)

Decanate division shows that those born when the Sun was in the first ten degrees of Gemini give evidence of mastership, activities on the mental plane and deduction after assimilation. Those of the second decanate; fidelity and the drive for progressive causes. Third decanate; reason and the power of the objective mind. The essential dignities and debilities of Mercury, the planetary ruler of Gemini, are: dignities – it governs Gemini and Virgo and is exalted in Aquarius; Debilities – it is in its detriment when in Sagittarius and Pisces, and in its fall when in Leo.

In the mundane astrology, Gemini rules universities, villages, schools and all activity connected with them; and all modes of transportation and delivery of messages. Gems – there is no authoritative list of gems according to astrology, though many lists are in existence. They are the arbitrary choices of those compiling them.

Gems – there is no authoritative list of gems according to astrology, though many lists are in existence. They are the arbitrary choices of those compiling them.

**IV. CANCER** is the fourth sign of the zodiac, and it is known as the crab, signifying tenacity. The exact representation of its sign is not readily discernible. Some say it is a picture of two crabs moving sideways, but more likely it is a single crab with its two pincers. The entry of the Sun into this sign heralds the first day of summer. The entry date is

approximately June 22nd. It is not easy to locate in the sky because it does not contain a bright star. It is very near Castor and Pollux – the bright stars of Gemini.

Once again the legend behind the crab, the symbol of the sign Cancer, is very interesting. At the summer solstice, when the Sun has reached its northernmost point in its travel through the sky, the solar recession begins toward the south. This backwards movement was associated by the Egyptians with their sacred beetle, called the scarab. The gait of this little crustacean is peculiar. It travels backward, while rolling a ball of food toward itself. To the ancient Egyptians this seemed symptomatic of the Sun's fiery ball being pulled southward after the summer solstice.

Cancer is of the water element, cardinal quality and maternal trinity. Its key words are expansion, tenacity, domesticity. (Before reading further review all characteristics of Cancer in [Lesson 3](#).) In nature, this sign is feminine or negative; silent, dormant, receptive. Some favorable attributes are: self-reliant, kind, deep thinking. Some unfavorable: selfish, feelings too easily hurt. It is psychic, sensational, clinging, sensitive, not happy in surroundings where emotions might easily be upset. Having a strong feeling of compassion, they make good in charity work. Their instinct of guardianship finds them at ease when caring for the very young or very old. They may take offense easily but soon forgive those in their charge. They are good homemakers and make good inn keepers.

Like the crab that is its sign Cancer prefers to live near the water of its emotions, in an environment that is familiar. It is considered the laziest sign because it has to be emotionally aroused before it can be made to move. This is not always easy. During the unimpressed periods, when Cancerians have resisted ideas that have not touched them, they slow down in a lethargy. Stir them emotionally, and you have them on the run. They act out their emotions, which is very good for them, for then they are able to expend their tremendous emotional energy. The energy of cancer is all stored in emotional urges.

The ideas that aroused Cancer must be practical. Cancerians love food that is emotionally appeasing. Cancer businessmen will often work out a business deal at lunch or dinner. China is regarded as a Cancer nation. The office buildings in Shanghai used to supply kitchens as part of the office unit. Food was often served during business appointments and during the transactions. The Chinese believe a man is more vulnerable if he is well fed. They soften him; a hungry man is nervous, irritable and difficult.

In employment, Cancer natives succeed in any line paralleling the affairs of their birth sign, or the interests of the house in which the Sun appears in the horoscope. In alliances, such as business, fraternal and marriage, Cancer gets along well with those from under his own sign or one that is opposite, trine, or sextile to it: Cancer, Virgo, Scorpio, Capricorn, Pisces, Taurus. In marriage the Sun-Moon relationship is excellent. (See [footnote 1](#) on page 6.)

Decanate division shows that those born when the Sun was in the first decanate ten degrees of Cancer have strong moods and emotions; they are poetic and have good dramatic expression. Those of the second decanate have good resourcefulness and great energy;

powerful emotions; may have trouble with sex problems. Third decanate; research, curiosity, discontent, restlessness; love of nature may have a stormy life.

The essential dignities and debilities of the Moon, ruler of Cancer, are: dignities – it governs Cancer and is exalted in Taurus; debilities – it is in its detriment when in Capricorn and in its fall when in Scorpio.

In mundane astrology, Cancer rules a nation's land resources, ecology, farms, homes, mines, mountains, lakes and so on.

V. LEO is the fifth sign of the Zodiac, it is known as the Lion. It's symbol represents a lion's tail. The Lion legend concerns the sign Leo which is ruled by the Sun. In the Constellation Leo is the Star Regulus – a first magnitude Star. (i.e. one of the brightest in the sky) It also is called the Royal Star or the Lion's Heart because it is located where the Lion's heart would be in the constellation. The ancient astronomers regarded Regulus as one of the four cornerstones of the heavens. The other three were Antares in the Constellation Scorpio, Fomalhaut in the Constellation Pisces, and Aldebaran in the Constellation Taurus. The Royal Star got its name as a result of one of the victories of Hercules who had been sent by his domineering cousin Eurystheus to slay the lion which ravaged the village of Nemea. After a spectacular battle, with no other weapons than his bare hands, Hercules strangled the raging beast. With the carcass slung over his broad back, Hercules returned to Mycenae. Not only was this heroic deed proclaimed publicly, but Jupiter immortalized this memorable event by placing the Lion in the sky where it shines proudly in the Constellation named in its honor.

Leo is sometimes referred to as symbolic of the nine months of gestation. If we count the signs counter clockwise beginning with Leo as number one we come to the first sign Aries, the sign of new life – beginning of spring. It is, therefore, the sign of love affairs between man and women, the sign of children and young people in general. It is creative, the angle of personal joys; the entertainment world, personal adornment and attraction. The Sun usually enters this sign on July 23rd. Leo is a sign of the Fire element, fixed quality, maternal trinity. Some keywords are compassion, courage and assurance. (Before proceeding please go back to [Lesson III](#) and review the basic characteristics of Leo.)

In nature, this sign is masculine or positive, active, expressionable, and dominant. Some favorable qualities are: kind, courageous, altruistic, just, forgiving. Some unfavorable: impulsive, misunderstood, sometimes egotistical. It is powerful, jovial and reciprocal.

In employment, he generally succeeds in any line paralleling the affairs of the birth sign, or the interests of the house in which the sun appears in his horoscope. In alliances, such as business, fraternal and marriage, he gets along with those born under his own sign or one that is opposite, trine to it or sextile: Leo, Libra, Sagittarius, Aquarius, Aries, Gemini. Again the Sun-Moon relationship has proven to be excellent for marriages. (See [footnote 1](#) page 6.)

Decanate division shows that those born when the Sun was in the first decanate (ten degrees) of Leo have qualities of rulership, fiery love, and the desire to dominate others, extremes of pleasure whether in love or asceticism. Those of the second decanate;

reformation, a convincing leader, given to ruthless onslaughts against his enemies, clear vision as to weaknesses in politics and religion. Third decanate; ambition, a determination to rise in life at the sacrifice of anything or anybody.

The essential dignities and debilities of the Sun, the ruler of Leo, are: Dignities – it governs Leo and is exalted in Aries; debilities – it is in its detriment when in Aquarius and its fall when in Libra.

In mundane astrology, Leo rules the entire entertainment world, in all creative arts, true romance, all affairs affecting young people, especially children.

Leo is the second fire sign and the second fixed sign. The first fixed sign was Taurus. The first fire sign was Aries. Leo is the most determined of the fire signs. The first fire sign, Aries, is cardinal, and therefore, changeable. The third fire sign is Sagittarius, which is mutable, amendable, adaptable. It is not stubbornly determined to reach the goal; the fixed sign Leo is. Aries is the bonfire of the fire signs. Leo is the consolidated fire of the furnace. Sagittarius is the log fire. There are three ways of expressing enthusiasm: The bonfire that rallies or arouses starting you off with enthusiasm for a new idea (Aries); the fire that the rallier started, consolidated (within the furnace) into a determined idea, pinned down, fixed until the idea becomes a reality (Leo); the final fire of the idea (the log fire) can now be put into a book as theory, for practical uses; for example, the textbook that measures ideas, or the philosophy written concerning the forum, the Supreme Court, or the lecture hall of wisdom (Sagittarius).

The Leo fires wish more than anything else in the world to excite you with their new loves. Leo rules love and the loved ones. Leo is the lover in love with love. Leo is always in love with something, for Leo is the sign of the heart, youth, amusement, games and speculation. What more lovely way to speculate than with the heart? Since the heart interests are uppermost in the atmosphere of the Leo born, Leo is the most reliable lover and the most constant lover of the romantic fire signs.

*Debilities of the planets are their detriment and fall. The twelve signs are listed in order, six in this lesson separately by name and six in the next lesson. After each sign the dignities and debilities of the ruling planets are listed. /n order for the student to grasp the complete meaning of the planets in relationship to their sign an understanding of debilities and dignities is essential.*

VI. VIRGO is the sixth sign of the Zodiac and it is indicated by a Virgin holding a sheaf of wheat. Its symbol is that of Scorpio with a checkmark, Scorpio representing sex and the checkmark meaning protection against it. Like the five previous signs and their symbols, the legend behind the Virgin symbol is interesting and informative. At the end of the Golden Age, it is said, the goddess Aetraed was the last of the immortals to withdraw from the Earth. She had remained the only divinity among mankind working patiently to intercede with the other deities for the human beings who had trespassed the decrees of the gods. The actions of mankind, however, became so atrocious that at last she too had to leave the Earth. But she did not forsake those whom she tried to help. In old pictures she is shown as Ceres,

or Demotes, holding a sheaf of wheat in her arms, with poppies and grapes adorning her flowing hair. In ancient times, after the grape harvest of September a feast was held in her honor.

Ceres was the daughter of Saturn and Rhea. As the betrothed of Jupiter, she became the mother of Persephone who was kidnapped by Pluto, the keeper of the underworld regions. Finally Ceres appealed to Pluto, but she could not manage a full release for her daughter. She had to agree to a compromise whereby Persephone would spend half of every year with her mother, and the remaining six months with Pluto.

In a sense this explains the Nature's fertility as well as dormancy, six months of verdant growth in the temperate zones, and the remainder of the year without the strength to impart warmth to the seeds and foliage of the Earth. Thus for the association of Ceres with growing things, early civilizations connected her with Mother Nature, and in the heavens depicted her as the celestial virgin, or Virgo. She represented everything pure and noble.

Virgo is the sign of honesty, pure health, food production, productive labor and the labor force. The sun usually enters this sign on August 24th. Virgo is of the Earth element, mutable quality, and maternal trinity. Some keywords are chastity, purity, assimilation. (Before reading further review all characteristics of Virgo in [Lesson III](#).)

In nature, this sign is feminine or negative, passive, silent, receptive, dormant. Some favorable attributes are: altruistic, just, clever, intuitive, oratorical, self-respecting. Some unfavorable characteristics are: worrying too much and demonstrative when upset. A Virgo makes a good friend, loyal worker, seeker after the facts, good mathematician, critical and exciting.

Virgo is the critic, the analyzer, the servant, it is the sign that rules statistics figures, and details. Virgo is the petty side of life and is the workhouse of the zodiac. Virgos are happy only when working. The continuous desire to work need not necessarily be constructive for they can do the same routine duty day after day; it means many times, only that they must be at it. They will perform the same routine job again and again, compulsively, unaware that they have finished the chore.

In employment, he generally succeeds in any line paralleling the affairs of this birth sign, or the interests of the house in which the Sun finds itself in his horoscope. In alliances, such as business, fraternal and marriage, he gets along well with those born under his own sign, or one that is opposite, trine to it or sextile: Virgo, Scorpio, Capricorn, Pisces, Taurus, Cancer. For marriage the Sun-Moon relationship is excellent. (See [footnote 1](#) page 6.)

Decanate division shows that those born when the Sun was in the first decanate (ten degrees) of Virgo have a good mentality can tackle gigantic tasks, achievement. The second decanate: possess a great deal of experience, mind is easily assimilated and a great deal of talent for diplomacy, great temptations are likely to come; excellent power of discernment and compassion, love of worldly honor, very susceptible to the allurements of the flesh.

Third decanate: work in behalf of others, successful in science without a thought for reward; forsakes everything for duty.

The essential dignities of Mercury, planetary ruler of Virgo are, it governs Gemini and Virgo and is exalted in Aquarius. The Debilities are, it is in its detriment when in Sagittarius and Pisces and in its fall when in Leo.

In the mundane astrology, Virgo rules the harvest, the working classes, armed services, animals and farm livestock, the general health of the public, ecology, together with Taurus it is inherently tied in with the country's gross national product.

#### \* Conclusion \*

It is important to realize that we are dealing at this point with one half of the individual signs of the Zodiac. As you will learn later, everyone has each of these signs someplace in their horoscope, so you must know them as well as you know your own name. This lesson should be re-read as often as necessary for you to learn the characteristics of these six signs by memory.

The Sun is one of the most important and powerful elements in a horoscope. You are now beginning to comprehend the importance of the meanings of each sign. Be sure you learn them well. In the next lesson, we will treat the remaining six signs of the zodiac.

It is important to note here that there is a great deal of discussion in astrology relating to the possibility of additional signs; Cetus following Aries and Ophiuchus after Scorpio. Cetus and Ophiuchus are in the Zodiac but they have never had general acceptance among astrologers. Further research is needed to establish the significance of the two signs and whether they should be included in Zodiac influence. We will devote more material to this subject later in the course. It is only necessary at this time that you know of this recent development in Astrology.

In this lesson and the others you learn that the names of the signs and planets were arrived at through stories in Greek and ancient mythology. Mythology was only a method of nomenclature. The celestial bodies contained in the signs are all very real and their radial effects on human beings have been unquestionably established through scientific proof and historical evidence. Remember it is not just the effect of the ascendant or rising sign but the total change that has taken place in the position of all the celestial bodies as each ascendant sign appears. This total change in the universe at the time of each change in sign is what produces change in human beings. This is pure logic. The human being is part of the universe and changes as it changes. This is why each person's birth makes him different from every other one. The proof of this is the birth of astro twins whom we will discuss later.

# LESSON V

## SIGNS LIBRA THROUGH PISCES

### \* Introduction \*

On to the second six signs of the zodiac. They will be treated in essentially the same manner as the first six. You will be given an invaluable portrait of the signs. The basis of the interpretation of your client's horoscope is contained in this portrait. It is critical for you to proceed carefully and understand each sign completely before going to the next.

VII. LIBRA is the seventh sign of the zodiac, its symbol is known as the scales or the balance. It is the sign of friendliness and cooperation, it tends toward law and justice and is excellent for marriage and partnership. The Sun usually ingresses Libra on or about September 23rd.

In ancient Egypt, Astrologers held that the Constellation Libra represented a pair of scales; however, it was not until the time of Ptolemy that the Greeks and the Romans assented to this relationship. Up to then, they regarded this part of the celestial belt as an extended zone of the Constellation Virgo in which they saw Astraea, whom they regarded as their goddess of justice. This famous deity sat blindfolded with a shiny sword in one hand and a pair of scales in the other. Once formal recognition was accorded to the sign Libra by the Greeks and Romans, the symbol of "blind justice" was assigned to it. In explaining this zodiacal change, it is claimed that during the Golden Age mankind knew neither good or evil. After the "fall" of humanity from the state of innocence, mankind was granted the power of free will and self-government. The Sign Libra represents this selfhood and will power. Instead of being judged only by the gods, human beings agreed to accept the verdict of mortal judges. It is noteworthy to mention here that the word "liberty" is taken from the word Libra. Arbitrations and affiliations are ruled by the Sign Libra and it is significant that the emblem of "blind justice" has been adopted almost everywhere as being indicative of the compassion and justice meted out by those who are entrusted to grant or withhold freedom, according to the tenets of the law. Elaborate renderings of this sign in every media are found in attorneys offices all over the world.

Libra is of the Air element with a cardinal quality and reproductive trinity. Some keywords are intuition, justice and equilibrium. Please review all the characteristics of Libra on your chart in [Lesson III](#) before proceeding. In nature, this sign is masculine or positive, it is active and expressionable with a definite trait of dominance. Some of the favorable attributes of a Libra are: intuitive, refined, modest and affectionate. Some of the negative attributes are: worrisome and too demonstrative. A Libran is very social and enjoys civic and religious affairs. Libra has wonderful manners, they are well groomed and tactful. Librans hate unpleasantness so that even when strangers are the target of unjust complaints Librans are quick to say something placating to restore peace. You might say that they balance the scales. Ruled by Venus, Librans want harmony at any price. Libra personalities will provoke a quarrel, but are dismayed when rage is aroused. They rarely realize that they may have

brought it about. For this reason they can honestly defend their employers. They cannot understand why their superiors should not be allowed the right to err. In employment they find basic success in affairs parallel to those of their birth sign, or to the interests of the house in which the Sun finds itself in their horoscope. In alliances, such as business, fraternal and marriage, they are compatible with those born under the same sign, or one that is trine to it, opposite or sextile; for example, Libra, Sagittarius, Aquarius, Gemini and Leo. Libra can be the ambassador of good will for the policy of the company, sit in on the board meeting and re-interpret for the boss when the latter offends executives from his own or other companies. Their suave manner, good clothes and quiet voice, tones down all the anxiety caused by flustering Aries; the overbearing attitude of the Leo President; the overbidding of money wise Taurus; and the support given by the talkative advertising man. Libra calms them all down with assurance.

Research has proven that the Sun-Moon relationship is most successful in Marriage. Refer to explanation of Moon relationship in [Lesson IV](#) if still necessary.

Decanate division shows that those born when the Sun was in the first ten degrees of Libra have the quality of wisdom and good policy, subtlety in public relations and adventurous in human relations. Those in the second decan have a great deal of independence, strong individuality and are great exponents of liberty in thought and action. Those in the third decan a definite superiority in arts and letters, sometimes the mind is used to dominate or even enslave others which could end in serious trouble.

The dignities of Venus, planetary ruler of Libra, are that it governs Taurus and Libra and is exalted in Pisces. Its debilities are that it is in its detriment when in Scorpio or Aries and in its fall when in Virgo.

In mundane astrology, Libra rules the legal profession, all conciliatory offices and relations with foreign countries including the prospects of war. It also involves all councils on human relations seeking justice.

VIII.    SCORPIO is the eighth sign of the zodiac and its symbol is known as the Scorpion, a small animal from the spider family with a deadly poisonous sting in its tail. Its symbol implies a serpent also a lethal animal. It is said that in ancient times this sign was symbolized as an eagle, (it is the sign of generation, the human ability to produce new life.) Mankind, however, abused its high responsibility and brought the generative act down to the earthy level of sex alone. The symbol was then changed to a scorpion with the emphasis on its sting. Thus Scorpio came to be known as the sign of sex. This does not necessarily mean that Scorpio natives are more prone to sex troubles than the other signs, for everybody has Scorpio in his horoscope. In fact Scorpio natives are usually better equipped to deal with sex in an honorable manner. The sun's ingress of this sign is usually about October 23.

The history behind the symbol for Scorpio is important for a concise picture of Scorpio. The star Antares was considered, by the Persians, to be one of the four cornerstones of the temple of heaven. Its position in the sign Scorpio has given the eloquent everywhere, an excellent opportunity to delineate descriptive words of its appearance.

All of these, once translated into English, refer to the heart of the Scorpion. The formation of the sign indicates the form of the Scorpion sent from the heavens to sting Orion, a mighty hunter convinced of his invulnerability. The sting was fatal but, in spite of his boastfulness, Orion was given consideration after his death. Because he was the son of Neptune and Queen Euryale, Orion had great influence. Therefore, he was placed in that part of the Zodiac which is in direct opposition to the sign Scorpio. As a result, when one constellation rises in the east, the other sinks in the west. In ancient civilization, both the Phoenix and the snake symbolized the Scorpion because both implied the notion of regeneration or rebirth. The phoenix was the mythical bird which was consumed by a fire of its own nest only to be reincarnated from its own ashes. The snake was also associated with regeneration because of its habit of shedding skin after moulting. This is why, in modern astrology, the eagle and the Scorpion are co-symbol of the sign Scorpio. However the Scorpion is generally used.

Scorpio is of the water element. Fixed in quality and reproductive in trinity. Some keywords are creativity, originality and desire. (Before continuing please review your chart of basic characteristics for Scorpio in [Lesson III.](#)) In nature, this sign is negative, feminine, powerful but dormant and silent. Some favorable attributes are strong-willed and unbegrudging. Some unfavorable attributes are restless, jealous and hot-tempered. He is secretive, dignified, persistent, exacting and magnetic. Scorpio seeks the power to put the world in its place, as he sees it. Ideas that are unknown to Scorpio are scoffed at. He takes the position that he is a realist and if something is not real or practical then it is wrong. He likes to use sweeping, final forms of expression that leave no doubt that he does not believe in an idea mainly because he did not think of it. He becomes very irritated if a subject is under discussion which he did not think of. He will argue with you, not so much because the premise of the idea is wrong but because you thought of it first. Scorpios do not like this, it is an attack on their personal power. This anger is deep and abiding, bothering them until they find a way to top you. The underlying reason, in one word, is jealousy. Scorpio is the most jealous of all the signs. What you have, if he does not have it, amasses more power for you. Anything that adds to your personality, position or knowledge is clearly a thing that might have been useful to him. It angers him that it did not occur to him first.

In the business world Scorpio has most success with those affairs paralleling the affairs of his birth sign. Things such as, occult endeavors, affairs of the dead, surgery, criminology and finance are among the things he can expect to succeed in. It is the partner sign to Taurus, the money sign. He also succeeds working along the lines suggested by the house in which the sun finds itself in his horoscope. In alliances such as business, fraternal or marriage, he gets along well with those born under his own sign or one that is opposite, trine or sextile to it. The Sun Moon relationship has been found to be excellent for marriage. (If necessary refer back to your explanation of the Sun-Moon relationship in [Lesson IV.](#))

Decanate division shows that those born when the sun was in the first decanate of Scorpio have resourcefulness, an excess of causative energy that always goads to action, a creative imagination and a tremendous absence of repressions. Those of the second decan are noted for responsibility, restrictions in expression, strength of character for either good or bad and

vivid passions. Those of the third decan are noted for attainment, intense intuition, vivid ideals, the potency of sex sublimated to stimulate ideals and ambitions.

The dignities of Pluto, the planetary ruler of Scorpio are it governs Scorpio and is exalted in Aries. Its debilities are: it is in its detriment when in Taurus and in its fall when in Libra.

In mundane astrology Scorpio rules banking, morals of the people and serious epidemics that may cause many deaths.

IX. SAGITTARIUS is the ninth sign of the zodiac and its symbol is the archer, aiming his arrow. We often see the emblem as a centaur, half man, half horse, also with his bow and arrow. A compelling desire for the truth is implied in its upward pointed symbol. The symbol is a bow and arrow. It is the sign of higher rulership, of religion, philosophy and decisions of the Supreme Court. It also indicates long travels and the knowledge gained therewith. Thus it includes book publishing and the spreading of knowledge far and wide. The sun's ingress of this sign is usually on November 23.

According to an old fable, the wise and learned teacher Chiron became a centaur, half horse and half man to elude the insane jealousies of his temper crazed wife. She wished him to spend more time with her and not dedicate his entire life to the education profession. He now possessed the head of a man and the body of a horse. Therefore, he had a human brain for thinking and the swiftness of a horse for mobility. He was an excellent tutor and the divinities on Mt. Olympus retained him to instruct their youth. They were completely dependent on his wisdom in many of their temperamental or emotional problems. His advice was widely acclaimed because of its applicability.

Chiron taught Aesculapeius the secrets of anatomy and medicine. The training was so remarkably concise that Aesculapeius eventually became the deity of the healing arts. Chiron instructed Hercules in the delicacies of astronomy and science. He was also responsible for young Apollo's mastery of music and the graphic arts. Hercules, despite his praise-worthy attributes, had an inflammable temper. Enraged one day at being chided by Chiron for making a mistake, Hercules hurled a poison arrow into the unguarded back of the old centaur. Mortally wounded Chiron sought assistance from the great deity Jupiter. Overcome with sympathy Jupiter transformed Chiron into the star cluster that can be seen in the constellation Sagittarius which, as will become second knowledge to you, has jurisdiction over higher learning and hunting. When the old centaur speeds after knowledge, none can hold him back. He is the mighty hunter of the Zodiac who always pursues truth and happiness.

Sagittarius is one of the fire signs, it has a mutable quality and a reproductive trinity. Some of its keywords are insight, reason and intellection. Review your chart of basic characteristics in [Lesson III](#) for Sagittarius.

In nature this sign is masculine, positive, active, expressionable and dominant. Some of Sagittarius' favorable attributes are: sympathetic, just, deep-thinking, independent and

unbegrudging. Some of its unfavorable are: impulsive, hot-tempered, brusque and misunderstood. It is honorable, free, sincere and often prophetic.

Sagittarius is the truth seeker of the Zodiac. His life is one big adventure and he never stops searching for answers. His sign is associated with the higher mind, and his purpose is to formulate ideas or ideals based on the intellectual rather than the material level.

He abhors the phony or the hypocritical and is not afraid to speak his mind. He possesses an uncanny ability to add two and two and always get four, regardless of how others choose to distort the fact. However, he can be too honest, and he often puts his foot in his mouth because he hasn't recognized the value of an occasional little white lie. When he does not live up to his finest qualities, he becomes, at worst, tactless or insulting, and insensitive to the feelings of others. Or he becomes a drifter, going from place to place, person to person, trying to find his niche in the world. He sees life as a big joke, and he often plays the buffon – laughing on the outside even though he may be crying on the inside.

Sagittarians think in terms of the future. They make good lawyers and understand how the law may secure your future forever. So in employment they tend to find the most success in areas that concern law, the law of man or the law of God. Hence, they make good politicians, psychiatrists & clergymen. Indecision presents the greatest problem to Sagittarius in his quest for financial success. Those born under the same sign as Sagittarius or under one which is opposite, trine to it or sextile are the most successful for alliances such as business, fraternal or marriage. Once again the Sun-Moon relationship looms as the most successful for marriage.

Decanate division shows that those born when the sun was in the first 10 decans of Sagittarius express devotion, cosmic consciousness, and will operate from instinct rather than advice. Those of the second decan indicate expiation, a restless search for new fields to conquer and a great demand for work of definite importance. Those of the third decan imply illumination and a driving desire to clarify the illusions of certain matters.

The dignities of Jupiter, the planetary ruler of Sagittarius are that it governs Sagittarius and is exalted in Cancer. Its debilities are that it is in its detriment when in Gemini and in its fall when in Capricorn.

In mundane astrology Sagittarius rules churches, courts, the book publishing business, travel agencies and everything pertaining to them.

**X. CAPRICORN** is the tenth sign of the Zodiac and its symbol is known as the mountain or sea goat and it signifies authority. It is the mountain climber of the zodiac. This is appropriate for Capricorn is at the top of the zodiacal chart. The mountain goat represents the heights on land and the whale represents superiority on the sea. A goat's head and beard are suggested by the symbol. The sun's entry date is usually December 22.

When the sun is about to embark on its zodiacal journey north it is in the sign Capricorn. This is at about the same time as the winter solstice. Literally the word solstice means

standing still, e.g. The sun is standing still. This happens at the summer solstice when the sun enters the sign Cancer and at the winter solstice when the sun enters the sign Capricorn. During these periods it appears that the sun stands still a brief moment to change its course from up to down and then from down to up. These moments mark the beginning of summer and the beginning of winter. In ancient civilizations the mountain goat was the most revealing symbol of the upward climbing of the sun. However, the symbolic goat had to be just as competent in achieving the descent. This was accomplished by making its lower appendages in the form of a fish. The result was the composite sea goat.

Its deified counterpart was the god Pan, son of Hermes and Dryope. Pan possessed the thighs and legs of a goat but had human head and torso. A horn, in the shape of a cornucopia, grew on his head and through this horn wishes became reality giving credence to the belief in the blessings that could be derived from the horn of plenty.

Pan carried a musical woodwind instrument called the syrinx. It was comprised of seven resonant tubes, each, attended to a note of the octave. His love of music, and mischief, prompted him to challenge the music god Apollo to a contest of skill. Though Pan played well, he was defeated when it came to rendering sweet lyrics. He had other accomplishments, among which was a Capricious sense of humor. This probably came to his rescue in his romantic entanglement with the fair echo. He loved her but she loved Satyr who, in turn, was in love with Lyde. In the end they are all disappointed because of the lack of responsiveness. According to the legend on silent cold wintry nights when you hear the wind sighing through the leafless trees it is Pan playing on his syrinx, in memory of his lost love.

Capricorn is of the earth element, cardinal in quality and serving in trinity. Some of its keywords are discrimination, prudence and understanding. Review your basic characteristics chart in [Lesson III](#) for Capricorn before reading any further.

In nature, this sign is feminine or negative making it silent, dormant and receptive. Some favorable attributes are: self-reliant, deep-thinking, refined, rhetorical, self-respecting and magnetic. Some of unfavorable ones are: proud, often too independent and selfish. It is practical, calm and desirous of learning. On any line of work this native likes to be in authority and if knowledgeable could make a splendid supervisor. Good at compromising and organizing. Rather ambitious but will cooperate to achieve his own goals yet he may be too ambitious for his own good.

As we pointed out earlier, Capricorn is the mountain climber of the zodiac even in early childhood he sets out to conquer life and he never gives up until he achieves a secure position in society. Capricorn is associated with the tenth house of success and prestige and his purpose is fulfillment of ambitions through hard work and persistent efforts, despite any obstacles he may encounter along the way. If he lives up to his potential, he is a true worker with a goal in life. He will patiently play by the rules to ensure performance at the top. He will always proceed with a doubting caution, constantly applying previous knowledge before taking the next step ensuring a slow but sure climb. His reputation is extremely important to him and his word is his honor. However, he is often disappointed when others don't come

through because he has measured them by his own high standards. In fact, his biggest problem can be that of taking himself too seriously. Often, this is the cause of the numerous frustrations he seems to encounter.

When he fails to express his finer attributes he becomes the social climber or user. He expects life to hand him his due on a silver platter, while he refuses to extend himself in any way. Or he is always right and others are always wrong, because they haven't recognized his superiority as such.

In employment, the sons and daughters of Capricorn generally find success in any line paralleling the affairs of their birth sign or the interests of the house in which the sun finds itself in the horoscope. For alliances such as business, fraternal or marriage those born under the same sign as Capricorn or one opposite, trine or sextile to it are the most conducive for a smooth relationship. The Sun-Moon relationship once again has been found to be excellent for marriage. Please review explanation of Sun-Moon relationship in [Lesson IV](#) if you cannot readily recall it.

Decanate division shows that those born when the sun was in the first ten degrees (decan) of Capricorn are good at organization, coordination a forerunner of better things and an excellent conciliator of disputing factions. Those of the second decan are dauntless, again and again they come back for more, sometimes they must suffer martyrdom of their ideals, but by indefatigable effort they can scale the heights of success. Those located in the third decan possess, an inherent idealism, a basic natural ability to grasp high ideals and to express them in concrete form, a powerful imagination joined to intensive labor, a knowledge of the infinite and a trace of psychic.

The dignities of Saturn, ruler of Capricorn are that it governs Capricorn and is exalted in Libra. Its debilities are that it is in its detriment when in Cancer and in its fall when in Aries.

In mundane astrology Capricorn rules all government work and workers, elective, appointive or civil services.

**XI. AQUARIUS** is the eleventh sign of the zodiac and its symbol is known as the waterman, or water bearer. The symbol for Aquarius depicts two parallel lines of force, pictured as waves of water or electricity. The symbol implies Aquarius to be the servant of mankind pouring out his water to quench the thirst in the world for knowledge. The sun usually ingresses Aquarius on January 19.

The water carrier legend concerns the symbol for the sign Aquarius which is ruled by Uranus. The picture connoted from the formation of stars in the constellation Aquarius is that of an elderly man pouring water from an urn. However the effect produced by this gesture is electrifying rather than dampening. This is why in astrology the two wavy lines, used to indicate the sign Aquarius, are intended to signify the wavelengths of electricity. The parallel lines are not of recent origin. They were used centuries before the world had acknowledged electrical frequencies. This fact alone suffices to corroborate astrological traditions.

Back in the ancient times of mythology the deities suddenly discovered they had no cup-bearer since Hebe had resigned to marry Hercules. The origin of the water carrier dates back to this ancient part of mythology. Again Jupiter, disguised as an eagle (Aquila) went to the rescue. Flying high and fast, the transformed chief of the Gods saw a fair youth playing with jubilant companions in a park. It happened to be Ganymede, son of King Tros of Troy. Aquila clutched Ganymede with his talons, and transported him to the halls of the Gods where the boy was immediately decreed the new cup-bearer. To insure the permanence of the job the form of the water carrier was fashioned into that of an elderly man. Together with his urn he was placed forevermore in the constellation Aquarius. The water which pours from it quenches the thirst for knowledge. It fulfills the wish for freedom and the seed for tolerance. Wherever the water carrier pours his precious fluid, there the seeds of truth and liberty can flourish.

Aquarius is of the air element, he is fixed in quality and serving in trinity. Some of its keywords are loyalty, intercession and fellowship. Please review your basic characteristic chart for Aquarius in [Lesson III](#).

In nature, Aquarius is masculine or positive, active expressionable and dominant. Some of the favorable attributes you can expect Aquarius to demonstrate are: helpful, altruistic, clever, intuitive, refined, modest and affectionate. Some of the unfavorable ones are: too bold, often too affectionate and very apt to go to extremes especially when it is clearly unnecessary. Aquarius is demonstrative and inately thoughtful, however, Aquarius can become extremely reckless when he becomes thoughtless. Very quick to judge others but when he is careless and makes a mistake he does not like to admit that maybe he was at fault. Aquarius can be very enthusiastic about goals but also very discouraged by the obstacles he must conquer on the road to the goals.

He is the humanitarian of the Zodiac. He loves mankind and holds the integrity and dignity of the individual in high esteem. His sign is associated with the eleventh house of universal friendship and attainment of wishes. His purpose is to unite humanity into the true brotherhood of man, with each individual free to follow the dictates of his own conscience.

Freedom is his battle cry and he prizes his own independence and individuality above almost anything else. He is probably the most aware of all the signs, throughout his life he will never stop searching for new answers. Most of all, he is always interested in other people. His circle of friends is composed of all kinds of individuals, because he can accept other people for what they are and enjoy them.

When he fails to live up to the great expectations of his sign, he becomes the black sheep (or at least the oddball) of society.

He rebels for the pure pleasure of challenging authority and he will say or do anything just to be different. Or he will pretend tolerance for another's beliefs or way of life, while inwardly deciding that his answers are the only ones. He demands complete freedom without responsibility.

In Aquarius, humanity achieves the highest form of universal love and the personality has reached the peak in its worldly evolution. The high respect for law and order gained through Capricorn becomes in Aquarius a highly developed conscience or integrity that enables men to live together peacefully. The individual who has succeeded in his struggle through Capricorn stands alone on the mountaintop of success or authority. But Aquarius wants to share his good fortune, and extends a helping hand so that others can join him.

Aquarius has most of his business success when dealing in any line paralleling the affairs of his birth sign, or the interests of the house in which the sun finds itself in his horoscope. In alliances such as business, fraternal and marriage, he gets along well with those born under his own sign or one that is opposite, trine to it or sextile. The Sun-Moon relationship has shown the highest degree of success in marriage.

Decanate division shows that those born when the sun was in the first ten degrees (decan) of Aquarius show a great deal of originality, a remarkable knowledge of human nature and its progressive tendencies and a profound ability to get along with others. Those of the second decan possess, an inspirational ability, a talent to gain constructive thoughts from the invisible world, often psychic, dramatic, and convincing, those in the third decan feel a definitive inward repression, do their best work when teamed with a member of the opposite sex; rather than being self-employed, he gets along best when working with and for other people.

The dignities of Uranus, the planetary ruler of Aquarius, are that it governs Aquarius and is exalted in Scorpio. Its debilities are that it is in its detriment when in Leo and in its fall when in Taurus.

In mundane astrology Aquarius rules the Parliamentary bodies, all legally instituted legislative halls, congresses, senates, assemblies, and debates concerning civic affairs.

XII. PISCES is the twelfth sign of the zodiac, its symbol is known as the fishes. It takes the form of two fishes swimming in opposite directions. The fish are sometimes shown with their tails tied together. The symbol is the shape of two crescents joined in the middle by a bar. It implies the double nature in man, the physical and spiritual, the spiritual being the most active in natives of Pisces. Some of our most renowned psychics and researchers in occultism were born under this sign; Eileen J. Garrett, Edgar Cayce, John Boone Romises and Manly Palmer Hall, just to mention a few. The Pisces native is spiritually inclined and constantly striving to solve the problems of mankind and initiate improvements wherever feasible. Pisces is frequently referred to as the Red Cross of the Zodiac, it is the sign of the refugee whether in hospitals, asylums, or other places of human distress. The sun usually enters this sign on February 20.

In popular mythology the fishes legend, one swimming upstream and one swimming downstream, involves the goddess Venus and her son Cupid. These were the deities who glamorized love, beauty and pleasure. Upon completion of one of their delightful yet faitguing tasks, the fascinating mother and her charming son were taking a well deserved siesta on the banks of the Euphrates River. Suddenly the monstrous typhon burst from the

shining sea and confronted them on the shore. Horrified Venus and Cupid dove into the river in a frantic effort to escape the appalling creature. Instantaneously their bodies were transformed into fishes, so that they might take refuge among the reeds. Venus, fearing the loss of her son, fastened herself to him with a piece of twine. (This accounts for the fact that the fishes are sometimes shown bound together.)

The great goddess Minerva was so astounded by this act of courage that she created a special place in the firmament, studded it with stars in the form of fishes one swimming against and the other with the current, this great memorial has been a celestial record ever since in the water sign Pisces.

That these zodiacal incarnations were of great significance among the ancients is attested by the fact that the Greeks and Romans regard all fish as sacred. The planet Venus still shines in unequalled splendor in the sky, and the two fishes still adorn the sign Pisces.

Pisces is of the water element, mutable in quality and serving in trinity. Some of the keywords for Pisces are appreciation, peace and sympathy. Again before proceeding please review your characteristic chart for Pisces in [Lesson III](#).

This sign is feminine and open minded, quiet, dormant and passive. Some of Pisces favorable qualities are: helpful, just, kind, intuitive and modest. Some unfavorable are: misunderstood, worrying, stubborn and too affectionate. Pisces are meditative, psychic and reliable.

As previously mentioned Pisces is the most mystical and occult sign of all. The Pisces native is compassionate almost to a fault, he cannot bear to watch others suffer. Pisces is kind and sympathetic to animals, children and generally anybody in distress. He can tolerate much adversity in his life and he tends to suffer inwardly. He is usually modest, possibly timid and lacking in self-confidence but he has a certain faith in the unknown. He has a great desire, to care for the sick and the needy, and to overcome the illusion of religious and social barriers of conformity and to share the feelings of others. Being born under such a sensitive water sign he has a weakness for alcohol and a love for the sea. Pisces is the most unworldly of all the twelve signs. He has a creative imagination and he is intuitive, impressionable and receptive to what goes on around him. He is intensely emotional and submissive, just as likely to delude himself about reality as to be fooled by the unscrupulous. He has a tendency to become despondent or over-emotional. This can create a detrimental negativism and a lack of that vital spark of life and energy. Pisces should try to cultivate a more positive attitude and be less subjective and emotional. Chances are he may be too gullible, temperamental and indecisive for his own good. He is uncertain and changeable and perhaps too reserved or secretive.

In business the great obstacle to the Pisces success is his indecision. If he can control this and refrain from being overemotional he can expect success in affairs parallel to his birth sign in the interests of the house in which the sun finds itself in his horoscope. In business, fraternal and marital relationships he gets along well with those born under his own sign or one that is opposite, trine to it or sextile; Pisces, Taurus, Cancer, Virgo, Scorpio, or

Capricorn. Research has demonstrated the Sun–Moon relationship to be excellent for marriage.

Decanate division shows that if born in the first ten degrees (decan) he has the full influence of Pisces and is very apt to be psychic and impressionable, and a great truth seeker with a distinctive flair for psychic rather than exact sciences. If born in the second decanate proneness to living a life hemmed in by restraint and restrictions, self–sacrifice, often voluntarily assumed as the price demanded by the world for the sake of assisting in its progress. Pisces gets the most out of life through alleviating the distress of others. Born in the third decan life will be hampered by vicissitudes and temptations of the flesh. The native may lead an eventful life with a wide choice of careers and reach the highest level of expression through psychic research.

The dignities of Neptune, the planetary ruler of Pisces, are that it governs Pisces and is exalted in Cancer. The debilities of Neptune are that it is in its detriment when in Virgo and in its fall when in Capricorn.

In mundane astrology Pisces rules hospitals, prisons, asylums and other places of confinement and everything pertaining to them.

#### \* Conclusion \*

You now have your general portrait for each of the twelve signs of the Zodiac. If there is any doubt regarding your understanding of each sign, now is the time to strengthen your confidence. Review each sign regularly and carefully commit the basic principals to memory. Remember the confidence of your clients in your wisdom will hinge on your knowledgeability of these signs. Most important we are only dealing with broad terms here. Each persons horoscope is as peculiar to him as his finger print. A total analysis is essential and when you graduate you will be able to do this.

You now have only some of the basic knowledge required to erect a horoscope chart. You are also acquiring a sound basis necessary for the delineation of an erected chart. Erection of a chart is a mechanical and relatively simple concept to learn. The delineation is much more complex and it is extremely vital for any practicing astrologer.

Up until this point we have talked mainly about signs and houses. Now we will be going into the planets and their effect on the earth and everything on it including human life. We must now get a clear picture of the size and movement of each planet and the different influences it exerts as it orbits the sun.

Keep in mind as you now study the planets this basic concept which is a cornerstone argument that astrology is true. We all know that the sun affects the earth and life because you only have to feel the water of a small lake before sunlight and after the sun has shone on it for a few hours, to know that the sun's radiation has raised the waters temperature. The moon and all the planets have no light of their own, they only reflect light from the sun. We know the moon affects water, namely the tides.

What you must bear in mind is the biological fact that each cell in the human body is 70% water. This is one of the prime reasons the sun and planets have the profound effect on human behavior and existence which all sincere astrologers understand. For this reason it is very important that you have a clear knowledge of the planets.

## ***LESSON VI***

### THE PLANETS

#### \* Introduction \*

Astrology is the science of the stars. There is no doubt that each of the nine planets and their satellites, revolving around the Sun, have a direct, special or individual influence upon the earth and everything that happens to it and on it. There are thousands of stars in the sky that can be seen on a clear night; however, only one of them is within our solar system and this one cannot be seen at night. That is our Sun. We see the light from our sun reflected from our moon and the planets in our solar system which are above the horizon. The other stars are beyond our solar system and very far away. Their influence upon us has not yet been analyzed.

Let us take a brief look at our galaxy with its 9 planets and 32 satellites and thousands of asteroids and comets, stretching over a domain at least 8 billion miles across – so far that light traveling at 186,282 miles a second, requires a half a day to cross it. If you think of the sun as a grapefruit then a grain of sand 40 ft. away would be Jupiter, and Jupiter is eleven times the size of the earth. In astrology we are concerned now with the Sun, Moon, Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune and Pluto. The influence that the planets exert on us, as they pass through the 12 signs in the zodiac has been studied and recorded for thousands of years. The studying is still going on and presently some of our graduate students are engaged in study which could help to expand the scope of astrology in the future. With any new materials presented to you, an outline of its history will help to clarify its substance.

#### HISTORY OF THE HEAVENS

As the shepherds of old watched the starry arch of the night wheel majestically overhead, they took great comfort in the apparent constancy of the heavens. Save for an occasional meteor whose brilliant trail flashed across the void of space each heavenly lamp stayed firmly fixed in its niche. But as ancient astronomers mapped the skies they found five "stars" that were strangely different. Most stars always held the same position in the same constellation, they appeared to be fixed in place. These particular five "stars" did not appear stationary, instead they wandered through a certain band of constellations. Also while the fixed stars shone with a twinkling light, the five shone with a light that was steadier. The Greeks called them planets, or wanderers because unaccountably and mysteriously they drifted from night to night across the winking field of lights in their own fashion, coming and going, sometimes disappearing for weeks at a time. The Greeks did not realize then that these orbital bodies were only reflecting the light of the only star in our solar system, i.e. the Sun. The Romans gave them the names of their gods: Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn. Uranus, Neptune and Pluto were discovered as astrology and astronomy continued to decipher information about the universe. From the earliest recorded times, astrologers

ascribed mystical qualities to these celestial bodies, as well as to the sun and the moon, teaching that they affect the destinies of nations and kings.

The planets move through the signs of the Zodiac and so through the houses of the horoscope changing their influence as they travel from sign to sign and house to house because this varies their relative distance from earth and influence thereon, e.g. Mighty Jupiter's influence on earth is much greater as its orbit brings it to its closest distance from earth than its farthest. This is true of all the planets.

In this course you will be instructed in a concise method of delineating the effect of each planet as it passes through each house and sign. Such delineation is based upon the thousands of records of effects on things and humans since astrology first began. You will refer back to this countless times during your career as a professional astrologer. Years of research has gone into this material and we feel it is the best available.

In their movements the planets form aspects to one another and to the Sun and moon. They also shape other important factors such as the midheaven and ascendent of the horoscope.

The planets do not move along at the same speed. The planet's speed varies according to its distance from the Sun. The farther away from the Sun the slower it travels and vice versa, the closer it is the faster it travels, e.g. Mercury is the closest planet to the Sun and also the fastest moving of all the planets as it takes only 88 days to pass through the entire Zodiac. Pluto on the other hand is the farthest planet from the Sun and also the slowest spending 247 years to pass through the Zodiac.

It is interesting to note that the ancients believed that the earth stood still, while all the heavenly bodies revolved around it. It was convenient for them to believe that their earth was the center of the universe for then man was the master of the universe. Unfortunately this was not so and as the instruments developed by astronomers became more intricate and efficient the Sun slowly evolved as the center of the universe. The man who cut through this problem was the Polish astronomer Copernicus. He worked out a new system which placed the Sun at the center of the universe. This was a daring idea, for at that time an attack on an earth-centered universe was considered an attack on the church. So the process of acceptance for Copernicus' work was slow and painful yet nonetheless successful although grossly in error.

Since then knowledge of the planets has been progressing at a monumental pace. Astronomers have not only plotted out the exact orbits of each planet but have made enormous strides in determining the size, atmosphere and make-up of all nine planets. They have found that the planets fall into two distinct classes, determined by size and density.

Density is a measure of the amount of matter in a body of a certain volume. (A baseball and a tennis ball, for example, are about the same size. But the baseball is much more dense; there is more matter packed into its volume.)

One class consists of small solid planets – Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, and Pluto. Earth is the largest of these. All have an average density several times that of water. The other class is made up of the giant planets – Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus and Neptune. The largest of these Jupiter, has a diameter almost eleven times greater than the earth's. Neptune, the smallest, has a diameter three and a half times that of earth. However, the densities of the four giants are low. So it follows that they must be made in part of gas or liquid.

Man is not a part of the planet earth alone. He is a part of the universe just as the earth and the other planets are, hence, man is not only subject to the aging process of earth, but to the aging process of the universe. This concept is one of the foundations of astrology, constantly reminding us that the planets all have an important part to play in our lives. Let's then explore our Sun centered solar system and the planets that orbit around it, with their satellites. See [Illustration I](#).

### SUN

The Sun, the only fixed celestial body in our solar system, is the center of that system. (Remember though that in astrology we consider the earth to be the center of the horoscope and thus the earth's symbol is not shown on the horoscope chart but we do show its satellite the moon.)

Our Sun is a solitary star, not a double, and it is the star we know best. Unlike the Sun, many stars travel through the sky in groups of two, and in most cases these stars orbit about each other and move around some mutual center of gravity.

The construction of the symbols of the Sun, Moon and the planets consists of a circle, a crescent and a cross in different individual arrangements. The circle represents man's individuality, the crescent is his personality, and the cross is his materiality. A dot in the circle implies the drive for creativity. The Sun's symbol is a circle with a dot in the center, the individuality surrounded by distinct creativeness. The circle represents what is infinite and boundless, that which has no beginning or end. Hence, it is an appropriate symbol for the Sun, without which life could not survive. The dot in the middle indicates the seed of a lesser light contained within the larger. The whole symbol typifies the Sun's personification of man's life and spirit.

The theory most commonly accepted, explaining the birth of the Sun and its planets, was devised by Immanuel Kant in 1775 and revised countless times since. It supposes that about 5 billion years ago the sun and the planets began to form out of a vast, thin-spread cloud of the gas and dust. The cloud particles were moving and tended to attract one another and so the cloud began to condense. As it condensed, the force of gravity at its center grew stronger and stronger and eventually the cloud collapsed on itself. It formed a huge ball of gas and dust that began to spin. The particles in the middle of the disk were under great pressure and temperatures rose until this central mass became white-hot and began to generate light and heat. Under very great pressure at very high temperatures, the nuclei of the hydrogen atoms fuse, forming the nuclei of helium atoms. As they do so, energy is given off and the energy is radiated. While the sun was forming at the center, the outer parts of

the disk had broken up into whirlpools of gas and dust. The dust particles settled toward the centers of the whirlpools and they began to collide. When two particles of the same size collided, they evaporated in the heat developed by the collision. When two particles of different sizes collided, the small one was added to the mass of the large one. In this way, during a few hundred million years, the planets formed. They were glowing hot, but they did not shine by nuclear fusion because their masses were not great enough to make the hydrogen nuclei fuse.

This is essentially why astrologers consider your Sun sign so powerful. It is the authority of our solar system. It gives existence and energy (life) to its satellites (planets) and without it the orbs could not survive. Not only are the planets controlled by the Sun but they owe their very existence to it. It becomes obvious, then, why the Sun is the most dominant force in the horoscope.

In astrology, the Sun represents the creative urge and the will to lead.

Man stripped of all his acquired habits and mannerisms, and of all the trappings of education and civilization is portrayed in the Sun's glorious influence. It reveals the man behind every mask he can make for himself. As an astrologer you will come to realize the high influence the sun has on each human being and everything else on earth. The influence must be considered with the varied and different influences of the planets reflecting and changing the Sun's radiation. Each planet and the moon produce a different effect. This phenomenon is the very heart of astrology. Most important is the fact that these varying effects have been scientifically proven! e.g. if you stand in the Sun long enough the radiation burns your skin. Refer to [lesson one](#) as to the Sun's effect on earth life.

The Sun represents life, not only in the heart but in each cell. And in all life, according to the ancient astrologer, there is consciousness – not necessarily self-consciousness but a consciousness which is aware of the presence and need of other living entities. The Sun is a fire star. It is said to be masculine or positive, that is it seeks to give rather than to receive. It is the natural ruler of the sign Leo and of the fifth house of the Zodiac.

You can see how crucial a careful interpretation of the Sun's influence will be in your client's chart. You will understand this clearly by the end of the course.

## THE MOON

The moon is very large in our sky. Although there are bigger moons in the solar system, ours is the biggest in proportion to its planet. When it rises or sets sometimes it looks huge. This is because we are looking at it through a heavier layer of atmosphere than when it is high above the horizon. This heavier layer of atmosphere acts like a magnifying glass. (See [Illustration III](#).) The symbol of the moon, being shaped like a crescent, pictures all that is receptive in your nature. It governs the instincts, the emotions, and the imagination. The moon is the storehouse of memory and if it is strongly situated in a chart they will have a good memory and be fascinated with history and antiques, unless of course there are other negating influences.

Just as the moon magnetically influences water in the oceans it also influences the water in the body's cells. Remember each cell contains 70% water! You are aware of the effect of the sun on water and hence on each cell. The moon in a chart influences ability, or lack of it, to draw large masses of people to you, whether in the home, the business world, on the stage, or in government.

The moon causes growth and rules fecundity. The power of the moon in your horoscope will determine which area of consciousness within you has the most chance of growth. Whereas the sun is the giver of life the moon is considered to be the soul that takes care of that life. When we say that the moon defines the personality we have to understand what the personality means to the astrologer. To the astrologer the personality affords us the power to realize that we as personalities are separate and distinct from others. It embraces, memory, all our feelings and emotions, to a certain extent reason, and our likes and dislikes. It is through all of these qualities that we are conscious that we are ourselves and not some other person. Unless, something tragic scars our memory of self, causing a dual personality, e.g., Jekyll and Hyde. This however must not be confused with the fact that we all feel differently on certain days, or even in certain years of our lives, when different aspects of the moon are forming, or when different transits are at work.

The moon is of the water element and so deals with our emotions. It is said to be feminine or negative meaning that it receives and holds rather than giving and creating. It is the ruler of the sign Cancer and of the natural fourth house.

Now suppose we visit each planet seeing it as if we were aboard an unmanned spacecraft that will approach it sometime within the next few years. In the autumn of 1973, a spacecraft will be launched on a voyage to Venus and Mercury, the two planets lying between earth and the sun. Our voyage first takes us to Venus and then Mercury and the planets beyond.

## VENUS

We are approaching Venus on the dark side and only a sliver of the lighted side is clearly visible. Behind us, 28 million miles distant, our home planet, has shrunk into a brilliant planet, brighter than any, except the sun, in the heavens. The messages we relay back to earth, traveling at the speed of light, take two and a half minutes to reach home. The sun, now only 67 million miles away has grown a third larger than it appears from earth and twice as much solar heat and light beam down on our spacecraft. Our closest approach, as we swing around the planet, is 3,100 miles away and Venus is shining brilliantly with a slightly yellowish color. All we can see however, is an expanse of dense clouds. That is all any man has ever seen of Venus and it may be all any man will ever see for what lurks below that veil is an awesome world of unbearable heat and pressures of terrifying distortions. Scientists estimate that the temperatures on this orb reach 1,000°F. at the equator. It is hardly suitable for life as man understands it. The atmosphere of this fiery planet is thought to be about 95 percent carbon dioxide exerting a pressure 100 times the pressure of the earth's atmosphere. The dense clouds surrounding the planet are as high as 35 miles. (The highest earth clouds are 10 miles)

Two well known symbols, that of the circle of the sun and the cross of matter, form the construction of the symbol for Venus. They are joined together with the circle at the top. The whole portrays the sun energizing the earth and causing vegetation and animal life. Venus, then, manifests all the things of the world glorified under the radiance of the sun. It embraces the principle of love on earth, of attraction, joy, gifts and benefits.

Venus moves the reproductive instinct into the emotion of love in all its beauty. It confers the power of cohesion, uniting things and people together. Venus is considered to be a benefic in the natural horoscope and when favorably positioned it signifies harmony, sweetness, gentleness, a definitive spirit of refinement and an exacting good taste. It encourages man to make his surroundings beautiful and so it governs the arts. In music it rules the melody rather than the harmony, the latter being more under the mental mercury.

Venus rules two signs and two houses. It rules Taurus and the second house, also Libra and the seventh house. It is a water planet and feminine in nature.

## MERCURY

Catapulted by Venus' gravitational field, our spacecraft bends its flight path by some 40 degrees and races on toward Mercury, the innermost and smallest planet in the solar system. A year or so later we reach this small planet which has only about a third the diameter of earth. We approach it so fast and it looms so swiftly that we almost feel vertigo. Our earth lies 93 million miles behind yet it is still a very bright point of light. The sun is now only 43 million miles away and it appears twice as large as when viewed from earth. The surface of Mercury filling our view is a rare sight, never clearly seen from earth. Now we see it with perfect clarity, no atmospheric effects block the vista. We are only about 600 miles from the surface, and our eyes can distinguish objects as small as 1,700 feet across. Everywhere we see evidence that this rocky cinder has been cratered by comets and asteroids, and it is not hard to imagine that it was once scorched by tremendous heat. Would there be life on Mercury? Conditions do not seem at all favorable and no one seriously suggests it.

Mercury is the planet of mind, reason, and intellect. Its symbol is made up of the cross of matter, the circle of the sun, and the crescent of the moon. Mind gets its first start through receiving an impact from the physical world. This impact sets up an emotion in the consciousness (moon). The emotion is then transmitted through the fire of the life of the sun into action: the total result is called mind.

When Mercury, or the mind, begins to play upon the instincts of man, progress starts. For example, when it plays upon the nutritive instinct, it begins to find new ways and means of cooking food. When Mercury plays on the instinct of pugnacity, man begins to make clubs, swords, and armor and from there has "progressed" to the terrifying weapons of today. Mercury of itself is neither moral nor unmoral. It is amoral.

Mercury implies intellectual movement and progress. The mind sets the human species apart from the animal, which acts from instinct. Mercury distinguished the progressive man

from the unprogressive, who can do only what he has been trained to do in his youth. Instinct is an inborn gift and it comes from the moon.

Mercury rules two signs and two houses. It rules Gemini and the third house and Virgo and the sixth house. It is sometimes referred to as sexless but nonetheless some astrologers say it is masculine when ruling Gemini, and feminine when ruling Virgo.

## MARS

Propelled by an atlas-centaur orbit our spacecraft rapidly approaches Mars and sets down into an orbit about 1,000 miles above the ruddy surface. The colors are burnt ocher in the bright areas and a gray red in the dark, with none of the greens and blues observers "see" in their telescopes. The bright greens and blues are simply optical illusions. Incredible huge craters appear and Nix Olympica (snow of Olympus) a bright-ringed crater 300 miles across, and Soles Lacus (lake of the sun) are among the more notable ones. These romantic names were given at a time when every educated man was steeped in mythology.

The craters dominate the landscape and we see no mountain chains, no bodies of water, no canals. The atmosphere seems clear almost to the horizon, where a narrow rim of bluish haze, with an occasional bright patch, gives way quickly to the blackness of space. A diminished sun shines some 130,000,000 miles away, only 2/3 of its remembered size. Only half as much solar energy is falling on Mars as on earth.

The circle and the cross, as was the case with Venus, compose the symbol of Mars. The difference is that the cross is now at the top. The whole symbol implies the concept of matter emerging from the sun or the influence of solar activity in the creation of matter. For this reason Mars is said to rule creativity, new outpourings of energy, construction, invention, ceaseless activity, force, power, work, strife, war, and death. It promulgates the endless new stream of energy which brings about new forms; hence it is said to rule the sex energies.

Mars is considered a malific planet and so it lends a harmful influence in the horoscope depending on its position. For instance when the rays of Mars play on the moon, they single out the instinct of pugnacity, anger and self-assertiveness. Mars can either make these forces extremely detrimental or it can exalt them into the noblest of virtues – courage, strength of character, self-confidence, and power.

The very symbol of Mars in its ancient form is that of the orb of power given to kings at their coronation. In pictures made for the church during the Middle Ages, God the father-creator is distinguished from the other members of the trinity by the fact that he carries the orb – the symbol of Mars – denoting power and creation.

Mars is of the fire element and hence it displays ceaseless activity, zeal and fervor. It is positive or masculine and it rules two signs and two houses, Aries and the first house, Scorpio and the eighth house. Pluto has some rule over Scorpio too. The fire of Mars usually results in heat whereas the fire of the sun should result in light.

## JUPITER

As we leave Mars behind and beam in on Jupiter, the largest planet in the solar system, we must pass through the asteroid belt which occupies 150,000,000 miles of space. The belt has no known yet astrological influence on us hence it is mainly study for astronomers. As we approach the mammoth orb two striking phenomena catch the eye. A great red spot, one of the most curious objects of the entire solar system, stands out like a blemish on the southern hemisphere. Its elliptical area, seeming to float among the clouds is larger than earth's surface. The most likely theory yet proposed suggests that it is a kind of eddy in the atmosphere caused by a depression on a high spot far below. A crisp black circle marks the shadow of 10, one of Jupiter's 12 moons. Unexplainably, this shadow has been known to emit more radiant heat than the cloud layer around it. 11 additional and smaller satellites give Jupiter a family larger than the sun's. Astronomers and scientists know very little about Jupiter and yet what they do know and what they surmise make it in many ways the most exciting, the most provocative, body in the solar system.

The symbol of Jupiter is composed of the crescent moon of the soul consciousness and the cross of matter. The moon elevated signifies the instinctive consciousness. It also signifies a consciousness which has learned all its lessons and is now perfected. It has become a moon, or soul, of what we might term the super-conscious rather than the subconscious. The emotions have been purified and become beautiful through the play of the imaginative faculty which, having seen a vision of something lovely, has worked to attain it.

The emotions can become beautiful under Jupiter, but they are always expanded in scope. The moon and Venus may express tenderness to one, but Jupiter may express benevolence, kindness, and generosity to everyone.

Jupiter transforms the imagination of the moon into vision and identity. It seeks the cause and basis of actions leaving all traces of instinct behind. It is basically the planet of the judge and the lawmaker continually inquiring into motives and purposes. The morality, inherent in man, begins its development when the rays of Jupiter are favorable. There is nothing petty or small about Jupiter as it cultivates a broad outlook standing for soul growth, expansion and magnanimity.

Jupiter is of the fire element, masculine or positive. It rules two signs and two houses – Sagittarius and the ninth house and Pisces and the twelfth house.

## SATURN

Since leaving earth it has taken us three years even with Jupiter's powerful kick, to reach Saturn, the sixth planet in our solar system. The sun lies nearly 900 million miles behind us, twice as far as from Jupiter. Its warmth and light are only a hundredth of what we are accustomed to: Saturn travels in external twilight. A message to earth – at the speed of light – now requires nearly an hour and a half.

We are diving under Saturn and its famous rings and 10 moons are clearly visible. Still some 281,000 miles away Saturn, the most extravagant sight in the family of the sun, glows with a dull yellowish hue. But the brilliant white of the rings suggests the glitter of countless diamonds.

The symbol of Saturn is composed of the same cross and crescent as we have in Jupiter, but in this case the cross of matter is at the top. Saturn is the scientist, whereas Jupiter is the exponent of theories. Scientific laws and the countless theories of mankind are created by Saturn. These laws and theories are communicated to the world through Jupiter. Facts and material things weigh down upon the soul of Saturn and from these he evolves theories. Jupiter, then, accepts the theories and uses them to accelerate the social or economic progress of the world. Saturn's symbol implies that material facts are blended in the consciousness until man arrives at some inner understanding, and can give utterance to a statement, rule, law, or reason for the facts being as they are. Saturn rules all that is intricately organized.

Saturn is the principle of contradiction and the principle of solidification. Snow crystals in all their exquisite beauty and form come under Saturn. They are matter in its specialized form. Saturn rules form whether the pillars of a church, the shell of an egg or the skin of the body. Because Saturn governs composition it rules the governments of nations and the executive bodies of large corporations. It rules citizen organization whereas Jupiter rules the ideas underlying the structure.

Saturn gives depth to the character and strength of conviction. He confers sobriety, prudence, good sense, dependability, and patience. Saturn should be considered the builder of an idea whereas Jupiter is its architect. If you should use paltry materials and skimp on the construction of your ideas, beware of the storms of Saturn, but, if you have used efficient material then Saturn will do little harm.

Saturn is a masculine or positive planet and it rules two signs and two houses; Capricorn and the tenth house and Aquarius and the eleventh house. Modern astrologers also attribute some Uranian influence in Aquarius.

## URANUS

It is now 4 years since we left Jupiter and we are moving into the outer solar system, crossing the orbits of far-ranging comets. Uranus now roughly 15,000 miles away, appears as a pale greenish orb with faint markings. Five moons are in its retinue. Earth glimmers nearly 2 billion miles away and messages traveling at the incredible speed of light require nearly 2 hours and 45 minutes to reach earth. Uranus is unique in the solar system in that its axis is inclined at the peculiar angle of 98 degrees from the plane of its orbit hence it lies somewhat on its side.

The two pillars of the symbol of Uranus represent human nature and the divine. The symbol of Uranus signifies the energy of the spirit playing upon matter, and conversely, all investigation of matter resulting in some form of dynamic energy.

Uranus is the planet of insight and inquiry into the astounding laws governing nature. The insight appears in flashes and defines the times when material things can be beneficial and when to avoid them. It is the planet of the inventor, and is original and scientific, almost never prone to emotion.

Very significantly Uranus governs astrology. This is because it extends an acute insight into the very substance of the laws that concern man and his relationship to the solar system. It is the planet of electricity and is sometimes said to be malefic, for when it strikes, it can cause the whole efforts of a lifetime to tumble down and be destroyed. But this is more than likely because the plan of life has been wrong. Before something new can exist the old must be destroyed. Some of our greatest men have had to start over in the middle of life, and it has been the new profession which has brought enduring fame.

As man evolves and he learns more about Uranus, he discovers by insight and self control how to manage the effects of Uranus in his chart and how to make use of its illumination without being destroyed. It is sometimes referred to as the planet of revolutionaries, for it is never content to allow old institutions to continue without change. It is for this reason that Saturn and Uranus are constantly in mortal conflict. Those with a strong Uranus influence tend to act from motives and reasons that ordinary humanity cannot understand. He is considered peculiar and is often disliked, because people tend to dislike what they do not understand.

Uranus is masculine, positive and electric. It is part ruler of the sign Aquarius.

## NEPTUNE

As we move away from Uranus we see Neptune dead ahead, a bluish-green sphere whose features have never been photographed from earth. Farthest out of the giant planets, this twin of Uranus now moves nearly 3 billion miles from the sun. So intense is the cold that our spacecraft would drop to 370° below zero F, except for the heat from our radio-isotope thermal generators. Information about Neptune is sorely needed as our understanding of it and its moons is meager. However, the radio telescope in Arecibo, Puerto Rico, plus NASA's space ship program will teach us a lot more about Pluto/ Neptune/ Uranus, the known universe and the other planets.

Both Uranus and Neptune have densities greater than Jupiter and Saturn. This suggests that the two outer planets are not as rich in hydrogen and helium, but must contain a higher proportion of water and ammonia ices as do comets.

The symbol of Neptune is the trident, which confers power over the sea, and its inhabitants. The symbol is composed of the crescent of the moon pierced by the staff of the sun. Spirit penetrates swiftly and surely into man's consciousness and when man is worthy of it, confers the gift of prophecy.

The effects of Neptune are the most eccentric of all the planets. Similar to Uranus Neptune does not seem to act from any reason or motive that can be understood by people in

general. Neptune is more involved with beauty rather than forces which seem to monopolize Uranus. Neptune's vibrations can give the composer in one moment the whole of an opera. This, of course, is contingent with the rest of the native's chart as Neptune alone does not contribute any love of active hard work. Neptune inclines to be the dreamer.

Neptune bestows poetry, prophecy, and fragrance whereas Uranus, like the sun, gives light. Uranus is concerned with the mechanisms of the radio. Neptune affords the ability of distribution of the voices and music from the radio over the whole earth. Neptune rules all things that are widely distributed, whether rumors, or chainstore businesses. Uranus rules the actual act of advertising but the carrying of the information to wide areas of people comes under Neptune.

Neptune is sometimes thought to be too elusive to help the businessman, but it is pure fact that some of the most successful businessmen often have Neptune strongly situated in their horoscopes. Such men have a mystic uncanny knack of realizing the most effective item to make the corresponding right move.

Neptune provides second sight, mediumistic power, and the knowledge of the past and the future. After centuries of denial that such gifts existed, several of our large universities are now studying these matters. Whereas Uranus is often too positive in insisting upon his ideas being put into action prematurely, Neptune is often too negative ever to put his ideas into action. Uranus is vigorous and Neptune is diffuse.

Neptune is a planet of the water element that is, emotional. It is a part ruler of Pisces and the twelfth house.

## PLUTO

When we finally approach our outer-most planet we are now thirty times as far from the sun as is earth, and the solar energy falling on each square mile is a thousandth of that for earth. Arid, frigid, and dark, Pluto numbs the mind with its remoteness and hostility. Icy hummocks and a sprawling crater glimmers in the wan light of a tiny sun (bright star) nearly four billion miles away.

The symbol of Pluto is composed of the sun, moon, and the cross of matter, or spirit, soul, and body. Pluto defines the epochal periods when we can sense abrupt changes in our lives that have been unknown for some time. The caterpillar changes into the butterfly. We can perceive this phenomena the instant the butterfly arrives yet it takes long and calculated observation on the nature of caterpillars to realize that this radical change is part of its destiny. We can give scientific explanation for what has happened, but we really don't know. All we know is that the change has taken place. This change is innate within the caterpillar and we attribute this to Pluto. The suddenness lies in our consciousness, which realizes that the caterpillar has become something we did not expect. The pattern is innate, but we find it hard to conceive that a creeping thing can be suddenly able to fly.

Pluto defines the stages in our lives when action or activities, which have been happening in our subconscious become a concrete reality, a basis for consideration. We awake to facts, and our reflections upon these facts becomes a turning point in our lives, for better or worse. With certain people, a Pluto aspect leads to a fuller, more constructive life, and to a mature consciousness. With other people, it marks a period when laziness, resentment, loose morals, evils, and even crime, can become the order of the day.

Pluto marks the transformations which took place at various points of our lives that have made us what we are today. How often do we hear people say, "If I had acted differently at such-and-such a period of my life, how different, for the better or worse, my life would be today." If we progressed a person's chart, we will undoubtedly find that the change could be accrued to a strong transit of Pluto at such a time.

Pluto then will direct us to the time when the mind comprehends events which have previously stood fixed in our subconscious.

Pluto rules atomic energy. In the world of philosophy and religion Pluto rules the factory that causes radical transformation in human lives, such as those that have completely changed certain people, notable for laziness, selfishness, or drunkenness, into happy, radiant, constructive forces for righteousness. Under Pluto the change is real. In Neptune such a change may be only a temporary appearance yet the vision of Neptune may have to appear before Pluto can step in to make the final change.

Pluto rules the ending that leads to new beginnings – the end of the caterpillar and the start of the butterfly. For precisely this reason, Pluto exerts exact influence over Scorpio and also over Aries, the sign of new beginnings. It is a fire planet and, therefore, masculine.

\* Conclusion \*

We have now covered our solar system and our long voyage to its planets is over. We are beginning to comprehend the continuity of the celestial bodies, and indeed, their implicit influence on each and every one of us. As you continue your development as an astrologer the planets, just as the signs, will become very personal to you. Eventually they will become your best friends as you master the art of delineating their influence in a chart (your own, a friend, or a client's). Always keep in mind that the light you see coming from them is a reflection of the Sun's (our solar systems one star) radiation. This reflection of the Sun's radiation varies, depending upon many things, e.g. distance from earth at a given time; arrival of the radiation at the same time as other radiation from other planets reaches earth; natal horoscope of the person now being affected, and there are others. This is what makes each person different and the astrologer analyzes these varying effects by erecting the horoscope, progressing it and delineating. The chart on page 35, [illustration A](#), is designed so that you can have this important information readily available at any time. It is something which you should commit to memory as early as possible.

## *LESSON VII*

### THE TWELVE HOUSES OF THE ZODIAC

Before we commence this lesson, demonstrating the influence of the houses of the zodiac, we would like to extend a hearty congratulations to you. Our files indicate that 100% of our students who successfully complete Lesson VI will continue on and soon receive their diploma. They are then professionally accredited astrologers and the personal gratification and financial reward will begin.

We are now approaching the very heart of the course so if you have even the slightest doubt concerning any of the material, please, for your own sake, through conscientious review solidify your confidence in those areas now.

#### \* Introduction \*

In astrology, every horoscope is divided into twelve sections and these sections are known as the houses of the Zodiac. Each house is carefully assigned to some department of life. It is very important that we understand that these different departments are not selected arbitrarily nor are they assigned in a haphazard way. They are the direct result of thousands of years of careful observations and recordings. After you have erected and delineated a few charts, you will begin to realize their accuracy. They are related to the signs but we must not confuse them with the signs because signs and the houses are two very different things. The signs are fields of potential energy and influence moving through the houses, or departments of life which remain stationary. The signs exert the heavenly influence and the houses represent the intricate allotments of our earthy assets and experiences.

The first House begins on the cusp of the ascendant and extends 30° below to the next cusp which is the cusp for the Second house. The rest of the Houses follow in a counter clock-wise manner. Depending exclusively on the exact time and location of birth, any of the signs may be on the cusp of the House or in the House. Whatever sign is at the cusp of the First House is known as the ascendant sign and is succeeded by the rest of the Zodiacal signs in their correct unbroken sequence. Where Pisces ends, Aries begins, for the zodiac is truly an unbroken circle. See [Illustration A](#) where Aries is shown as the ascendant sign and is on the cusp of the first House.

The modern division of the horoscope divides the zodiac into four distinct parts. The first is a horizontal line, or the equator, which divides the Zodiac graphically into a top and a bottom section. The second is a vertical line, or the meridian, which divides the horoscope into an eastern and a western (right) section. (See [Illustration A](#).)

The division of the horoscope by the horizon or horizontal line into day and night is regarded as a real division founded on fact. The top half contains the houses from sunrise to sunset, while the northern half contains the houses from sunset to sunrise.

When casting a horoscope, if you find the majority of the native's (Native is the term used to describe the person whose chart is being considered.) planets are above the horizon, he will tend to possess extrovert tendencies, a preoccupation with externals, surrounded by an objective point of view. If you find the majority of planets below the horizon, you can expect the native to be largely subjective and to be strongly dependent on instinct and intuition and his character will be more of the introvert type. These broad concepts have been proven true by countless careful individual observations made over thousands of years.

Planets posited in the left or eastern half are rising and these planets have more inherent power than planets in the western half where they are setting. The eastern half represents the self, and planets posited here are said to afford the native a freedom of action to compliment the more apparent free will. If you determine that there are more rising than setting planets in a horoscope, then the course of life seems to be more under the personal control of the native. He enjoys his self made man concept. The western or right half of the zodiac is connected with other people, and an excess of planets in this half seems to bind up the life with the activities and destinies of other people. Malefic planets, posited in these western houses, are strengthened at the expense of the benefic planets whose influence is weakened.

Throughout the centuries the Houses have been grouped in innumerable different combinations. Astrologers have researched and tested all of the different combinations in a continual effort to discover the most efficient house bonds in the face of a horoscope. We have conducted our own research and selected certain groupings which we feel will help to clarify the relationship between the houses and the horoscope.

There are three distinct kinds of houses and it is crucial that we understand the basic differences. The first group of houses is known as the Angular Houses. They are referred to as Angular because they occupy the angles of the chart. (1st, 4th, 7th, 10th) These angles indicate east, north, west, and south respectively. Planets posited in angular houses have a greater scope for dynamic action than planets in the other houses. The second group of houses (2nd, 5th, 8th, 11th) are known as the Succedent Houses. The explanation of the word succedent is relatively simple. These houses succeed the angular houses. When a planet is posited in any of these four houses, it lends an influence of stability, strong willpower, and rigidity of purpose. The third group of houses, 3rd, 6th, 9th, 12th, are called Cadent Houses. Planets posited in these houses do not have much opportunity for action. They do not confer great stability, but they tend towards adaptability of thought, communication of ideas and the ability to get along with other people.

The house position of a planet modifies the nature of the sign in which the planet is found e.g. Suppose we are studying a person with the Sun in Taurus, an obstinate sign. If this should be located in a cadent house, this Taurean will be more adaptable and not quite so obstinate as one whose Sun is posited in a succedent house. We can see how critical the exact position of the planets in the houses is. When we are delineating a horoscope, it is necessary to make a list of the houses and to determine the exact location of each planet and to estimate the modifications that occur due to positions.

The next grouping is a fourfold division of houses known to astrologers as "The Houses of Function." Often it does not receive its due acclaim in some textbooks on astrology. We find it interesting and extremely helpful as an aid to a fuller understanding of the houses.

The first division is accorded to "The Houses of Life" (1st, 5th, 9th). These are the houses of dynamic energy, energy, enthusiasm, motivating power, and religious conviction. They respectively represent the body, soul, and spirit of the mind. They are often referred to as the Trinity of Life.

The second division concerns "The Houses of Endings" 4th, 8th, 12th. The fourth house refers to the end of life, the 8th refers to death, and the 12th refers to the end results of our entire course of life, particularly in regard to health, or wrong-doing. It also defines the psychological reaction to the contemplation of death, old age, etc.

The third division implies "The Houses of Substance" (2nd, 6th, 10th). These houses represent the temporal status of the native. The 2nd house defines the accumulation of money and the possessions of the native. The 6th house indicates the comforts of the native, food, clothing, health, etc. The 10th house also demonstrates the ability of the person to go out and work for these comforts.

The fourth division is "The Houses of Relationships" (3rd, 7th, 11th). The third house is associated with the ties of consanguinity, brothers, sisters, close relatives, etc. This house includes the native's neighbors. The seventh house tells of the ties of conjugality and legality, such as spouse and partners. The eleventh house points to the ties of friendship, close associates and advisers.

A simple chart will clear up any confusion you might find.

PERSONAL:	1) The Body	5) The Soul	9) The Spirit
POSSESSIVE:	2) Wealth	6) Household	10) Honor
RELATIVE:	3) Consanguine	7) Conjugal	11) Congenial
TERMINAL:	4) The Grave	8) Paradise	12) Heaven

Another grouping, of modern origin and based largely on statistical research is:

SELF	12	1	2	3
COMPANIONS	4	5	6	7
PUBLIC	8	9	10	11

In the following pages each House will be treated individually as we demonstrate the significance of each House and its relationship to the other Houses. It is crucial to realize that we are presenting this portrait of each House without considering the modifications that result from the positions and aspects of radical, progressed or transiting planets. In a future

lesson you will learn the precise meaning of each sign and planet as they pass through each House. Before we proceed with this you must possess a solid, concrete knowledge of each House.

\* The First House (Ascendant) \*

The first House of the horoscope governs the general disposition or temperament of the individual. Broadly speaking it shows how a person will think, feel and act when entirely alone and free from contact or association with anyone else.

The sign which is actually on the cusp of the first House is termed the rising sign (ascending sign) or simply the ascendant. In its own way the ascendant is one of the most important of the signs in the horoscope. This is because the planet which rules it, applies its radiation more powerfully over the life and particularly over the general character of the individual than any of the other planets. This is due to the fact that it is rising above the horizon and is magnified by earth's atmosphere which makes its radiation more powerful. (See [Illustration](#) on page 12 in Lesson VI to understand this principle.)

Since the first House contains the cusp of the ascendant, it is the first and most important of the Angular Houses. The first House marks the culmination point of the eastern hemisphere and it implies a line of awareness of the self. Representing selfhood the primary significance of the first House lies in its call to action.

The first House contains the power for the individual to map out his Destiny. It defines and personalizes the native concerning his personal appearance, disposition and manner, and the moral and subjective viewpoint and motivating impulses. It distinguishes the personality from the viewpoint. The first House also exercises a distinct influence over the general conditions of healthy showing the strength or weakness of the physical body and the liability to certain kinds of disease.

When it concerns a Mundane Figure, the first House embraces the political aspects of human nature. It also signifies the masses of people with their prosperity and health or the reverse. It determines the interior national traits and habits of a country along with the public consciousness and collective expression. The first House proclaims the psychology of the masses and their reactions and conditions.

In a political campaign it represents the majority.

In a contest it signals the public favorite, the present champion or the underdog challenger, and the decision or decisions of the referee. In a lawsuit it promulgates the defendant and his success with the court or his sentence.

In an organization it spells the personnel, including the stockholders and all who work for the company in any capacity, the company's morale and its attitudes toward its competitors.

\* The Second House (House of Finance) \*

The Second House of the horoscope signals the personal financial interests of the native. It specifies the individual's attitudes towards money and it typifies the sources from which money can be obtained by personal effort and the ways in which it can be lost; either through personal extravagance, a wrong handling of affairs, as a result of other conditions intervening or through circumstances or persons associated in some way with the personal life.

It is necessary to point out here that when we talk about money gained or lost we do not mean as a result of speculation or investment for that comes under the influence of the Fifth House. When it is gained or lost through a legacy or an inheritance it is through the influence of the Eighth House. In the Second House we are concerned only with the gain or loss of money through the personal efforts.

The Sign which is on the cusp of the Second House exercises a very powerful radiation as it indicates the natural personal attitude toward financial affairs. It will show whether a person is naturally extravagant or the reverse, with all the intervening ratios. It will indicate the avenues through which money will be gained or lost as a result of personal action, and the people or things associated with such gains or losses. Since liberty depends largely upon the financial success or failure, this can also be referred to as the House of Liberty.

The Second House also stipulates the heredity and social background with which the native is equipped for the pursuit of his destiny. The secretive thoughts and desires of the native find their home in the Second House.

In a Mundane Figure the Second House exerts influence over the nation's wealth, taxation revenue, stocks, bonds, shares, and all places and activities connected in any way with money, such as banks, stock exchanges, trade and commerce. It sheds some influence on taxation but it does not consider the effect of the taxes on the people. It represents the purchasing power of the nation, its national expenditures and receipts, currency and its circulation and liquid assets.

In a National Figure it represents the Treasury.

In an organization it influences the liquid assets and voluntary expenditures and it will determine the ability of the Company to earn profits.

\* The Third House (Travel, Studies, Relatives, Correspondence) \*

The Third House, ruling over quite a variety of conditions, may be termed "one of the composite" Houses in contradistinction to some of those which concentrate influence on one particular condition. For instance, while the First and Second Houses rule the temperament and finance respectively, the Third House, although exercising chief rule over short and medium distance travel also exerts an influence over personal relatives and all matters pertaining to them. This includes studies, writings, correspondence and all forms of communication excepting the television which is associated with the Ninth House. It is important to note that regarding relatives, the Third House indicates one's own relatives and

not those of the marriage or business partner, as the latter come under the influence of the Ninth House.

All forms of travel, rail, road, air, water, fall under the demise of this House. The elemental nature of the Sign which occupies the cusp of this House will, to a great extent, indicate the personal preference toward the particular type of travel which is desired. The Fiery Signs indicate an attraction toward road travel, the Earthy Signs toward rail travel, the Air Signs attract toward air travel and the Watery Signs signal travel by water. It is important to remember that the Third House deals strictly with short and medium distance travel. Long distance travel as such comes under the influence of the Ninth House.

The Third House also signals the synthesizing powers of the mind and its ability to form sense impressions and mold destiny within one's social environment.

The Third House also signifies the type of study which an individual will follow and how much energy he will pour into it.

In a mundane figure the Third House defines all inland transit, traffic and communication and the nature of the public demands upon and the degree of public patronage accorded to the nation's transportation and communication facilities.

In a court of law the Third House influences the court reports.

In an organization it affects the traffic, transits, transportation and communication departments, inter-office communications and the specific information transmitted within the organization.

#### \* The Fourth House (Endings) \*

The Fourth House begins at the point of midnight. For this reason it is assigned to all endings, to old age, and to old people. It also exercises power over the family life into which we are born, i.e., the home life created either by the parents or, in certain instances, the foster parents, or the communal type of home life of an orphanage. Obviously, in the latter instances there will be little if any parental influence. In general the Fourth House defines our environment no matter how often it changes during our lifetime.

The initial phase of the home-life obviously will be broken either by marriage or vocation and a new home image created. Thus, under normal circumstances, a new sequence of domestic conditions are created which can be completely different from those of the parental home due to the influence and desires of the marriage partner. Further changes in these conditions can, again, be set up when a child or children are born. When the vocational aspirations compel a change, they can be of quite a drastic nature. Vocational activity in any field can cause a departure from one set home arrangement to one invariably of a very different character. These domestic or "living" conditions are termed the environment as distinct from the work or business sphere, and this is the chief function over which the Fourth House rules.

The Sign on the cusp of the Fourth House will show the kind of parental domestic arrangement and family life into which one is born as well as the subsequent changes which are possible in connection with vocation and marriage or the setting up of an independent home.

*Note: Remember in a future lesson you will be given a chart demonstrating the particular influence of each sign and each planet as it passes through each House. For the present, however, it is important that your knowledge of the significance of each House develops.*

Apart from conditions of environments again depending upon the cusp Sign, the Fourth House has a very dominant rule over the conditions in operation during the closing years of life – the period generally known as "the end of life."

In a Mundane Figure, the Fourth House represents circumstances and events affecting real estate values, mines and the products, buildings, crops, produce and all agricultural interests.

In a National Figure it portrays the characteristics of any governmental opposition, and the time that such opposition may be expected to culminate.

In a court of law the Fourth House defines the efficiency of the jury.

In an organization it signals the real estate investments and the holdings.

\* (The Fifth House (Family and Romance) ) \*

The Fifth House of the horoscope governs the principle of creation – physical, artistic, and financial. This House is assigned to children and also to things that cause thrills and excitement, such as theatres, entertainment, gambling and speculation. It will show the physical capacity for procreation, whether one is likely to have a large or small family, and the sex which will be likely to predominate. At the same time, in judging matters to do with children it is essential to study the horoscope of both parents for the Fifth House of one may contradict the Fifth House of the other and the indication of a large family in one may be offset by the other.

The nature of the Sign on the cusp of the Fifth House is very important for certain Signs are known as fruitful Signs and others as barren Signs.

FRUITFUL	BARREN
Cancer	Gemini
Scorpio	Leo
Pisces	Virgo

The rest of the Signs exercise a more or less normal radiation. Of course there are instances when, even with fruitful Signs on the cusp of the Fifth House, either a small or no family at all occurs. Alternatively, barren Signs on the cusp of the Fifth House do not always deny a family. A great deal will depend on whether or not there is a planet in the Fifth House or the Sign position of the planet ruling the Fifth House.

The financial creative power as far as speculation and investment of the native is also tempered by the aspects made to or by any planet in the Fifth House or to or by the planet ruling the Sign on the cusp of Fifth. Good aspects will assist matters to do with money but bad aspects will bring difficulties and accentuate denying vibrations.

The artistic expression of the native is determined by the influence of the Fifth House depending, once again, on the Sign and planetary determinants involved.

In a Mundane Figure the Fifth House signifies children and their attitude and their complete environment, schools, amusements, sports, etc. It also expresses public speculations and investments and the inclination to receive or pay debts. And since it is the realm of the country's creative and procreative activities, it indicates the probable changes in the birth rate during the period immediately following that for which the Figure is cast. In a National Figure it affects the upper legislative house.

In an organization it determines the executive personnel.

#### \* The Sixth House (Health and Work) \*

The Sixth House describes the general health of the native, and the type of sickness to which he is prone. It also determines the conditions with which the daily work is carried out, even though this normally is shown by the Tenth House. Its chief concern, however, is to elucidate the conditions surrounding the work or duty involved and the reaction where co-workers, employers or employees are concerned.

The Zodiacal Sign actually on the cusp of the Sixth House will show the degree of physical strength or weakness and the ailments to which the individual will be susceptible.

Naturally a blending of the Sign influence and any planet in the Sixth House must be made in order to gauge the outcome from the standpoint of health and sickness. In addition to the Sixth House effects, the Sign that contains the Sun, and the one containing the Moon, will exert a direct effect even though the Sun and the Moon are not in the Sixth House. The Sign containing the planet that is the ruler of the Sign on the cusp of the Sixth House affords some added information.

While studying these influences it must constantly be remembered that the Sun's position will show the physical strength whereas the Moon's position will influence the functional side of nature.

So far as conditions of work are concerned, considered apart from the actual nature of the vocation that is followed, one has to make allowance for one of three factors, i.e., whether the individual under consideration is employed, is an employer, or carries out vocational activities on his or her own initiative. The Cardinal Signs on the cusp of the Sixth House give the strongest indication of the exercising of control over others. The Fixed Signs show the greater capacity for the actual carrying out of work or duties. Mutable signs demonstrate such in-between positions as Foreman or Shop-Steward. The Fire Signs will undoubtedly increase the natural enthusiasm for the work being done.

In a Mundane Figure it enhances the public health and the laboring class including all involuntary services rendered by the people.

In a National Figure it favors any political party supporting Labor.

In a Court of Law the deliberations of the jury and the Court records and reports are influenced by the Sixth House. In an organization the Sixth House affects the attitudes, efficiency and general conditions of the employees.

\* The Seventh House (Marriage and Partnership) \*

The Seventh Home begins at the point of sunset. This home affects not the self, as does the First House, but the other people with whom you associate, or ally yourself. It rules all partners with whom you have contact. It, therefore, includes business partners as well as the marriage partner. The conditions of this house indicate how you act in public, and the type of public you attract. It shows the public's reaction to you. This House is the reciprocal or opposite of the First House and this is an extremely important note. (NOTE – Observation and recording have concluded that the six Houses below the Horizon are dependents of demand or of the inclination to act while the six above the horizon afford the native the facilities for action. Each separate House acts in a reciprocal or complimentary manner to its opposing house.

The Seventh House of the Horoscope is a very important House for it is one of the Houses of Association, and its influences, good or bad will bring great happiness or great unhappiness.

The Fiery Signs invariably show that there is a great deal of impulse in the forming of attachments and in the steps toward marriage and wisdom and care is always necessary not to confuse fascination with true love. They incline to an early marriage. The Earthy signs will lend more discrimination in the choice of a marriage partner and the tendency to rush marriage is absent. The Airy Signs attract towards marriage because of the desire for companionship and affection. The Watery Signs attract to marriage but more so because of the domestic comforts and amenities for all these signs manifest a natural desire for home comforts and the home side of life.

When considering marital affairs the position of the Sun in a female horoscope and of the Moon in a male horoscope must be scanned and its Sign position should blend with the Sign

indication of the Seventh House. Of course, if the Sun is posited in the Seventh House in a female horoscope or the Moon in a male horoscope, then the influence of the Sign will be proportionately enhanced.

In the final assessment of marital matters and the prospects of marriage, the positions of the Sun and Moon should always be considered and the planetary influence analyzed.

In a Mundane Figure, the Seventh House stipulates the public as an organized social unit, depicting the social consciousness of the people and the relative status of the nation among the nations of the world. It also points to the conditions, circumstances and events affecting the social evolution of that nation.

In a Court of Law the Seventh House heralds the plaintiff and the lawyers.

In an organization it depicts the relationship with other organizations through contracts, trade agreements, mergers, cartels, or reciprocal arrangements.

#### \* The Eighth House (Death and Inheritance) \*

The Eighth House exerts influence over sex, death, legacies, insurance policies, regeneration, inheritance and the partner's money. The term legacy must be broadened to include not merely money but equipment, education help, etc., received from the family or other sources during the lifetime.

It has rule over the condition of death, both an individual's own death and the death of his acquaintances. In each case the condition can be viewed from either a disturbed emotional, or unhappy standpoint, or looked forward to from the standpoint of relief from personal anxieties and physical afflictions in the case of personal death. It can be viewed as a deriving of material and financial benefit as a result of legacy or inheritance, or the breaking of an uncongenial tie, through the death of another person.

The Fiery Signs on the cusp of the Eighth House are invariably indicative of a quick death but not necessarily a violent one. Inheritance under this Sign is a very bright prospect.

An Earthy Sign on the cusp here will generally strengthen the native's grasp on his life functions. He will usually not die suddenly or unexpectedly although there are exceptions to this rule if Taurus is on the cusp. This is because Taurus is a fixed sign and does have a definite influence on the heart. An Earthy Sign on the cusp does not give too strong an indication of benefit through the death of others.

A Watery Sign on the cusp promises a comparable lengthy life. Generally such Signs signify death through natural causes. The Watery Signs are the most likely to insure benefit through the death of other people.

When an Airy Sign resides on the cusp of the Eighth House the indications are somewhat contrary regarding the probable duration of life. Libra executes the longest duration with

Aquarius next and Gemini exuding the shortest duration. The death of other people whether immediate family, relatives or others will bring a mental and emotional reaction usually because of a breaking in some way of the factor of companionship or association.

Financial and other benefits can come through the deaths and in many instances be associated with the death of the partner (Libra), or a relative (Gemini) or a friend or associate (Aquarius).

In a Mundane Figure the Eighth House affects the public income, income from exports, and the earning power of the nation chiefly from the standpoint of the man who pays. It also characterizes the birth and morality rates especially in different class groups.

In a National Figure it influences the national treasurer as a government official, distinct from the treasury itself.

In an organization it determines losses and gains through or on account of death, or in connection with the estates of deceased persons.

\* The Ninth House (Travel & Religion) \*

The Ninth House signals influence over long-distance travel, overseas travel, law, religion, marriage, relatives, philosophy, or the business partner's relatives. A long journey in astrology means one of over twenty-four hours. Someday no journey will take that long as science continues to unravel the mysteries of the universe. The Ninth House is also the House of publication, particularly bound books, and treatises that are meant to be long-lasting.

The Ninth House governs long-distance travel in contradistinction to the Third House which rules short or medium distance journeys. It stipulates the religious and associated interests concerning the higher minded rather than the ordinary studies of an educational and kindred nature as ruled by the Third House. It also influences matters concerning relatives by marriage or the business partner's relatives instead of one's own personal relatives. The nature of the sign on the cusp of the House will indicate the prospects of long-distance travel. It will influence the personal attitude of the native towards religion and the reaction of the marriage or business partner's relatives toward oneself and vice-versa.

The Mutable Signs exhibit the strongest signification of long-distance and overseas travel. They also point to the space age travel.

The Cardinal Signs are next in line as far as affects involving long-distance travel. They exert their strongest influence predominantly in regard to sea or water travel.

The Fixed Signs promulgate that long-distance and overseas travel will be more likely to depend on the material and financial situation in which the native finds himself. There may always be a strong desire for travel here but the means will not always be readily available.

The Ninth House also renders influence in legal matters. Depending on the Sign present on the cusp of the Ninth House, the native will approach the legal profession.

In a Mundane Figure the Ninth House distinguishes the long-distance passenger, freight transportation and communications, by or over sea, air, and land. It also indicates inclination towards religion and clergy.

In a National Figure the Ninth House heralds the Secretary of the State as a government official, the educated classes and those who control or govern the reading, writing or traveling habits of the public.

In an organization it influences advertising, long distance communications and the relations with educational institutions and publications.

#### \* The Tenth House (Professions) \*

The Tenth House begins at the point of noon. This House is assigned to all the ways through which your nature is revealed to the World. It signifies things such as parentage, social status and most essentially the profession which the native follows.

In the complexity of the modern day World the professions demand considerable forethought and discrimination owing to the vast complexities of modern activities and to the fact that women as well as men compete in almost every possible sphere. This means that the majority of the professions now deal with both the man and the woman and, although there still exists a degree of discrimination against women, more often than not qualifications and talent transcend sex.

Although the signification shown here apply specifically to the Tenth House influences it will sometimes be found that the activities indicated can be associated with the sign on the cusp of the Sixth House as this House also exerts an influence in matters involving profession and industry and in certain instances can apply when the native is working for other people.

The Cardinal Signs demonstrate the capacity for business activity connected with public and private companies, although Libra is sometimes associated with partnerships.

The Fixed Signs are more often concerned with the mechanics of medium sized public or private companies. They sometimes suggest the man in business for himself without any partners.

The Mutable Signs are in general more indicative of holding a position under others.

If a Fiery Sign is on the cusp of the Tenth House then the factor of personal energy, courage and initiative will be very distinct and opportunities more readily capitalized on.

If an Earthy Sign is on the cusp there will be greater capacity for hard work, for planning and attention to detail.

If an Airy Sign occupies the cusp there will be a distinct talent for modifying the differences and problems arising between groups of workers and management.

If a Watery Sign should be placed on the cusp there is invariably more adaptability to the fluctuations of circumstance.

In a Mundane Figure it denotes a Chief Executive.

In a court of law it depicts the judge.

In an organization it influences the supreme or governing authority; the president, or chairman of the board.

\* The Eleventh House (Friends & Hopes) \*

The Eleventh House rules the friends you have acquired and among whom you circulate, also the groups you belong to. It exerts influence on your hopes and wishes and it will determine your main objective or goal in life. It exerts some rule over the money you earn from any profession since it is so close to the Tenth House.

The Eleventh House is one of companionable Houses. It has rule over friendships and associations and shows the degree of benefit or loss sustained through the influence or actions of friends and the nature of the associations that one formed.

If there are no planets in the House then the Sign radiation will be particularly strong but if there are planets therein then their nature will need to be taken into account with allowances for the Sign involved. If the natures are harmonious then the benefits will be enhanced but if the natures are discordant then the liabilities to loss and disappointments will be intensified.

Generalizing, you could say that the Cardinal Signs on the cusp of the Eleventh House will bring friendship that will help in the advancing of personal desires and wishes. The Fixed Signs will invariably help to create more lasting friendships, so long as, in the case of Scorpio particularly, the line of demarcation between friendship and sex is strictly observed. Mutable Signs indicate the attraction of many associations but do not always lead to definite and lasting friendships. Pisces being the best Sign so long as discrimination is exercised.

The Fiery Signs indicate the making of impulsive friendships and associations. The Earthy Signs seem to indicate that the native will exercise more thought and consideration in the formation of friendships and associations. These two usually prove to be lasting, although Virgo can destroy the friendships made by giving way to unwise criticism. The Airy Signs being the companionable Signs make friendships quite readily and easily although Gemini is not as likely to hold the association as the other two signs. The Watery Signs because of their emotional nature manifest a distinct desire for friendships. Cancer and Pisces are

excellent here but Scorpio signifies possible difficulties as a result of jealousy or possessiveness.

In Mundane Figure the Eleventh House influences the legislative branches of the government.

In a National Figure it concerns the treasury, as distinguished from the Secretary of the Treasury.

In an organization it relates to any other friendly organization.

\* The Twelfth House (Enmities & Secrets) \*

The Twelfth House defines your foundations, together with the subconscious and all that hampers and restricts your power of expression. It denotes the basic strength or weakness of your body and soul. Hereditary weaknesses lie in the Fourth and Sixth Houses and not in the Twelfth. This House rules institutions of all kinds, hospitals, limiting circumstances, secrets of all kinds, and also secret enemies. It is the House of large animals.

This is one of the unfortunate Houses of the Horoscope and indicates some of the difficulties which one can expect to encounter, particularly as a result of the unfriendliness, enmity and unfair competition of other people. The Sign on the cusp of this House will show the avenues and interests of life most likely to bring enmity and unpleasantness whereas the presence of a planet in this House often accentuates the liability toward enmity, particularly if Pluto, Neptune, Uranus, Saturn or Mars happens to be there. The Sun, Moon, Mercury, Venus or Jupiter are not so productive of enmity and can in certain instances bring compensations.

Restrictive conditions and liability towards imprisonment are also indicated and in certain instances should the planet Mars be therein it would signify the danger of being taken a prisoner of war, of being interned or of being put into a concentration camp.

The Twelfth House signifies in addition the things that one can do that interfere with the progress or development in the life and that constitute what is termed self-undoing. This often occurs when the ruling planet (that is the planet which rules the Rising Sign) happens to be placed in the House and sometimes when the Moon happens to be there. In certain instances it indicates financial and other losses connected with the business or profession more so when the ruler of the Sign on the cusp of the Tenth House happens to be there. If, however, there are no planets in the Twelfth House the liability towards enmity, loss and self-undoing is considerably lessened.

In a Mundane figure it heralds labor disturbances, plagues and epidemics and conditions that militate against the public welfare. Correctional institutions, jails, prisons and workhouses all come under its influence.

In an organization it represents the dissolution of the organization as an entity.

\* Conclusion \*

You are now roughly one third of the way through the course. The material will be getting more intricate now and patience and diligence will be your greatest asset.

If you are wondering exactly how the twelve houses should be divided do not worry. The system we employ will be explained to you in a future lesson when we deal with the details of erecting a chart.

You will learn how to calculate the exact cusp values for any given birth time.

The material in this and the preceding lessons is of excellent reference value to you. It is not necessary that you memorize it but know where to look it up in your files when you need it.

One final note. Be careful when completing your exam. Although some questions may seem easy they have been carefully worded to make sure that your comprehension of the material is complete.

The characteristics of these houses and the reasons why they exert the influence that they do is the result of thousands of years of research and careful recordings by astrologers since the beginning of astrological thought in years between 4000 and 8000 B.C.

These findings were corrected many hundreds of times through the years so that they are very accurate today and this is why true astrology carefully depicted produces such accurate readings.

However since we live in a continual changing and aging universe and are a part of it, there are changes, albeit gradually, always going on. Our Alumni Society keeps abreast of these changes and informs our graduates of the latest information.

## ***LESSON VIII***

### THE INFLUENCE OF THE ELEMENTS

#### **\* Introduction \***

In order for you to render an accurate delineation of a horoscope it is crucial that the tools for the delineation are clearly understood by you. You must comprehend the complete significance of each and every influence manifested in the chart you are reading. The solar system is a perfectly functioning mathematical unit. Human dynamics function mathematically too and they function in accord with the same mathematical formula. Astrology is a mathematical phenomena measuring the influence of the solar system in the human. It is evident then that we are dealing with scientific facts and factors, therefore the delineation should be undertaken with great care given to accuracy. We would like to stress here that too many astrologers are jumping the gun, and some definitely lack organized education in the astrological field. Their opinions are limited and often based on faulty information. The science of Astrology has been invaded by these frauds seeking only financial rewards and they have been debasing the true value of astrology. They have devised shortcuts for delineation and introduced a general aura of confusion into the field. Our course has been very carefully designed to instruct you in the complete delineation of a chart. When you have earned your degree not only will you have mastered the art of accurate erection and complete delineation but, as you continue to develop as an astrologer, your development will not cease as long as you occupy the physical realm of this planet. You will possess a solid and clear foundation and will be able to spot the phonies and the frauds very readily. It is with this notion of completeness that we commence a study of the elements and their combining influence with the qualities of the signs.

#### **\* SQUARE OR CROSS \***

The elements are always in a square relationship to each other. Each square or cross (as they are sometimes referred to) is known as a Quaternary and each Quaternary contains 4 signs, one from each element. The three groups are known as Cardinal, Fixed, and Mutable Signs. This sign division is similar to the House division – Angular, Succedent, and Cadent houses. (If necessary, refer back to [Lesson VII](#) and refresh your mind on the principle of this House Division). The elements themselves are divided into four groups of three Signs each, and each group is known as a Triplicity. The groups into which the elements are characterized. Fire, Earth, Air, Water, are known as Triplicities and the squares or crosses which they form with each other are known as Quaternaries.

There is a popular conception in the field of astrology concerning the nature or influence of the square. There are those astrologers who contend that the square is inherently evil and stimulates bad radiation for the native. The square, in reality, generates an intense activity, and the general strength of the person will determine how much control he has over this activity. The square signals a certain amount of discord but we must consider the basic strength of the character of the native before we label the square completely evil. In a future

chapter dealing solely with the influence of aspects you will study the complete effect of the square aspect and you will realize how it affects a horoscope. We will always find that certain signs are basically square to others by their very nature and there is nothing we can do to prevent them from being so. There is no alternative but to consider these aspects as causes of activity, motion, or power.

The elements will always be involved in this square or opposition and cosmically we will never find air square to air, or Earth square to Earth, they must always be square to another element. (See [Illustration A.](#))

\* CROSS OF PROGRESS \*

The first group, referred to as the Square or Cross of Progress, is known as the Cardinal Cross. It's influence encompasses all the activity, progress, and pioneering the native is subject to. It indicates a strong disregard for the status quo and a determined drive toward change. An exhaustive study of people who have the majority of their planets (The influence of each Quaternary and Triplicity becomes important only when we find a few or a majority of planets posited in either group. The planets determine the influence.) in the Cardinal Signs has demonstrated that these are the people most likely to take up lost or unpopular causes and turn them into success. They do not seem to comprehend the meaning of the word "fear". In the face of extreme difficulty their eagerness remains a solid driving force once they have focused their vision on something revolutionary.

The Cardinal Signs are so-called because they are placed at East, West, North and South points of the astrological figure. Hence they are comparable to the four Cardinal points of the compass. In their natural houses the Cardinal Signs consist of Aries, Cancer, Libra and Capricorn. They are all signs of great activity. Even though the Capricorn native is sometimes noted as being prudent and discreet with a flair for caution he can become a powerful factor in the creation of new businesses. Aries always signifies a beginning and so it discloses the inherent strength of the brain and the initial driving power possessed by the native. Aries is constantly acted upon by the square from Cancer, the home, and the square from Capricorn, the necessity of the profession. The Cardinal quality of Libra demonstrates the reaction of the public also postulating the cooperation or lack of it from partners and close associates. It represents the fight for status.

It is imperative to note that the four rulers of the Cardinal signs are, Mars for Aries, Moon for Cancer, Venus for Libra, and Saturn for Capricorn. Considerable research has indicated that the rays from the fitful changing Moon, acting upon the desires innate in these three planets – Saturn for position. Mars for self, and Venus for the mate – causes all four signs to be as restless as herself. The Cardinal Signs possess almost the identical active nature as the Angular Houses to which they naturally belong.

\* CROSS OF MATTER \*

The second group, the Cross of Matter, is known as the Fixed Cross. It is also sometimes referred to as the square of gain, or the square of matter. Whereas the Cardinal Signs are

similar to a vehicle of motion because they possess a tremendous amount of mobility the Fixed Signs are like heavy tanks slowly creeping through the heaviest of impediments. Both the Cardinal and Fixed Signs are excellent for the pursuit of a profession. The professions of course will differ in nature according to the Sign involved.

A conscientious study of a nativity depicting a plurality of planets in Fixed Signs will undoubtedly signify that the person has etched out progress in the face of overwhelming obstacles, or, in some cases, that he is in the midst of a tragic state because he cannot, or will not, alter himself to adjust to new circumstances. He has become far too involved and attached to his own opinions to employ the principle of adaptability.

The Fixed Quaternary comprises those signs which, in natural chart, occupy the succedent houses 2, 5, 8 and 11. They are signs of great fixity of purpose and will power. They are opposed to change and prefer to follow a solid course in accordance with their opinions. They are Taurus, Leo, Scorpio, and Aquarius. The second sign Taurus heralds the keynote of gain. It represents the money not only which the native earns but also what he spends his money on. There are three basic principles, concerning money, which are manifested by the square of Taurus to the houses of Leo, Scorpio, and Aquarius. The square to Leo indicates that money will more than likely afford pleasure, entertainment and children. By the square to Aquarius money will be spent on friends and also on the achievement of one's objective in life. The opposition of Scorpio tends to indicate the money will be spent on sex, death, and funerals.

Taurus represents money earned through the continued self-effort of the native; Leo governs that money originating from the home or the family. Scorpio signals the money obtained through a partner either in business or on a personal level and Aquarius determines the money which the native procures as a direct result of his profession.

Once again it is important to note that the planetary rulers of these Fixed Signs are: Venus for Taurus, the Sun of Leo, Mars for Scorpio, and Uranus for Aquarius. It appears, after careful observation, that the unmoving constant nature of the Sun exerts a direct influence on the other three rulers to maintain a constant devotion to their pattern of desires. Venus for money and possessions and things of a wordly nature. Mars for reproduction and things involving the bodily functions. Saturn for hopes and wishes and that which involves the occult and psychic natures of the mind. Uranus, however, seems to be the one planet which will yield to change and prevent the formation of ruts in the world. The Fixed Signs are of the same fixed nature as the succedent Houses to which they naturally belong.

\* CROSS OF REASON \*

The third group, the square of thought or of causation, is known as the Cross of Reason. The keynote of this square is demonstrated by Gemini, which manifests the mind deciphering the circumstances surrounding certain situations. The Third House reveals the general circumstances into which the child is born concerning his family or relatives. It also indicates the possibilities for travel and study available to him. The more active the child is the more he realizes that he can modify his environment by his actions. The Mutable Cross

affords the native this talent for adaptability. If the native is truly adaptable he learns how to deal with his relatives and neighbors and he begins to comprehend what he can accomplish by means of action or conversation.

The Mutable Quaternary comprises those signs which in a natural chart lie in the cadent houses. They are Gemini, Virgo, Sagittarius, and Pisces, the Signs of Adaptability, thought and intercommunication of ideas. Mercury rules both Gemini and Virgo, Jupiter rules Sagittarius and Neptune rules Pisces. Gemini with its distinct powers of observation, its ability to synthesize facts, and its desire for change and movement is the motivating force behind this cross. Mercury's rays exert an influence on Virgo determining the expression of the ideas of the mind. They also influence Sagittarius to consider legislation and religion. The same rays effect Pisces' consideration of the whole gamut of cause and effect. Since the mutable signs have less desire than the other signs, they are generally more able to adapt themselves to other people.

A study of a person's horoscope indicating a preponderance of planets in the mutable signs tells us that this person has had to make many adjustments to project his acceptability in the business and social realm. He has a distinct fancy for change and travel, and listening to what other people have to say. Under the strict Gemini influence the native dislikes contracting sickness and making any kind of contact with sick people. It is very distressing for him to be around sickness until the Gemini influence is polarized with the Sagittarian mind, which reaches out to cause and effect. After this, Gemini can consider trouble and sickness as a necessity causing ultimate justice, and not just as a factor of fate punishing the just and the unjust for unexplained reasons.

\* ELEMENTS \*

In order for you to design a complete delineation of the influence of each sign and planet it is compulsory to possess a grasp of the nature of each element. The elements are known as the triplicities and you must be able to combine the influence exerted by these with that of the Quaternaries to do your client justice. Comprehension of the significance of the elements is of considerable value when delineating a chart. According to the dominating element so you find the dominating characteristics of the person. All great Greek philosophers employed this basis when they constructed their thesis that the complete man consisted of the interweaving of the four categories into which every human activity can be placed.

<u>Category</u>	<u>From Contemplation of</u>	<u>Result of Element</u>
1. Physical	Body: functions & needs	Earth
2. Intellectual	Mind: concepts & thought process	Air
3. Aesthetic	Soul: yearnings, emotional processes	Water
4. Moral	Spirit: aspirations, conduct & character	Fire

The qualities and elements contained in the signs which posit the Sun, Moon and the planets are gradually developed by every stimulation that reaches the native through these points of receptivity. Every planet and all the angles combine with each other planet as they pass through a chart, resulting in an accent. In other words there are a dozen points of receptivity that are daily stimulated by an accent from each planet's electromagnetic radiation.

All twelve signs of the zodiac are distributed among the four elements of Fire, Earth, Air and Water. The combinations are known as triplicities.

### I. THE ELEMENT OF FIRE

The three Fire Signs are Aries, Leo, and Sagittarius. The Fire Signs are very much similar to the element of Fire. They impart movement, phosphorescence and radiance. These zodiacal signs of Fire are directly affiliated with the qualities of fanaticism, zeal, love, eagerness, passion, courage, enterprise, individuality, faith, and spirituality. It is of great significance that this triplicity has its beginning in the Cardinal Sign Aries, ruling the eastern hemisphere or sunrise, the beginning of self. Hence the keyword of the Fire Signs is self. Although the word self may connote a vain egotistical person, it can also refer to one who is very refined and knows his place. It sometimes indicates a person who has matured his intrinsic powers to such an advanced state that he is obviously a highly individualized person. He is not outright conceited nor is he ostentatious with his talents yet he knows within himself that he has certain powers under his control. All the plus and minus that concern the basic self of the native are postulated by this element of Fire.

By its very nature Fire tends to move upwards and unlike Water it does not come back down to its own level again. It continues this upward motion. Fire Signs are always seeking impossible ventures and trying to reach the plane of the attainable. They possess a distinct drive to be just (the best) in whatever they undertake. Natives of Earth Signs tend to be very leary of Fire Sign people and often consider them dangerous. The Earth native beholds the Fire Sign's enthusiasm as a hindrance because it renders the person less aware and careful of the nature and frivolity of the material objects that block the path to true happiness. Water is the single most effective weapon against Fire. Just as it can extinguish the robust flames of a Fire, Water can also dampen Fire just by its very presence. Water Signs and Fire Signs cannot be polarized. Although it is true that Water Signs are detrimental to Fire Signs if the Fire is strong enough and has generated enough heat it just might vaporize the effect of the water.

Water and Earth can be polarized. Fire and Water cannot. Air and Fire can be polarized whereas Air and Earth cannot. Fire, Earth, Air, Water are all interacting with one another and hence deciding the fine points of the personality.

The inspirational Fire Signs group is almost universally symbolized by the Lion. (Not to be confused with the symbol for the sign Leo which is the lion's tail)

### II. THE ELEMENT OF EARTH

The Three Earth Signs are Taurus, Virgo, and Capricorn. The Earth Signs emit a tremendous degree of stability. They, like the very earth itself, are dependable, reliable and possess a determined power to gather and collect, to discriminate and to build. The Earth Signs form the basis for supply in the world. The triplicity has its beginnings in the sign Taurus and it depicts life as seen by others and knowledge that the public has concerning public activities. The keynotes of this triplicity are those of possessions, materials, property, goods, information, tools, and servants. It is by such standards that the average person forms opinions concerning a person's basic substance.

The Earth Signs signal the source of supply available to the native. Just as the earth cannot produce vegetation or animal life, nor maintain life without water, so too Earth Signs demand the presence of Water Signs in order to insure proper functioning. By the same token that too much water on the earth causes floods and destruction, so too in the Zodiac too many Water Signs will tend to limit or nullify the positive qualities of the Earth Signs. Since air is also very necessary to all life on earth we find that Earth–Air Sign combination will produce positive effects for the native. Fire which can be so destructive to the earth stands in direct opposition to the Earth. The Earth–Fire Sign relationships can be as dangerous as forest fires for those people who have not learned to control their various qualities.

The "earthiness" of the materialistic or practical Earth Sign group is represented by a thick-necked bull. (Not to be confused with the symbol of the bull for the sign Taurus)

### III. THE ELEMENT OF AIR

The three air signs are Gemini, Libra, and Aquarius. Air Signs are similar to air because they generate the ability of circulation. They create an aura of relaxation when around people and situations. The Air Signs are most naturally associated with the channels of communication, thought, adaptability, and the gift of making and sustaining relationships with ease. This triplicity has its beginning in Gemini and it characterizes the influence of other people on the native. The keyword of the Air triplicity is other people. The Air native will feel comfortably at home when in the company of other people and he is afforded the vital opportunity to execute his innate powers of communications. Included in those other people are partners, friends, relatives, and nearby acquaintances. The air native will undoubtedly possess a precise talent for adaptability and will be able to modify himself to accommodate any changes on the social level. He is easily the most versatile person in the Zodiac and his true substance will emanate only as he shines in the company of others.

The Air Signs tend to exist in a constant state of motion and are comparable to the air because of this fact. They arduously maintain that reason and logic have a greater potency than the material aspects of human life. A Fire–Air Sign combination can effect tremendous mental development and upon occasion produce new and striking mental concepts and in isolated cases even the genius state can be reached. Just as air is necessary before fire can burn so the Air Signs act as a monumental stimulus to Fire Signs. Conversely the enthusiasm of the Fire Signs sharpens the reasoning faculties of the Air Signs igniting the mental processes. However, in order to make these concepts feasible for mankind it is of the utmost importance that some Earth Sign Planets are present somewhere in the Horoscope to modify

and direct the progress. Earth, however, lies in square to Air tending to initiate some conflict between thought and practice. In order to inspire humanity, ideas must be linked to emotion, but emotion is despised by reason. For this reason the square of Air to Water is difficult to harmonize.

The intellectual or mental Air Sign group is almost universally represented by a man, usually pouring water out of a jug, symbolizing the gift of the water of knowledge to a thirsting world. (Do not confuse with the similar Zodiac sign of Aquarius)

#### IV. THE ELEMENT OF WATER

The three Water Signs are Cancer, Scorpio, and Pisces. The Water Signs, like water, impart the ability to flow smoothly, or possibly with tremendous strength depending on the nature of the terrain, or the wind. The water element is sometimes noted for grace, or power. The Water Signs are signs of heavy emotion, psychic power, and soul development. The Water triplicity commences with the Cardinal Sign Cancer, hence, emotion is the keyword. In Cancer the emotion essentially concerns the domestic side of life, in Scorpio it is directed towards partner and in Pisces the emotional of the element is directed towards all people particularly those in distress. In Cancer this emotion provides the home with all its intricate needs. In Scorpio this emotion results in a strong desire to probe life itself and it may also express itself in spiritual longings.

The Water triplicity is intimately connected with the House of Endings, for Cancer governs old age, Scorpio death, and Pisces the sorrows or rewards that come as a direct result of our actions.

The Water Signs possess the distinct trend of returning back to the level from where they started. Just as flood waters will always return to a normal tide level so too the Water native who gives up in an emotional outburst will always come back down again to the level of quiescence. They are without desire, as a rule, for leverage. They are generally engulfed in an aura of complacency and tend to carry a burden rather than fight to solve its riddle. They are constantly digging themselves into ruts from which they need some Fire or Earth assistance to extricate themselves. However if these practical Earth types prove to be too dominant insisting upon their own solution, Water signs grow very moody and they might even resort to violence.

The elements assume momentous value when we try to discover whether or not two people have harmonious natures. You can see why Planets well distributed among the Signs of different elemental temperaments produce the well-rounded individuals.

When delineating any horoscope it is essential that we count the planets in the various elements of Fire, Earth, Air and Water. We should then count the planets according to their qualities – Cardinal, Fixed, and Mutable. The construction of a very simple diagram will simplify this process and undoubtedly clarify any confusion you might encounter. (See Illustration V111-B on page 22)



Illustration B

This diagram can be constructed with ease and if properly understood can be of infinite value to the astrologer. The letters F, E, A, W represent the elements (Triplicities) and the letters C, F, M signify the qualities (Quaternaries). Starting with Aries in the top left-hand corner each of the twelve squares houses a sign. In this fashion it becomes simple to determine the element and quality of each sign. Once you have familiarized yourself with the construction and the position of each sign it's a relatively easy matter to transfer the planets from a horoscope and enter them in this diagram. We can then add the planets vertically and horizontally and determine if there is a balance or imbalance indicated for the native. (You know by now that part of my method of teaching is to have you learn by doing. You have already done a great many basic Astrologer's steps in your exams. Observation and comparison is the true test of credibility. Observe people you know with their corresponding elements and see if they do not possess the qualities embodied in their indicated element. Aside from the credibility factor you will, by doing this, start to acquire a facility for astrological analysis. Remember there will be apparent exceptions. These people are not really exceptions but have other conditions in their complete analysis which would explain the exceptions.) Remember that the more equally distributed the planets are among the elements the more balanced the native will be. In a later chapter you will learn the meaning of each planet in each sign and you will better understand the significance of this little diagram. For now it will be sufficient if you can understand the construction of the diagram and commit these principals concerning it to memory.

### 1. CARDINAL

Fire – Expression of zeal in enterprise, and a marked enthusiasm for new ideals or work

Earth – Earth – Expression of enterprise but maintaining the practical nature of the Earth element

Air – Expression of mental originality

Water – Expression of feeling and dramatic power

### 2. FIXED

Fire – expression of changeless zeal and driving power

Earth – expression of stability of purpose. Non–progressive unless the remainder of the chart indicates otherwise.

Air – expression of changeless ideals or purpose

Water – expression of changeless emotions

### 3. MUTABLE

Fire – indications of mental eagerness yet subject to change

Earth – expression of the mental power to direct work and to consider supply.

Air – the expression of the mind's ability to analyze the concepts of thought

Water – the expression of the mind's ability to analyze emotion and imagination.

The diagram is of extreme value in recognizing the behavioral pattern of the native in respect to his 'outer man' (the man he projects to the world) vs. his 'inner man' (the man he feels within himself). Any fire–air combination describes the 'outer man', whereas, earth and water designate the constitution of the 'inner man'. If the two complementing elements such as, fire/air and earth/water, are not in balance with each other, the atmosphere of the native and his behavior pattern will lack balance as well. It is relatively easy to discover a lack of one or another element. It is pure logic that, under normal conditions, you cannot mix fire and water, or fire and earth, or earth and air or air and water and still maintain normal or natural conditions.

Those people who demonstrate any type of imbalance in their diagrams are still afforded the chance to lead a full happy life if they are able to locate a friend, mate, associate, or partner who will bring the missing elements into their lives. If they fail to accomplish this then the burden of their success will hinge on their success in exercising a free will and overcome their shortcomings. Such success in this area demands a tremendous will–power and enormous self–discipline. You can immediately see that a marriage between two people of the same unbalanced diagrams would surely be disastrous.

It is important to realize that a lack of planets in a certain element does not determine any weakness or shortcoming, it merely points to a possible hindrance. The strength of character of a person will determine how he can adjust himself to a potential obstruction.

### PLANETARY DIGNITIES, EXALTATIONS, AND FALLS

A planet is dignified when it is posited (located) in the sign it rules naturally. (see [Illustration 8C](#)) For instance when we find Mercury in Gemini we know that Mercury is dignified and hence it possesses more inherent power.

A planet is in its detriment when it is posited in the sign exactly opposite to the one which it rules. It forfeits some of its power because its nature is not in harmony with the nature of the opposite sign. This fact of dignification and detriment of a planet when it is in the sign it rules is the final conclusion of the thousands of observations recorded through the years by Astrologers. This same explanation is true for exaltations and falls as described below.

There is one particular sign for each planet, aside from the one it normally rules, in which it expresses its nature very harmoniously. This is the sign of its exaltation. Planets posited in the signs opposite their exaltations are in their fall and they cannot express their true nature.

#### EXALTATIONS AND FALLS (EXPLANATION)

Sun exalted in Aries – the qualities of the Sun and of Aries are compatible hence the Sun can very effectively express itself when in Aries. The Sun is the giver of life and motive power and the source of energy whereas Aries is active and quick.

Sun in Fall in Libra – Libra is extremely melancholy, never rushing, and possesses the ideal of poise. When the Sun would wish to rush forth, the very nature of Libra is to hold back and consider. We can see why the Sun is in constant limitation in Libra and why it is in its fall here.

Moon exalted in Taurus – the Moon rules fecundity and growth whereas Taurus is the sign of supply. In Taurus the Moon has an additional helper. Taurus is like a storehouse of beneficial goods for the Moon.

Moon in Fall in Scorpio – Scorpio signified change, destruction, and death and is in direct contrast to the dreamy watery Moon, the planet of growth. It is obvious then why the Moon is in its fall in Scorpio.

Mercury Exalted in Aquarius – the planet Mercury can best express its ability for thought and action when combined with the love and determination of Aquarius. Mercury lends finesse and exactness to the creative thought and action of Aquarius.

Mercury in Fall in Leo – When in Leo Mercury is operating in a sign which does not understand the practical intellect nor does it deal with concrete thought.

Venus Exalted in Pisces – Venus is the principle of attraction, coordination and harmony. Pisces is the sign of poetry. When Venus is in Pisces it confers rhythm so that poetry can emulate music. Visions of sheer beauty are captured and revealed.

Venus in Fall in Virgo – Virgo is the seeker of exactness in form and sometimes tends to overlook the soul of the beauty Venus portrays. For this reason Venus is in its fall here.

Mars Exalted in Capricorn – Mars affords creative energy, while Capricorn has the patience to organize and construct material things with this energy.

Mars in Fall in Cancer – the fire and enthusiasm of Mars are not welcome to watery Cancer which likes to dream and grow as it wishes.

Jupiter Exalted in Cancer – Jupiter represents the principle of expansion, hence it combines favorably with Cancer which is desirous of growth and increase.

Jupiter in Fall in Capricorn – The cautiousness and limiting nature of this sign hinders the expansive nature of Jupiter.

Saturn Exalted in Libra – the principles governing Saturn signal the scientific mind weighing and studying every statement. Libra, the sign of balance, makes a perfect home for Saturn.

Saturn in Fall in Aries – the patient Saturn has very little in common with the impetuous Arian.

Uranus Exalted in Scorpio – Uranus bestows the powers of insight and clarity and is at ease in the powerful sign Scorpio which is essentially that of new changes of consciousness and the ability to penetrate the secret of nature.

Uranus in Fall in Taurus – Uranus is much too disturbing for the placid Taurian who wants everything to stay where it is put.

Neptune Exalted in Cancer – Neptune exerts influence in the illusion of love and the delusion of power. In Cancer, Neptune finds it's most comfortable home of love.

Neptune in Fall in Capricorn – Neptune is very much out of place in Capricorn because Capricorn is not interested in what is cloudy or indefinite.

Pluto Exalted in Aries – Both Aries and Pluto love change and all that is new.

Pluto in Fall in Libra – the sign of the balance, seeks neither change nor anything new.

\* Conclusion \*

In a later chapter you will learn our exact method of determining the final depositor or ruling planet of a horoscope. We feel it is safe not to confuse you with too much material at once. We want you to very carefully let the knowledge you have gained up to this point saturate your mind and mesh with your senses. Your lesson booklets are vital reference materials which you should carefully save for the future. There is no other educational material so well organized anywhere in existence in the field of astrology. You will refer back to it many, many times.

## *LESSON IX*

### PLANETS IN THE SIGNS

Astrology is becoming an integral core of your very existence and we want you to become extremely competent in your field. We are very carefully building a sound basis for your capabilities of delineation. You must understand that it takes a lot of hard work and a great deal of patience for you to achieve your competency. Search for others with a common interest in the field and discuss and compare your opinions and knowledge. It is crucial that you realize the meaning of our school to you. We are cultivating your basic knowledge and constructing the foundation on which you will establish your reputation as an astrologer. However, we cannot overemphasize the importance of your own personal efforts. Your inquiring mind will be your most valuable asset as your development continues. You will want to become your own astrologer just as you are your own man. The amount of literature and opinion in the astrological world is overwhelming and all of it cannot be valid. With the knowledge you are gaining through our course you will be equipped to differentiate between the good and bad material. Together, with your continual personal efforts and our proven instructional methods, we will build your confidence, with our sights set on nothing but excellence.

The 9th lesson concerns the meaning of each planet as they occupy each sign. This knowledge is decisive if you are to render an accurate delineation. The influence which a planet exerts while in a zodiacal sign is dissimilar from the influence that the same planet exerts when posited in a zodiacal house of the horoscope. The difference is basic and of tremendous significance. When a planet resides in a given sign then that sign and its peculiarities dominate the planet, yet when a planet is posited in a given house the planet exerts rule over the principals which that house represents. It seems logical that a point so basic would be accepted by all in the astrological field, however this is unfortunately not true. We are very vehement on this point and have high regard for its acceptance as it has an astounding effect on a delineation. The vast amount of records kept through the years support the credibility of this theory.

### MOON IN THE SIGNS

Just to refresh our memories, the Moon is the ruler of the sign Cancer, it is exalted in Taurus, has its fall in Scorpio and is detrimented in Capricorn. Again the Moon exerts its greatest influence on the personality. It is concerned with the outer side of the nature of the native. It is concerned with all of our feelings and emotions.

### MOON IN ARIES

When you discover the Moon posited in Aries you can be certain that the native possesses a nature with a driving force of great intensity. Yet this native will also have a degree of

charm and friendliness. His impetuous nature and lack of patience are his major drawbacks. It would be good to advise him to attempt to establish a tolerance of thought and action as this will enable him to balance out his impatient nature. For a successful love or friendship relationship the native must be both dependable and sympathetic.

#### MOON IN TAURUS

With the Moon in Taurus you can expect the native to possess a highly creative nature. Taurus indicates the principles of devotion, common sense, and perseverance. Because of this influence he has a tremendous working ability and staying power but you should instruct him to endeavor not to become too rigid in certain of his conceptions and activities as this would interfere with his progress.

With the Moon in Taurus the native should, if all else looks right, involve himself in matters of a financial nature. The mental trends present are extremely beneficial in the financial area. Nobody will be able to defraud him in monetary pursuits. The Moon, Taurus combination gives the uncanny intuitive ability to decipher the future in such a way to promote financial interests.

The personal desire for affection and happiness is shown to be strong although at times circumstances arise that can temporarily or permanently interfere with the full realization of this desire. You should counsel the native to strengthen his quality of adaptability and to polarize his obstinacy.

#### MOON IN GEMINI

The sign Gemini indicates a bright mental outlook and a sense of emotional adaptability. The Moon in this sign will make the whole outlook of the mind seem brighter. The native will demonstrate good insight in decisions on matters dealing with the family or travel.

The Moon here signifies considerable creative energy. There will be a peculiar blending of personal independence with a strong degree of sympathy for others.

The native will dislike routine yet he will have an uncanny skill to work with complex puzzling matters. He is constantly seeking variety, spice and change. Mental telepathy is part of his endowment of Moon in the sign Gemini. You should caution him to employ diplomacy however, and not speak about subjects harmful to others.

There is a definite capacity to operate through conventional channels and concurrently a desire to test new avenues for progress, thus, appeasing the natural desire for change. You must warn your client that there will be times when a mental imbalance can occur as a result of emotional tension. If he is not careful here the end result will be a harmful internal antagonism.

#### MOON IN CANCER

When you find the Moon in the sign of Cancer you find it is dignified and in the sign over which it exerts rulership. You would do well, (although the Cancer Moon relationship is excellent) to advise the native to make every effort to maintain an emotional balance. You should also warn him not to be over dramatic, possessive, or invoke too many domestic rearrangements.

When the Moon is posited in Cancer there is a combination of initiative and of flexibility. You should caution your client to exercise discrimination and mental discipline. If emotional impulses are surrendered there will be a demonstration of changeability and some degree of laziness or selfishness may occur.

*NOTE: In a future Lesson you will study the fascinating world of aspects and their influences. It is important for us to realize that these aspects which the planets form with one another determine exactly the kind and strength the influence of a planet will exert.*

#### MOON IN LEO

Since Leo affects matters concerning the heart, romance and social popularity we can expect these areas to grow during the Moon's presence. The Moon will lend us the knowledge and capacity to understand just how we should approach these matters. The native however, should be warned against the danger of vanity, conceit and pride for these qualities will no doubt have an adverse effect on the personality.

The Moon posited here signifies that the native possesses a quick mind, and a basic intuitive understanding of people and conditions. You should caution this client to strive for mental rather than emotional regulation of decisions and activities.

#### MOON IN VIRGO

The influence of Virgo is related to matters concerning employment, health, self-reliance and concern for detail. The Moon indicates that from a personal standpoint the native's normal approach to people and affairs is realistic and in some respects analytical in nature. It is now that your client will better understand the relationship between employer and employee. Here he will also develop keen insight into the necessity of maintaining an efficient diet surrounded with daily exercise for his physical and mental health.

The native should be admonished to employ steady confident judgement concerning the critical side of his nature as bad aspects can cause him to be over critical.

#### MOON IN LIBRA

The influence of Libra concerns other people, partnership, law, fine arts, the sensitive type. The native will definitely be happier in his societal life during the Moon's stay in Libra. This is a position pointing to an integrity and strength of will somewhat above the average. The native will be highly sensitive to the speech and actions of others so it would be prudent to advise him to cultivate a sense of balance and to encourage humor. This is the best way for

him to relax the tension of emotional upsets. A strong desire for companionship saturates the native and his inner attractions to various people will manifest themselves.

The native will have a much broader grasp of the legal matters surrounding him and will have an intense desire to make life more beautiful. He should be warned not to procrastinate but to arrive at some definite conclusions and not to worry about commencing something which he firmly believes in.

#### MOON IN SCORPIO

The Scorpio influence embraces the emotional, intuitive, and introspective natures in man and it deals with death, legacies, partners money, criminal investigation and the occult. This position will afford the native a considerable amount of driving force and a reserve of sustained energy which will not always be apparent to others. He will possess solid powers of concentration and a strong desire for advancement. It would be wise to warn him not to indulge in any form of fantasy. It is best for him to rely on reality during the Moon's stay in Scorpio. Since Scorpio is the sign of the Moon's fall the native will tend to misuse the good aspects of the position.

Although memory under this position is acute, you should caution the native not to dwell on the unhappy moments of the past and to resolve himself to dwell on the cheerful aide of life.

#### MOON IN SAGITTARIUS

The Sagittarius influence encompasses travel, sport, change and movement. The Sagittarian is constantly enthusiastic over his ideas and knowledge. The Moon confers the power of communicating his ideas to the world. He is the possessor of a quick, restless and unsettled manner. His disposition is sincere and honorable, kindly and good-humored. You should very definitely caution him to be on guard against daydreaming and laziness.

He is a faithful worker or servant, but also benefits by having servants under him. He may have two occupations or change his occupation. He must be warned that impatience will be harmful and he must learn to accept that which does not quite constitute excellence.

#### MOON IN CAPRICORN

The characteristics of ambition, honor and public advancement are conferred by the sign influence of Capricorn. The Moon, in this sign, signifies steadfastness and reliability. The conscience is awakened and there is a strong moral purpose. The Moon is in its detriment here and its influence has harmful tendencies.

If this position of the Moon is well aspected assure your client that he may be very popular as a prominent and leading citizen, however, if badly aspected, warn him that the publicity signified by this position is of an unpleasant nature.

The position slightly favors marriage but there is also some drawback here, the partner may die or a great deal of disharmony may exist.

#### MOON IN AQUARIUS

This position strengthens the capacity for taking charge of a situation, especially when others hesitate to do so. The native has very good self-control and can set a standard of behavior and possess a sense of responsibility that will appeal to others.

Creative energy, personal charm, and a degree of versatility are the key-notes of his personality. Yet sometimes elements of an emotional conflict can occur between the desire for power and self-indulgence, or alternatively between idealism and temporary selfishness.

#### MOON IN PISCES

Pisces represents the desire for freedom from the limitation of matter. When the Moon is in Pisces the native desires to live in a dream world surrounded with his feelings rather than in a practical world. His basic nature is quiet, retiring, and easy going; he is restless and fond of variety.

However he can be very feeble, irresolute, at times undependable, easily discouraged, and may meet obstacles, misfortune and opposition in life. You should make sure that he is aware of these possibilities so he can more effectively understand himself.

The native inclines toward religion but he is more likely to be emotional rather than intellectual. He is more apt to follow his emotions as far as his opinions are concerned rather than to use a logical approach.

He should be cautioned here that sometimes he may be wanting in buoyancy and hope and he may be too serious or too easily depressed and may lack matter-of-fact common sense and humor.

#### THE SUN IN THE SIGNS

Whereas the Moon's influence determines the outer side of our nature the influence exerted by the Sun defines the inner side of that nature. The Sun, rules the sign Leo, is exalted in Aries, has its fall in Libra, and is detrimented in the sign Aquarius.

The Sun confers on the character the natures of power, authority, dignity, will, resolution, and self-reliance. It is the source of all vital energy. In the body it corresponds to the heart and its associated blood vessels.

#### SUN IN ARIES

This is the Sun's position of exaltation, so the influence is basically harmonious. This position contributes to health, vitality, and length of life. It helps to stimulate and vitalize the native's outlook upon life and enhances the capacity for activity and leadership. The native will acquire some position of authority or responsibility, no matter whether he moves in a humble sphere, or in a more public one. He is basically magnanimous and because of this any anger he experiences will soon, pass away.

He should be warned that there is a direct tendency for him to be quick-tempered although it usually passes quickly. Instruct him not to hold grudges and to strive for a reasonable balance for any feelings of bitterness or revenge.

#### SUN IN TAURUS

When the Sun is posited in this sign conditions are favorable for the acquisition of money and property in general. The native is warm-hearted and amorous, but there is some slight liability to be raided in affections or to bestow them too readily or to be drawn into a liaison. He is firm, patient, obstinate and is very set upon achieving his end. He pursues his objective with a tremendous amount of determination, so great that it sometimes may lead him into dealings of a criminal nature. He must be forewarned of this possibility.

Tell him that he can achieve a very good equilibrium by curbing any undue tendency towards obstinacy on one hand or giving way to impulse on the other.

#### SUN IN GEMINI

The Sun posited in the sign Gemini strengthens the intellectual side of the nature and attracts the native toward the pursuit of literature, science, or art, and to following some occupation connected with these. The mind becomes versatile and fond of change but positive and strong under this influence. This position confers a considerable amount of ingenuity of thought and action on the native. You should instruct the native that good planning and good organization can effectively curb the natural restlessness of this position.

Educational and intellectual pursuits will appeal to the native and considerable knowledge can be acquired through both study and observations. When this potential is constructively used then progress in many varied directions will be possible.

#### SUN IN CANCER

This position indicates the reception of money or property from parents or relatives. This location also causes the native to be resourceful, active and creative and will give you a gift of intuitive understanding and of real human sympathy.

Tell your client that he possesses an innate ability to know when to speak and when to keep silent. Further tell him that if he can employ this ability in his daily domestic life he will be able to smooth over some of the uglier situations and promote a general air of understanding.

Warn him that if this quality is compromised it may cause him some problems. His will power may weaken and he could be regarded as untrustworthy by some of his associates.

The location indicates the stronger qualities of the Sun. It affords the native an instinctive sense of power, self-confidence and optimism but it also signifies a basic need for exercising tolerance and for maintaining patience with others when they seem to lag behind. He is ambitious, aspiring, and capable of filling positions of authority and responsibility. Although he is fond of exercising his authority and standing on his dignity he can be very generous, magnanimous, affectionate and sympathetic. It is difficult for this person to find serenity in a subordinate position.

Tell him to be very prudent about his egotism and pride for if he lets it reach out of proportion the results will be disastrous. He should be instructed to maintain his basic warmheartedness and to be very affectionate for this will afford him his greatest amount of happiness and satisfaction.

#### SUN IN LEO

This position of Sun gives the native an instinctive sense of power, self-confidence and optimism. Consequently, there is an inherent need for exercising tolerance and for maintaining patience with others when they seem to falter or fail. He has a strong will with much idealism and considerable dignity but he will need to cultivate a capacity to give and take evenly with others and preserve a sense of proportion.

The exercising of simple kindness and friendliness rather than of ostentatious display will enable him to obtain much more cooperation from others.

#### SUN IN VIRGO

This location of the Sun, here indicates that the native will acquire his money in a subordinate role where he is responsible to some master. He may also be a manager himself with others under him, but he is still responsible to the executives. Dependability, integrity and a quick mind are the keynotes of the Sun's influence here. The native will approach the affairs of everyday life in a practical and objective manner and his natural desire will be for order, security and material well-being.

You should forewarn this client that difficulties may arise as far as controlling his emotions due to a conflict between impulse and careful, cautious planning. Tell him that if he will only permit his natural powers of sagacity, ingenuity and quick thinking to aid him, he can overcome these problems.

#### SUN IN LIBRA

The native of this Sun position is very popular and well liked by a wide circle of people. He is affectionate, romantic, fond of company, and he easily makes friends, especially with those of the opposite sex, this location affords him some taste and ability for science and

the fine arts, poetry, music or painting and he may excel in one of these fields. The gift of intuition is strong here and when it is properly employed it can enable him to resolve some of the difficulties of life more easily than anticipated.

The Sun is in its sign of fall therefore the native must be admonished not to be over-sensitive to criticism because he will find himself becoming too easily and quickly hurt by what others say and do. He should also be warned that he may encounter a certain amount of indecision and he must be prepared to weigh his possibilities, make a decision and stick by it.

#### SUN IN SCORPIO

The Sun in this sign increases the vitality, forcefulness and energy of the native yet at the same time it confers a certain degree of aloofness and reserve. Unfortunately this position is unfavorable for health and the native is liable to accidents, illnesses and death corresponding to the nature of Scorpio and its ruler Mars. Death may occur in the family or among close associates. The native here resists outside influences and all changes that do not originate within himself.

Explain to your client that he must exercise a certain degree of tolerance when he comes up against the unwillingness, opposition or interference of others. Tell him that he has a distinct tendency to express the ruthless side of his nature and employ the use of force to obtain his desired results. This will cause him nothing but trouble.

#### SUN IN SAGITTARIUS

This Sun location shows that the native has a vitality and warmth of nature that will provide help in enduring the varied obstacles of everyday existence. He is good-natured, generous, judicial and impartial. He is naturally religious and sincere and may be very intuitive and mystical. He is completely original in his work and may become an inventor or discoverer and become well known for some special work he has done. He has a tendency to follow more than one occupation or pursuit at a time and he may even change his occupation.

Tell your client that the less favorable trends will occur when irresponsibility is permitted or when he gives way to any form of self-indulgence.

#### SUN IN CAPRICORN

The native of this Sun location is ambitious and aspiring, and desirous of power and fame and is well suited for leading, commanding and directing others, whether for good or evil. He often turns out to be a prominent figure in his sphere of life, or he may rise in the world and become a celebrity. Sooner or later he will occupy some position of responsibility where he has to guide others.

Tell him that he must cultivate a sense of balance between his inner ambitions and his driving desire to acquire material possessions. Also advise him that it will never be easy for him to express his inner emotions as readily as he wishes. This is simply part of his nature.

#### SUN IN AQUARIUS

This Sun position shows that the native possesses a certain amount of basic intuition, independence and a creative versatility that can be both a gift and a responsibility depending on how it is used. He is patient and persevering, skillful, humane, intelligent, and may rise considerably in life above the sphere of his birth, mainly by his own efforts.

The native should understand that his capacity to think will be his greatest asset as it will enable him to discriminate both as to what is wisdom and what is knowledge and exactly how to use the faculties of each which he has.

Tell him that there is natural internal conflict between the desire to achieve certain ends and the desire to make certain changes especially where personal relationships are involved. He should strive to achieve a sense of balance.

#### SUN IN PISCES

This position confers a restless, changeable disposition on the native often too retiring and not sufficiently self-reliant. The native is either quiet and unambitious or if he does acquire great things and positions of influence, he will either not gain by them or he will not retain them. There is a lack of self-initiative and he is greatly influenced by persons and circumstances instead of moulding them to his will.

There is a great need for this native to maintain a reasonable balance of thought and emotion. When personal matters are going astray it is necessary to let his sense of humor aid in easing the pain. This humor will help him in handling the everyday problems caused by the people and affairs he is associated with.

#### MERCURY IN THE SIGNS

A general review of Mercury's basic characteristics will aid our study. If these do not come to your mind easily it would be wise to refer back to [lesson six](#) and refresh your memory. You should automatically think of the intellect and progress when considering Mercury. It exercises influence over all of our mental abilities. It represents our potential knowledge and wisdom. Mercury is the ruler of the signs Gemini and Virgo, it is exalted in the sign Aquarius, has its fall in the sign of Leo and is detrimented in the sign Sagittarius and Pisces.

#### MERCURY IN ARIES

This position conveys a natural quickness of thought and inspiration on the native. Studies and constructional activities concerning architecture, motoring, bridge and road construction, surveying, aviation and communications favorable occupations to pursue.

One of the major drawbacks of this position is that the native will be a very impulsive person and hence is likely to act without thinking. He is also likely to over-estimate or exaggerate in adding an unconscious coloring to statements. Warn him to stay away from hasty speech and rash projects and always to think carefully before he acts.

#### MERCURY IN TAURUS

This location gives the native excellent powers of concentration and assimilation even though they may be a little slow. It confers on the native a patient, solid, and painstaking mentality. He has a practical, solid, firm and determined mind, somewhat obstinate and stubborn, inclined to be dogmatic or opinionated. You must tell him that his stubborn nature will cause him considerable grief if he does not attempt to minimize its nature.

He is very inclined to a cheerful, refined, musical nature and he has the gift of discreet silence or very diplomatic speech.

#### MERCURY IN GEMINI

Mercury posited in the Sign Gemini, bestows, on the native, a mentality of keenness and alertness. The planet is dignified here as it is the natural ruler of the Sign Gemini. The position indicates a natural capacity to follow a variety of studies but you should caution the native to strive for a proper regulation of studies and not to attempt too much.

This placement of Mercury is excellent for the pursuit of purely intellectual studies concerning literature, either prose or poetry. The locality also denotes latent wit and humor, a love of detail, and a fondness for travel and knowledge of the different areas of the world. He has the power of clear-thinking and is generally free from bias.

#### MERCURY IN CANCER

This combination provides the native with a tenacity of thought and a vivid imagination. Therefore it greatly enhances the direct assimilation of knowledge. The native here has a remarkable ability to understand and see the other side. His mind is of strong sensitiveness with an excellent quality of tolerance.

You must warn him that there can be a very basic lack of logic in his nature and that if he does not modify it he can get tangled up in moodiness and negative viewpoints.

#### MERCURY IN LEO

The sign Leo is greatly associated with art, education and children. Therefore when Mercury is posited in this sign studies concerning acting, the theater, education and teaching

the young, are exceptionally useful. The native is the possessor of a determined, governing, organizing and controlling mind, with the power to take large and extensive views. He also has a high degree of faith and conviction in his noble ideas with a confident intuitive intellect.

Tell your client here that he must be leary of any tendencies toward arrogance and ostentatious behavior because they can retard the mental development.

#### MERCURY IN VIRGO

This locality of Mercury provides the native with excellent powers of perception, discrimination and investigation.

Mercury is dignified in this sign and so its influence is intensified. This position affords the native versatility and practicality coupled with intuition and an innate love of mystery. He should be warned here, however, that his nature can become very critical and this can cause him a great deal of pain. There is also a tendency toward scepticism.

Mercury in this position defines the native who learns quickly and easily with none of the labored efforts which the average mind encounters when approaching the unknown.

#### MERCURY IN LIBRA

Mercury is generally well-placed when in Libra depending of course on the aspects involved. It supplies the native with a gentle, refined mentality and a consciousness that is imbued with a natural taste for beauty. The native is endowed with an ability to study the arts more particularly painting, portraiture and color.

The advice you should present to your client here is to strive to maintain a steadfastness, depth, and firmness of mind. This will enable him to form an opinion and then to stay with it avoiding the fickleness of a changing mind.

#### MERCURY IN SCORPIO

This position yields a native deeply concerned with detail, extremely careful of his health sometimes in a very nervous manner. He has a shrewd, keen, and critical mind, very suspicious and mistrustful. He is very fond of the occult and mystical subjects ever intent on gaining knowledge and mental power which can be acquired only when the senses have been purified.

#### MERCURY IN SAGITTARIUS

The native of this position is very fond of travel and quite efficient in communicating that which he has seen and thought. He seeks to express his thoughts with decisiveness and impetuosity. This blatant nature may pierce his friends yet he will not realize this and continue along as if no one was hurt. Tell him to be very judicious with his opinions always

pondering their effect on others. This impatience of speech may also lead to the unnecessary irritating habit of interrupting people. He should always consider other people's opinions. Mercury is detrimented in this sign and the negative tendencies are stronger.

#### MERCURY IN CAPRICORN

This combination defines the native who is ambitious and practical, always organizing with a great sense of detail. He is tactful, and suspicious with a highly critical mind, inclined to wallow constantly in discontent although continually meticulous and careful. If the native can keep his mind busy and moving he will tend to have a very patient nature.

#### MERCURY IN AQUARIUS

This is an excellent position for the study of history, politics and governmental matters, and all that is closely linked with politics. From the psychic viewpoint subjects concerning various forms of metaphysical phenomena, levitation and telepathy will prove very interesting.

This is an exceptionally good position for the study of all sciences. The native has a refined and intuitive mind, faithful and persistent. He has a penetrative and observant nature acutely keen in his assessment of human character. He has a natural love of metaphysics and the humanitarian principles with considerable powers of concentration and abstract thought.

This combination ignites thoughts concerning the maintenance of physical health such as gymnastics and Yoga.

#### MERCURY IN PISCES

This locality provides the native a mentality that is reflective, creative and intuitive. He has an excellent understanding of all that is mysterious and strange and has much interest in institutional work. Sometimes he will tend to become so emotionally involved with the problems of the world that he will experience severe depression over the sorrows of the world. All matters which concern marine life whether it be deep sea, river or aquarium, or concerning the fish trade could be studied with great advantage.

There is, however, little depth of thought, with the mind being more intuitive than actively intellectual. Mercury is in its detriment here and this must be considered dangerous.

#### VENUS IN THE TWELVE SIGNS

If you cannot automatically recall the principles which embrace the influence which the planet Venus exerts in the Zodiac it would be wise to go back and review these principles before continuing. Once again the axioms of each planet will soon become a very integral

part of your second nature. Venus is the ruler of the Signs Taurus & Libra, it is exalted in the Sign Pisces, has its fall in the Sign Virgo and is detrimented in the Signs Scorpio and Aries.

#### VENUS IN ARIES

This combination bestows an original and artistic mind on the native. Venus here, tends to soften and restrain the driving impetuosity of Aries, except regarding love affairs where it often produces hasty marriage. The native has an idealistic, imaginative, and affectionate nature. He is very demonstrative and ardent, changeable in feelings and romantic in love. This position gives an ideal love nature where the native is anxious to obtain a mental if not a soul union.

You should caution him here not to let his love emotions run away with him. He should strive to be realistic in his romantic entanglements. Venus is detrimented here and this dangerous influence will undoubtedly trouble him.

#### VENUS IN TAURUS

This locality supplies the native with very strong feelings and deep emotions. He is a lover of form and is very responsive to physical attractions, more intuitive than intellectual. He is steadfast in his love emotions and is honorable in his love affairs. He is desirous of beautiful surroundings and often makes money through artistic products.

This is one of the signs that Venus rules and so she is dignified here and the influence will be more profound.

Financial interests will play a rather prominent role in the native's life, affecting the decisions and actions more than he may care to admit. This trend of thought will also have some bearing on future plans, hopes, and wishes.

#### VENUS IN GEMINI

Venus is well placed in the sign Gemini (of course this will fluctuate according with the aspects, to be covered later, of Venus to the other planets) and harmony is the foundation of this placement. The native must be warned however, that there will be times when his restless pursuit of variety will disrupt this harmony. There is a strong indication that one love will not be enough and he must be cautious not to let these desires destroy his happiness. There is also the tendency to pursue a religious or philosophical love life rather than the sensual or worldly.

#### VENUS IN CANCER

This location will furnish an overly sensitive nature concerning the speech and actions of other people in the environment. He can be more easily hurt by any unkind or thoughtless action than those who are responsible may realize. The position defines a certain fickleness concerning love matters and it suggests some secret love affairs. He will have a definitive

love of mystical religion or he may have a partner who is involved to some degree with the occult science.

There is a natural sympathetic nature and a desire to help others; however he is very quick to realize when he is being taken advantage of and abruptly end his concern.

#### VENUS IN LEO

When the planet Venus is posited here the native tends to have a dramatic streak. In matters of love he will constantly boast about his affairs. In this fashion he can become annoying and he should be advised of this tendency.

Although ostentatious concerning his love world he is very faithful and trustworthy. He is fond of artistic pleasures especially the theatre.

This position unfortunately indicates that he is subject to dishonor through jealousy, or the failure of duty through attachments. Adjugality is the one major goal which he seeks.

He is basically drawn to speculative matters and generally fortunate in speculative ventures. However he must be advised to avoid acting on impulse, he should carefully consider every opportunity before plunging into it.

#### VENUS IN VIRGO

The native is pure in affection possessing an innate love of chastity. There is an indication that he will be involved in travels abroad in connection with business matters. Unfortunately there is a radiation present which suggests a loss of friends by death.

The native will have a liability to get involved in secret attachments or associations that are private or unknown.

Venus is in its fall in this Sign and hence it will invariably ignite periods of unpleasantness and emotional unhappiness. The native must be of strong character to withstand this disharmony.

#### VENUS IN LIBRA

The combination confers a peaceful and refined nature on this native. He is very content among others who are fond of the arts and music. The power of intuition is strong and has a decided effect upon decisions concerning the circumstances surrounding his friends. There is an intense inner drive for peace and balance and a deep aversion for violence.

This is a good position for painting and drawing as the Libra attraction towards color can be demonstrated in a practical manner, and directed towards more definite ends. It denotes that there will be a gain of honor or position and social status.

## VENUS IN SCORPIO

Venus in Scorpio intensifies the passionate side of nature and because it is detrimented here the undesirable traits have to be considered. One of the main drawbacks here is the jealous nature the native must cope with. If he does not learn to minimize this innate jealousy he can cause problems for himself and his friends. He must also control his passionate instincts because if they are allowed to reach extremes a great deal of trouble and unhappiness can occur.

There is a tendency to overreact to the death of friends and this can cause an intensity of sorrow. The native himself is liable to death by poison or by suicide through passion and unhappy alliances.

## VENUS IN SAGITTARIUS

The native is very idealistic especially in matters connected to his love nature. He sometimes finds love when on a journey or in the pursuit of new studies, the love changes as the ideal changes. If he is to find true happiness the native must learn to control the restlessness and changeability of his nature. If he cannot do this he will continually be in a state of confusion very unsure of his ideals.

He can be light-hearted and impressionable, very fond of pleasures and intensely involved in love affairs affecting his honor. He will be involved in powerful friendships with lasting affections. Aside from the negative points, this position can be good and afford him a depth of human feeling, with a willingness to assist others.

## VENUS IN CAPRICORN

The native possesses an ambitious love of nature. He is very careful of his honor. He is easily attracted to different people, strange characters and those of doubtful reputations. He should be advised that such associates may have an adverse effect on his character. If he is careful he may gain fame and distinction through the skillful use of his affections.

This desire intensifies the ambition and desire for fine surroundings although there is sometimes a timidity in love and a reserve in the expression of feelings. The combination aids the expressions of the practical, thoughtful and ambitious side of nature. There is a strong degree of affectionate faithfulness and this will not be broken easily. The earlier part of life will be less satisfactory from the affectionate standpoint.

## VENUS IN AQUARIUS

The native is extremely fond of mental pursuits and he becomes deeply involved with his friends and in helping others. He is energetically faithful to his friends and he would rather suffer himself than to deceive a friend. On the other hand the native will suffer vivid depression and unhappiness when such an attitude is not returned. He will suffer great

disappointment if he is let down by friends. He must be warned about the danger of these periods of obstruction and difficulty concerning his friends.

The capacity for artistic expression is enhanced and, with the proper training, the ability for singing, music and acting can be developed.

#### VENUS IN PISCES

Venus is exalted when posited in this sign and its radiations signifies a hospitable, sympathetic nature, easily impressed and fond of corrective work in institutions. The native feels strongly attached to persons of a weak or afflicted mind or body. The inner desire for compassion and peace for the world finds its most efficient outlet in helping the poor souls who are suffering.

The nature here is highly emotional and the native often suffers through love as he becomes deeply and emotionally absorbed in his loved ones.

The position indicates some financial gain through the assistance of friends and a very basic and successful intuitive mind in business affairs.

#### MARS IN THE SIGNS

Remember, before reading any further, that you should review the basic principle of Mars in your mind before continuing. Be honest with yourself and if you can feel any inadequacy at all review [lesson 6](#). Mars is the ruler of the Signs Aries and Scorpio, it is exalted in the Sign Capricorn, has its fall in the Sign Cancer and is detrimented in Taurus and Libra.

#### MARS IN ARIES

Mars is dignified in this position and its influence is intensified. The locality increases the physical and mental activities of courage, rashness, impetuosity, enthusiasm and adventure. There is a strong impulsive desire in the nature for action and the effect is usually good. He must be advised that mistakes and errors of judgement can occur because of the natural impulse.

There is an indication here that the native will have domestic problems not only with his parents but also with the marital spouse.

#### MARS IN TAURUS

Mars is detrimented in Taurus therefore the inherent power of the planet is limited and frustrated. This position signifies that at times circumstances will restrict the natural desire for expression and interfere with the personal freedom of action. There will be control

problems with the personal temper as the native gives in to impatience, sometimes very unnecessarily, with a subsequent experiencing of friction.

A tragic or unfortunate marriage is indicated and ill-health through a religious fanaticism. If the native can avoid his tendencies toward obstinacy, willfulness and pig-headedness he will be able to contain the negative radiation from Mars in Taurus.

#### MARS IN GEMINI

The expression of Mars in Gemini is naturally free and if unrestrained shows an expansive line of thought and action which can become diffusive. If the thoughts and actions are directed into planned channels then considerable and even rapid progress will be brought about. The native should strive to control the argumentative side of his nature because if he lets it get beyond control it will cause disputes with just about everyone he comes in contact with.

He has a keen mentality and an acute intellect with strong educational yearnings. He has that incessant Gemini desire to be involved in two love affairs at once and he must exercise great discretion here.

#### MARS IN CANCER

The native here is very ambitious and industrious but unfortunate and changeable. Although he is domestically amiable he is beset by many worries and sorrows. This is the position of fall for Mars and hence the position is unfavorable. It intensifies the feelings and emotions in an undesirable manner and brings about a disturbing reaction upon family life.

The location postulates many obstructing incidents and a direct holding up of plans and personal activities. Sometimes family obligations can destroy the personal freedom and cause occasional disruptions of domestic affairs. Often his patience will be tested and when delays and unpleasant conditions occur, the added emotional tension can incite a temporary loss of self-control. He should be instructed to cultivate a tenacity of purpose and once he sets a definite objective to stick with it until it is accomplished.

#### MARS IN LEO

This is an excellent position for Mars as both the planet and the sign are in harmony. This enables a great deal of progress to be made in life providing a reasonable line of thought and action is maintained. If the native permits himself to go to extremes however, difficulties will occur.

The native possesses a speculative nature being fond of the adventure which is involved. He is very passionate in both love and pleasure and has a definite inclination to the study of music.

He must be very careful because there is an intense attraction to gambling and he may ruin his life if he cannot control this tendency.

#### MARS IN VIRGO

Mars is not well-placed in this position. Although it indicates a blending of physical, mental, and mechanical ability it creates a degree of touchiness and hence the native is easily excited to impulsive and unpremeditated action which disturbs the existing trend of affairs. He should be warned that there is an argumentative streak in his nature which can cause him problems if it is not regulated. There will be periods of friction and of unhappiness and, at times, a resentment of the calmness and apparent slowness of other people.

The native will be a very energetic worker with a sarcastic nature. He has some attraction to exciting, adventurous and dangerous work.

#### MARS IN LIBRA

Mars is in the Sign of its detriment here and the radiations from the planet can be very dangerous if the native is not careful. There is a liability towards making unwise associations and ties and since Libra is a sign connected with marriage this position can be productive of unions with unsatisfactory results. Divorces and broken homes can result from this combination. He must employ the balancing influence of Libra in its full potential if he is to belittle the negative influences of Mars in this position.

#### MARS IN SCORPIO

Mars is dignified in this position and this exerts a positive radiation for the native. He is quick and acute in judgement. He has a designing intellect with an intense devotion to any sort of study which he undertakes. He is indirectly the cause of his own death and there is a liability to a violent end. There is an indication that he will gain financially through marriage.

Although there is some indication of an impulsive nature he has strong powers of control which help him to steer his actions into channels of benefit. He should be advised that there will be times when difficulties will occur through the jealousy and antagonism of others.

#### MARS IN SAGITTARIUS

The native here has a very impulsive nature and is sometimes over enthusiastic. He is a very active traveler and presents his political and religious ideas with a tremendous amount of zeal. He can sometimes create bitter strife through this impulsive nature. At times his enthusiasm can become rash and thoughtless and this can create serious problems for him.

This position is favorable for professions connected with the occult arts in which inspirational or prophetic tendencies will bring some degree of success.

## MARS IN CAPRICORN

This position indicates that the native will have the capacity to make headway and progress in life and not let obstruction, interference, or jealousy of others prevent him from doing so. However he should be cautioned that there will be times when his zeal will be misunderstood and a certain amount of unpleasantness will be created by other people. Since Mars is exalted in Capricorn the position is very good and will benefit the native. The native is capable of great responsibility and endeavors.

## MARS IN AQUARIUS

The native is an intellectual, quick witted and he possesses a scientific mind. He is very interested in humanitarian work and is frequently connected with hospitable activities. He has a natural talent for blending science and philosophy and he's sincere in his religious beliefs. He is fond of working for friends, clubs and groups of people as he desires to put new life into them. He should be warned that sometimes he can cause hostility when he exerts too much effort along these lines.

## MARS IN PISCES

This is not a favorable sign at all as it brings many difficulties, emotional upsets and disturbances into the life. There is a liability towards enmity and the native should be forewarned.

The position enhances the capacity for activity and affords the native a confident nature.

There is also a strong indication that the native will find pleasure in psychic pursuits and enjoy occult endeavors.

### \* Conclusion \*

Eventually the knowledge of the meaning of each planet passing through each Sign will become an instinctive part of your nature. From a quick glance at a nativity you will be able to expound on the positive and negative precepts of the planetary aspects contained therein. You must remember that the aspects of the planets will determine if their influence is of positive or negative nature. Aspects will be covered later. All of the characteristics in this lesson as planets pass through the signs are the result of thousands of years of study recording and correcting, thereby producing a high degree of accuracy. Astrology is part of a changing Universe and necessarily changes with the Universe. We keep our course up to date with these changes and through our Alumni associations, we keep our graduates up to date.

## *LESSON X*

### PLANETS IN THE SIGNS

Remember that the material you're studying now is the heart of astrology. To erect a horoscope is a simple mathematical task but to delineate that same chart is a highly complex matter. Your success at delineation will depend wholly on how well you grasp the material presented in these chapters concerning interpretation.

You should continue to rehash and expand your knowledge of the influence of each Sign, House and Planet. If it is possible it would be wise for you to set apart a certain amount of time daily to just sit and relax and meditate on what you have already learned. You are becoming part of a very select few who are in touch with and can appreciate the laws of our universe. You must prepare yourself to accept a more liberal view of our life than those who are bound by their own lack of knowledge. The questions why? and what for? must become part of your very intellect. None except those with a well-developed and open sense of reason, a clear mind, and a good memory can effectively pursue the study of astrology.

Picture yourself as part of the universe. You are part of that whole, you are an integral part. You have chosen to be among those who can explain and accept this whole. You are becoming one with the universe and I guarantee you'll be amazed and gratified at the peace of mind you will find for yourself and all you come in contact with.

We will now continue to study the influence of each planet as it passes through each sign. You must remember that the effect each planet exerts can be modified, enhanced or negated according to the aspects it forms with the other planets. The significance of the house occupied by the planet must also be considered. What you are studying here are the basic principles behind each planet in each sign. Good or bad aspects and the House position will determine if these principles are of a harmonious or inharmonious nature.

### JUPITER IN THE SIGNS

Jupiter is the natural ruler of the sign Sagittarius and it is exalted in the sign Cancer. It is in its detriment when in Gemini and in its fall when in Capricorn.

#### Jupiter in Aries

Jupiter is well placed here and there is a natural stress on the element of impulse and the rebellion against restriction. The position helps to create natural cheerfulness and optimism. The native is, to some extent, a pioneer or innovator, not very conservative by nature, who is generally fortunate and well-respected. He should be cautioned about his impulsive and impetuous nature for it may cause him harm.

### Jupiter in Taurus

The native has a peaceful, dignified and reserved nature. There is an indication of sorrow through relatives yet this is modified by the gain through friends connected with the family circle. It is a favorable position for matters concerning business colleagues or employees and others who carry out any work or duty for the native.

Although his nature is basically peaceful there are times when the native can become overly involved in rebellion against some of the more orthodox conventions of life.

### Jupiter in Gemini

Jupiter is detrimented in Gemini and the native must be prepared to deal with his restless and changeable nature. Although he is the possessor of a high degree of adaptability his inability to form definite objectives hinders any progress that may be possible.

There is a definite tendency toward the intellectual side of religion, mysticism or an eclectic religion but his uncertainty and changeability will continually harasses his progress.

### Jupiter in Cancer

Jupiter is exalted in Cancer and its radiation for the native is accordingly favorable. The native is good-humored, charitable and benevolent in nature. The emotional side of the native, the imagination and intuition are strengthened and may manifest themselves in some form of art. He is very fond of the home life and usually has strong emotional ties with his mother. He may change his religion or hold it loosely and yet be thoroughly sincere and devout. There is some indication of death at a distance from home.

### Jupiter in Leo

This is very fine position as the native is sincere, generous, magnanimous yet he is somewhat ambitious and fond of power, dignity, pomp and display. There is a dramatic flare in him and he is naturally attracted to grandeur and ceremony.

He possesses an ardent love nature and is desirous of quick and spontaneous responses. Because of this he should be cautioned to use discretion in the forming of associations and ties of an affectionate character.

### Jupiter in Virgo

Jupiter is detrimented in Virgo and hence it is not a favorable position. There is an attraction to strange characters and the off-beat areas of life and he will have to act prudently if he is to avoid hurt in these areas.

The native here is sometimes lacking in method and, at times, he is even absent-minded. He is very discriminatory in his choice of friends and sometimes he can hurt people very

deeply without realizing it. He has a tendency to be over-critical of his friends and he may lose some good friends this way.

#### Jupiter in Libra

Jupiter is well-placed in Libra as the optimism of the native is drawn out constructively. It is generally a good influence for partnership and marriage, making the former profitable and bringing much happiness in the latter. The native has a strong desire for companionship, even though he can maintain an independent attitude if a need for such should arise. The native will tend to be a very sincere and religious person.

He enjoys his periods of pleasure and relaxation yet he is more than willing to alternate them with periods of work in order to avoid either boredom or changeability.

#### Jupiter in Scorpio

This position denotes an eventful life and, although some of the experiences will be of a bitter nature, the knowledge gained through them will be invaluable. The native has a nature surrounded by many desires, some of them of a secret nature. The emotional side of the character is very strong and must be contained or emotional turmoil will surface. When things go awry, however, he is most likely to feel bitter and hurt and express this in a highly sarcastic manner. He is not likely to forgive and forget. His feelings of resentment will not be easily overcome and if allowed to take this upper hand, friction and animosity will surely occur.

#### Jupiter in Sagittarius

Jupiter is dignified in Sagittarius and hence it is extremely well placed. There are very strong indications of progress and advancement for there is a natural blending of personal initiative with the element of luck and good fortune. The nature is usually prophetic, sympathetic, impressionable with a flair for philosophy and religion. More than one marriage and love affair is indicated, one most likely, to a relative.

The native's interest in sports, open air activities, travel and foreign affairs is intensified and very marked.

#### Jupiter in Capricorn

This is the sign of Jupiter's fall and its influence here can cause severe problems. The native here must constantly be on guard not to let his selfish tendencies rule his nature. If his selfishness becomes too powerful he can turn into a hypocrite simply using all he comes in contact with to further his own ego or assets. He is very opposed to and unsympathetic towards mystic or occult thought. He finds pleasure in physical service and the idea of duty. He obtains joy from work in this way.

#### Jupiter in Aquarius

This position indicates the formulation of sincere and lasting friendships with much pleasure and benefit obtained through them. It strengthens the intuition and refines and spiritualizes the mind. The native will have original and independent views. He favors the manifestation of almost any of the higher qualities of mind and he may have uncommon psychical or spiritual experiences.

The native will generally be more philosophical than religious as he will constantly be trying to rationalize the question "WHY?"

#### Jupiter in Pisces

The position is questionable because if the emotional side of the nature is not controlled emotional disturbances will occur which will have a negative effect upon personal relationships. Yet if this emotion can be controlled beautiful and rewarding personal relationships will occur.

The native must always be careful that other people do not abuse his basic hospitable nature or get him to make sacrifices for them or do things for them which are not fair to himself.

#### SATURN IN THE SIGNS

Again to refresh our memories Saturn is the ruler of the sign Capricorn, it is exalted in the Sign Libra has its fall in the sign Aries and is detrimented in the Signs Cancer and Leo.

#### Saturn in Aries

Saturn is in its fall when in Aries and its influence can cause much turmoil. This position will bring many periods of anxiousness and worrying but if the native can cultivate his powers of endurance and fortitude he will have some help he needs in working through the many difficulties encountered.

There is a certain amount of impatience and an inclination towards taking risks. The native will suffer because of these tendencies. He tends to act too quickly and thus he precipitates his own unfortunate circumstances. Yet if he can control his impulsive nature he will undoubtedly acquire a position of power and influence.

#### Saturn in Taurus

This position tends to make the native strong-willed, very firm and persistent in pursuing his purposes. There is a possibility of inheritance especially through the parents. The native is usually careful and saving in money matters either from inclination or necessity, and he is sometimes even miserly. In any event there is a distinct tendency towards selfishness.

The practical side of the nature will be enhanced and there will be a stronger social drive in the native due to his desire for companionship. Thus there will be closer contact with the social, public and artistic sides of life.

#### Saturn in Gemini

This position denotes tremendous potential brain power, however, success is often hampered by over-caution and suspicion. The power of the mental concentration is usually intensified but we must consider the position of Mercury here since it is the ruler of Gemini.

Special effort should be made to increase the depth of thought and strength of character for this combination can make either a great philosopher and scientist or a public enemy and a criminal.

#### Saturn in Cancer

Saturn is detrimented in the sign Cancer and so its influence denotes a certain amount of discord. This position is unfortunate for worldly position, honor, wealth, possessions, and general success in life. It brings many troubles in business, occupation, and profession. It threatens downfall, loss of repute, financial troubles and poverty.

There is a need for the native to be on guard against the tendency to inactivity, to peevish discontent and a self-centered outlook.

#### Saturn in Leo

Saturn is not well-placed in Leo and its radiation produces discord. The native's life is bound to be frustrated with troubles, worries, delays, and hindrances. Yet on the other hand it gives an intensified capacity for endurance, persistency and concentration of mind to cope with these problems. The native must employ these capacities if he is to avoid the problems of the anxiety inherent in his nature. He may suffer some anguish through love-affairs or by submitting to anger.

#### Saturn in Virgo

Saturn is fairly well-placed in Virgo and the native can be expected to have an orderly, critical, and analytical mind. He will have an original and capable intellect, one that is suited to deal with profound subjects. He should be warned that the serious tendency in his nature may sometimes produce melancholy or gloom if it is not controlled.

There is a strong will power, considerable firmness of character and the native will not be easily swayed once his mind is made up.

#### Saturn in Libra

Saturn is in the sign of its exaltation here and the radiation is very harmonious. The native is very independent, somewhat reserved, and may often strike other people as being cold. There is a strong love of justice and an equally strong sense of duty. The native is a "sticker" at anything undertaken and will not shirk even boring routine and/or hard work, although there is a strong appreciation of beauty, ease and comfort.

#### Saturn in Scorpio

Saturn in Scorpio is a position that denotes that the native's life will be a rather eventful one. There will be many ups and downs, an experiencing, on occasions, of bitter and unpleasant incidents causing a deal of resentment and even unhappiness: Yet the native can learn a great deal from his unfortunate experiences and use this knowledge to lead a fuller more complete life. Despite feelings of depression, the misunderstanding and unfair actions of others, the native will never give up his fight.

#### Saturn in Sagittarius

Saturn is reasonably well-placed when in the sign Sagittarius as this position adds a degree of optimism to the native and will draw out the philosophical qualities, thus overcoming the tendency towards depression and anxiety. The native will tend to view the ups and downs of life philosophically and accept their consequences. The ability is also there, if used, to see the inner meaning of the various difficulties which are encountered as well as to apply the knowledge derived from these experiences in the handling of future problems as they arise.

#### Saturn in Capricorn

Saturn is dignified in the sign Capricorn and so its influence is of a harmonious nature. The native is very self-centered with a tremendous independence of character. He has excellent aptitude to exercise power and mastery over people and he has some degree of ambition.

From time to time there will be phases of gloom and melancholy with a general effect of isolation and loneliness. The native should be instructed to endeavor to cultivate more thought for the interests of other people because it will lessen his feelings of loneliness.

#### Saturn in Aquarius

Saturn is generally well placed here and it brings success to the native through societies, associations, companies or groups of people having some common object. This position lifts him up and indicates either general success or else prominence. It lessens certain of the restrictive significations of Saturn and assists both the progressive side of the native and the opportunities for making progress in everyday life. The capacity for making friends is intensified, and the friends made can be relied upon when troublesome conditions arise.

#### Saturn in Pisces

When Saturn is in Pisces the native is usually very hard to understand. The position indicates that he will have a certain amount of trouble expressing his inner feelings, desires or thoughts. In many instances there will be a marked difficulty in making progress. Matters related with companionship, friendship, marriage and partnership should be very carefully considered.

The senses of worry and anxiety are enhanced and this may lead to various disappointments if it is not checked.

## URANUS IN THE SIGNS

Once again to refresh our memory Uranus rules the sign Aquarius, it is exalted in the sign Scorpio has its fall in the sign Taurus and is detrimented in Leo.

### Uranus in Aries

The native has an inventive, ingenious and active mind and he is very hard to understand. This position causes some lack of tact and difficulties in restraining feelings and expressions regarding the faults or supposed stupidities of others.

This location of Uranus brings a liability toward estrangements and upsets affecting the relationships with others. He should try to avoid heated arguments and disputes of an adverse nature should always be avoided.

He must learn to cultivate a certain amount of patience with the difficulties of those who have less strength or will power than himself.

### Uranus in Taurus

This is the position of Uranus in fall and its influence can bring more difficulty to the native. It is apt to cause ups and downs and sudden losses financially and materialistically.

This position often conveys incredible powers of intuition on the native and he will do things and obtain results that could not be achieved were the ordinary powers of reason exercised.

There is a definite indication that the native is prone to wrong decisions and there can be an adherence to convictions in an adverse manner. It is not so much that the convictions are bad but the manner of expression regarding them can cause trouble with other people.

### Uranus in Gemini

This position increases the mental power and intellectual activity, it gives originality and ingenuity and some eccentricity of mind or fondness for the occult subjects. The native

should be cautious here with his brainwork for there is a definite risk of overstrain in mental activities.

A strong tendency to travel is likely, possibly only in thought or through the medium of books if this is all that can be arranged. There is a strong attraction to the psychic areas of life and it is up to the native whether he profits through these experiences or not.

#### Uranus in Cancer

Uranus is not too well-placed in Cancer as it intensifies the emotions and the senses. The native is easily touched and quickly moved. This can cause severe emotional imbalances.

There is a dire need for the native to avoid being over-sensitive about basic misunderstanding because it can lead to unnecessary heart-break.

If circumstances permit there will be much travel during the native's life as he is a great lover of adventure.

#### Uranus in Leo

Uranus is in its detriment in the sign Leo and its radiations can cause the native major problems. There may be much trouble in the family life, especially during youth. A loss or difficulty through the father in some way is indicated. The native will have a distinct disregard for conventionality, a strong desire for freedom and independence. If he does not learn to control and modify these desires he will repeatedly wind up in trouble both socially and in the business world.

#### Uranus in Virgo

There is some indication that there will be some trouble, hindrances or restrictions regarding the occupation. The native may expect to encounter insurmountable difficulties and thwarted ambitions in his business schemes. As an employer there will be danger of losing his employees because of failure to communicate.

The native has a natural tendency to be a bit difficult with people and he is easily irritated. Yet the native does have an inherent power to cure this tendency once sufficient awareness of its existence has been achieved.

#### Uranus in Libra

Uranus is reasonably well placed in Libra, the balancing factors of Libra bringing more poise without interfering with the originality of Uranus. The combination brings outstanding gifts of intuition besides stimulating and augmenting the imagination. The tastes and aesthetic faculties are also intensified.

This is not a favorable position for marriage however as the native will tend toward hasty engagement and quick marriages without sincere consideration of the outcome. There is some indication that the native will have a strong literary talent.

#### Uranus in Scorpio

The native of this position will possess a tremendous will-power with a strong capacity of determination and concentration. He will have a keen and critical mind and be inclined to study psychology with a side interest in the matters of the occult. He has a great dislike for the routine side of work and life, however his powers of determination and concentration will see him through this problem.

He is often a great pioneer in the field of astrology and will make many significant contributions to the science.

#### Uranus in Sagittarius

This position strengthens the imagination and the inventive side of the native's nature. There is a strong interest in all sorts of new ideas, his own and other people's. There may also be prophetic gifts and the native will be able to look into the future through his dreams.

The native has a general tendency to become a born reformer and a philosopher with a vivid sense of idealism and strong powers of intuition and imagination. He is likely to be a rebel with unorthodox ideas in subjects dealing with education.

#### Uranus in Capricorn

This position conveys a certain amount of thoughtfulness on the native, his nature being serious and reserved. There is an indication that there may be some trouble or discord with the parents.

The native will have a penetrating mind with a considerable interest in matters concerning electricity or science. There is also a likelihood of the native succeeding in public employment under governmental or municipal authorities. He must be warned, however, about sudden, unseen reverses and changes.

#### Uranus in Aquarius

This position brings unusual experiences among friends. The friends of the native will be of a highly original nature and depending on how he deals with them he can benefit or lose by these associations.

The native has a powerful and inventive intellect. He is not only inventive, but resourceful, ingenious and very apt at acquiring education. He has an independent, self supporting nature with superb powers of memory. He is especially fitted to work in associations with others as he is thus very suitable for positions in large undertakings.

## Uranus in Pisces

The native here is attracted to all areas of the occult. He has a keen interest in all psychical matters and is attracted into associations with those who are delving into this area themselves. He is prone to strange dreams, visions and premonitions and if his mind is not open he may suffer from these experiences.

This is some indication that he may unexpectedly land in an institution but he may just as unexpectedly get out. He has a distinct lack of sociability and he may suffer from it or it may not affect him at all.

## NEPTUNE IN THE SIGNS

Neptune is the planetary ruler of the sign Pisces, it is exalted in Cancer, has its detriment in Virgo and its fall when in Capricorn.

### Neptune in Aries

This position is likely to intensify the senses, feelings, and emotions and depending on the nature of horoscope this intensification can be either for good or evil. The native is prone to mystical experiences or beliefs.

The native here is often the cunning planner, or the dangerous type of subtle subversive man or woman. The native should be cautioned about this tendency because it can lead to a marked amount of unpopularity and sometimes lead him into a physically dangerous situation.

### Neptune in Taurus

This position if well aspected is favorable for monetary and business matters yet the reverse effect takes place under bad aspect. The native will definitely be attracted to the musical and fine art areas of life.

The basic feelings of this native are somewhat over-sensitive. He has a tendency to rely on hunches in regard to earning money and if he is not careful these hunches may lead to disaster.

This position however does bring the native great personal charm with the ability to win people over to his ways.

### Neptune in Gemini

This increases the powers of intuition and imagination and the native will often experience many prophetic or symbolic dreams. There is a strong inclination towards travel of a long-

distance nature. The native will be highly appreciative of good music and he will have a great mental sensitiveness to all the fine arts.

He will be very sympathetic in nature but this can also work against him as people will sometimes take advantage of his good will.

#### Neptune in Cancer

This is a rather lazy position and the native here would rather sit back and dream of all the great things he is going to do than to actually go out and accomplish them.

The position is conducive to a strong relationship with the mother and promises some benefits through her. The native has a sympathetic and impressionable nature and is very fond of the home and the comforts of home.

This location of Neptune indicates that the native will change his residence many times during his lifetime and may even die in another country.

#### Neptune in Leo

This position bestows warm affections on the native with the senses and feelings very active and powerful. He has a distinct love of company, society, sport and pleasure. He is at his best when among friendly company. His benevolent nature can cause him problems if his love nature is allowed to go to excess. It will lead him into creating unions before he or his partner are realistically ready.

There is a latent artistic capacity usually associated with music or poetry. He has a natural desire to educate young children along artistic channels.

#### Neptune in Virgo

Neptune is detrimented in the sign Virgo and hence its influence is basically discordant. There is an inclination in the native to continually change his train of thought and jump from idea to idea without logically bridging the gaps. This tendency can cause several problems if the native is not conscious of the results.

He should be warned not to place too much reliance upon the support or the promises of either fellow employees or business colleagues as these can be illusory and produce let-downs and ultimate loss.

#### Neptune in Libra

This position affords the native an abundance of natural charm as it enhances the attractive side of nature. There is a definite flirtatious aspect to the basic nature and the native is very prone to innumerable infatuations with the opposite sex. If passing fancies are

not evaluated for their actual worth, they can cause an immeasurable amount of agony for existing relationships.

There is some indication that the native will possess the artistic gift of persuasion and use it strictly for his benefit.

#### Neptune in Scorpio

This position concerns the highly secretive nature of a mysterious person. The native is very hard to understand and even harder to explain. He will more than likely find tremendous success with occult study. The position is rather unique as it affords the potentiality for extreme good and extreme bad.

The productive capacity of the individual, from the procreative standpoint, will be enhanced by this position and there can be an excess of the erotic and amorous on the one hand or an intensification of the natural desire for children on the other.

#### Neptune in Sagittarius

This position gives the native a very strong interest in religion and folk-lore and from the latter point, mythology. The exploratory instinct and desire for travel will be intensified. This can manifest itself among both the physical channels in the desire for foreign travel and experience, and along psychic channels in the desire for developing the faculty of astrological insight.

In general, the spirit of adventure will be very strong and this will draw out the enterprising side of the nature which can be either foolish or wise according to the aspects involved.

#### Neptune in Capricorn

Neptune is in its fall in the sign Capricorn. This location credits intensive ambitious idealism which can be associated with the political side of affairs, either from the revolutionary standpoint or in connection with economic and social reconstruction.

The native should be warned that there is a natural inclination towards debauchery and drunkenness with an emphasis on the selfish and miserly side of the nature in a very unpleasant manner.

The desire for rendering some form of public service will be great yet there is also an inclination towards conspiracy, fraud and double-dealing.

#### Neptune in Aquarius

This position will draw out the humanitarian and sympathetic side of the nature and it will ignite a deep interest in the humanitarian causes, such as, social improvement, artistic and

musical affairs. Platonic friendships will be formed and problems can arise through the deceptive influence of friends.

The artistic and intellectual qualities, if developed, can be productive of very helpful and beneficial results. If the native can realize these talents he can maximize the circumstances surrounding him.

#### Neptune in Pisces

Neptune in Pisces denotes the possibility of suffering through the dishonesty, trickery or deception of others. The personal confidence of the native can be gravely abused if this occurs.

The locality increases the personal capacity to manipulate the power of mental and oral suggestion to influence other people to do things which are desired.

The idealistic and peace loving side of the nature will be drawn out and there will be an expression of charm which will be very appealing to others who come into the native's life.

#### PLUTO

The discovery of Pluto was announced March 13, 1930. Its effect in the twelve signs is still being studied and recorded and because this study is not as yet complete it would be futile to dogmatize upon its effects in the twelve signs.

As Pluto is the most distant known planet from the Sun its radiation must necessarily effect the long term range of the native's life. In whatever sign Pluto is posited it causes gradual changes to occur so that new methods can be established to meet all modern requirements. Of course the House position must be considered in relationship to the Sign.

It takes Pluto, on the average, 28 years approximately to pass through one Sign of the Zodiac from its initial entry to its final exit. As far as House position goes, however, it will pass through the whole of the twelve Houses in the 24 hours of the day. The actual House in which it is posited at a person's birth, of course, is dependent upon the time and place of that particular birth.

Pluto rules the atomic power of force. In human character or destiny it rules the unknown or the unseen, the X factor. It demonstrates the capacity to release into action the unrealized latent powers for good or for ill which reside within the human physical and spiritual form. The effects of Pluto are far-reaching. When you drop a stone in the water of a pond the ripples caused by the stone slowly reach all points of the pond. The ripples, as with the radiations from Pluto, will touch things far beyond the original point of contact and produce results entirely undreamed of.

## Conclusion

You should reread this lesson until the meaning of each Planet in each sign becomes part of your very nature. It is important to keep in your mind that the concept of aspects will determine if a planet's influence will be harmonious or not harmonious.

We have covered Planets and Houses. There is considerable talk of a tenth Planet larger than Saturn which is so far away as to reflect very little light. Any new developments such as this will be brought to your attention through our Alumni Society. This is also true of further developments as to the planet Pluto and all other occurrences in Astrology throughout the World.

The truth of the characteristics of the Houses and Planets is based on thousands of years of observation, research and recordings by Astrologers throughout the World. Their accuracy has been proven many many times over. It is very rare that an exception is encountered. However, when this does occur, careful study and analysis will usually reveal some explanation.

# *LESSON XI*

## \* Introduction \*

The following lesson concerns the influence of each planet as they pass through each house of the zodiac. It is important to realize that this influence will vary directly with the aspects formed to the other planets. You must also consider the nature of the sign occupying the cusp of each house. We use a very simple, yet very complete method of delineating this influence and you will be instructed in it in a future lesson. For now, just make sure that you understand the basic influences.

### PLANETS IN THE FIRST HOUSE

#### The Sun in the First House

When the Sun is posited in the ascendant it is always helpful, as it intensifies the vitality and the more constructive attributes of the House. It will bring some joy to the native and afford him a radiant nature. It indicates good health, a strong constitution and a happy childhood.

The Sun here accentuates the positive aspects of the Sign which is on the cusp of the ascendant and points to a generally successful life, both spiritually and materialistically. The native will command respect from his peers and his prestige will be greatly enhanced through his personal efforts. He has strong powers of resistance to adverse circumstances and people.

#### Moon in the First House

This position of the Moon intensifies the emotional side of the native. The native will tend to be very sensitive and timid. He will always be ready for a change, no matter what it might concern. He must learn to overcome his timidity if he is to enjoy any success with the public.

The Moon in the Ascendant position strengthens the dualistic side of the native. It stresses the personality and its changeability. It increases the prospects for travel and consequently brings more variety into life. The Moon here intensifies the influence of the domestic ties, however this seldom interferes with the personal capacity to initiate change.

#### Mercury in the First House

Mercury in the Ascendant augments the powers for the expression of thoughts and ideas. It is mostly a favorable position for the intellectual side of the native. It signifies a great deal of travel and a strong desire to communicate the different experiences resulting from that travel.

Ideas will come more quickly and spontaneously to the native and the nature of these ideas will correspond with the Sign on the cusp of the First House.

He must be careful of restlessness and changeability, as these will hinder the direction of his thoughts and ideas.

#### Venus in the First House

Venus in the Ascendant position strengthens the companionship qualities and the native will find it easier to enter into friendships and associations. He will possess a cheerful nature and have a marked capacity for artistic expression.

He has a kind nature and a natural desire for the beauty and harmony, which ideally should surround him. His happy disposition will see him through many of his problems.

#### Mars in the First House

This position of Mars enhances the energy of the native, sometimes denoting extra physical strength and considerable courage. He must be careful however, for it can sometimes induce impulsive temper. The tendency to take should always be avoided.

The native will be very self-assertive and have a boisterous nature. He prides himself in his physical strength and courageous attitude. A great deal of enthusiasm and optimism will be generated by the native in a given situation.

#### Jupiter in the First House

This locality of Jupiter is always fortunate. Jupiter is the planet of luck and when it is posited in the Ascendant house it will bring many helpful conditions to the native. Even during the problem periods, Jupiter will protect the main interests in life.

It enhances the factor of optimism and provides the native with a cheerful disposition. He has a confident aura about him when dealing with the problems of life. He can very effectively calculate the future result of his present actions.

#### Saturn in the First House

This locality of Saturn tends to depress the native and bring a bad reaction to his health or well being. Of course, this will depend on the nature of the Sign on the cusp.

Saturn here aids the thoughtful planning and cautious side of the nature, but it also brings restrictions and delays. The native may continually procrastinate and a sense of fear may result.

There is an ability to overcome these shortcomings with constructive forethought and reflection. He must utilize these powers effectively.

#### Uranus in the First House

This position of Uranus bestows originality of thought and action on the native and it strengthens the independence of his nature. It indicates a certain degree of mental brilliance and scholarship. He has an original outlook on life. He has the capacity to make quick decisions and to carry these into action immediately. There is an indication that he will be attracted to the studies of the occult.

It shows that there will be sudden changes in life and that certain of these will not be pleasant. The nature of the Sign on the Cusp will define these changes.

#### Neptune in the First House

Neptune posited in the First House will enhance the capacity to use the power of suggestion, both orally and mentally. It increases the natural idealism of the nature, but not always in a practical manner. The native should never take the surface appearance of affairs too much for granted, but should always think twice before reaching decisions or taking action.

It shows that the native has strong tendencies towards drinking, smoking and low morals. A certain amount of deception is present in his very nature.

#### Pluto in the First House

This position of Pluto is peculiar because the native's life will seem to fluctuate between bliss and depression. Certain interests and associations can be completely destroyed or annihilated. The native must be able to recreate new ideas, plans and incentives or he will remain in his depressed state.

Pluto here inclines to periods of personal loneliness. At times it will bring personal activities to a halt and prevent desired developments. The native must search for strength of character when Pluto is posited in his first House because he will need it.

### SECOND HOUSE

#### Sun in the Second House

When the Sun is posited in the Second House, it indicates that the native will have relative success in financial endeavors. He will also have a basic generous nature. The position indicates that benefit or recognition of effort and ability will come from people in authoritative and influential positions. Money will be gained through proper assertion of authority and the holding of important positions. Respect from others will be forthcoming and the prestige of the native will be enhanced.

#### Moon in the Second House

The Moon here indicates that the native's income will continually fluctuate and his expenditures will do likewise. Thus, when the Moon is here the personal handling of money

matters will be of great importance to the long term outcome of financial affairs. Much will depend, as always, on the aspects the Moon makes. If they are reasonably good then there will be tremendous gain through personal initiative and common sense control, but if the lunar aspects are bad then extravagance is possible and there will be difficulties regarding income.

#### Mercury in the Second House

Mercury, posited here, indicates that the native's financial interests will be related to his mental, intellectual, and literary pursuits. He may very well make his money through one of these interests. This position naturally increases the capacity for the general handling of the financial affairs of life. The thoughts and aspirations of the native will be directed towards the financial aspects of life. This house position of the Mercury strengthens the powers of concentration and memory.

#### Venus in the Second House

When Venus is in the Second House the feminine influence matters concerning the feminine side of life will have a direct reaction on the native's financial status. If Venus is well aspected, this influence will be beneficial. However, if it is badly aspected the influence will be detrimental.

There is an indication that the native will desire the material aspects of life. Usually undue extravagance is not indicated.

#### Mars in the Second House

Mars in the Second House denotes the capacity and ability to earn money through the continual, personal hard effort of the native. Mars invariably indicates that the native will be inclined toward risks, henceforth some monetary gain will come through speculation.

Although the native is inclined towards hard work, his expenditure will always be heavy and it will never be easy for him to refrain from the inclination to spend freely.

#### Jupiter in the Second House

Jupiter in the Second House will bring the native a considerable degree of luck and good fortune as far as his financial interests go. Of course, if Jupiter is badly aspected misfortune and loss will be prominent.

The native will have a highly sympathetic nature. He has a benevolent disposition and demonstrates excellent judgement in his monetary affairs.

This position demonstrates that the native's personal financial matters will be quite satisfactory, despite the usual fluctuations which life brings.

### Saturn in the Second House

As usual, Saturn brings its periods of worry and delay. When posited in the Second House it indicates that the native will experience much anxiety over his financial obligations and responsibilities. This position implies difficulties as far as the development of financial plans are concerned. The native must learn to allow more time for his plans to develop and mature. He must cultivate his quality of patience and endure initial financial setbacks and delays.

### Uranus in the Second House

Uranus in the Second House signifies unexpected conditions concerning the native's financial status. He will experience periods of sudden gain and sudden loss. These periods, depend on the planetary aspects formed with Uranus. Much will also depend on the House in which the planets making the aspects are posited.

Benefits and losses here will come from unexpected developments and change of circumstances. Losses can occur as a result of breach of contract, such as partnerships or marriages.

### Neptune in the Second House

Neptune signifies that the native will have a strong urge to make money easily and quickly and, as a result, he must be very careful that this urge does not interfere with his sense of discrimination between right and wrong. In other words, if things are not going smoothly for the native temptation of crime and dishonesty may be too great for him to ignore. The prospect of easy money will always attract the native and he must be very careful that it does not ruin his or his family's lives.

### Pluto in the Second House

This position of Pluto is similar in many respects to that of Neptune in the Second House. There is an intensification of the native's drive for money and if his anticipations are realized things will go very smoothly. Yet when his high expectations are not realized or fulfilled the native, can become very disillusioned with life. It is at times like this that, once again, the dishonest underhanded side of life will become very attractive. If he should submit to these desires, it will invariably ruin his life.

## THIRD HOUSE

### Sun in the Third House

When the Sun is in the Third House it increases the desire for certain forms of luxury travel in the hope that people in influential positions may be contacted. The studies and intellectual interests will be much more of a dramatic big business nature than purely for intellectual advancement.

The Sun here affords the native a magnanimous mind with a great deal of pride and ambition. He is firm and selfreliant in all mental pursuits and is always aiming at success.

#### Moon in the Third House

The Moon posited in the Third House indicates a considerable amount of travel. The kind of travel will be decided by the nature of the native's personal activities, inclinations and occupation.

Concerning studies, the sign of the cusp here will indicate the personal preference. The position naturally increases the imaginative powers and it also augments the capacity for the assimilation of knowledge. The position increases the number of relatives and places in many varied positions in life.

#### Mercury in the Third House

When Mercury is posited in the Third House the desire for travel and variety is greatly increased. It indicates both domestic and inter-continental travel. The native has the potential to take up several different areas of studies, as his interests are varied. He should be careful here though, as sometimes, he will tend to gain only a superficial knowledge of each subject and nothing significant will be learned.

It is a very good position for Mercury because Mercury is the ruler of the Third House and the influence will be harmonious.

#### Venus in the Third House

This is an excellent position for matters concerning the native's relatives and neighbors. The relationships here will most definitely be of a harmonious nature. There is an indication that the native has a strong capacity for studies related to art and literature, as well as professional writing, lecturing and oratory. The desire for travel is intensified and this position is normally good for short distance travel. There are congenial conditions in connection with travel and traveling companions. The kind of travel will correspond with the Sign in the Cusp.

#### Mars in the Third House

When Mars is in this House it increases the desire for travel but it also increases the liability towards accidents while traveling. The adventurous nature of the native will put him in dangerous situations which are often caused by his taking of unwise risks. Accidents in a car or if he owns a plane or boat are indicated.

He will be attracted to studies of a mechanical nature. He is attracted towards the building industry and he has a flare for explosives.

#### Jupiter in the Third House

Jupiter is the planet of long journey, so when Jupiter is posited in the Third House the desire for travel is increased and the travel will be of a long-distance nature. The desire for exploration and adventure will also be very strong. Jupiter here affords the native a mental cheerfulness and a basic nature of optimism. The Third House aids the mental assimilation and Jupiter therein is very helpful for studies, writings and literary interests.

It indicates that the native will find invaluable help through different agencies and other people he is associated with.

#### Saturn in the Third House

When Saturn is posited in the Third House it intensifies the power of forethought and concentration. With bad aspects it can cause severe mental depression. Matters concerning relatives and neighbors will, at times, cause unrest and worry. The circumstances surrounding the domestic situation can bring undesired responsibility through the unwise actions of the relatives.

Saturn tends to limit traveling or confine it to interests concerning the occupation. There is an indication of danger when operating an automobile and caution should be employed here.

#### Uranus in the Third House

When Uranus is in the Third House there will be a strong desire for travel of a strange, exciting, perhaps experimental nature, especially in connection with aviation and where scientific investigation plays a part. The number of relatives will vary and contact with them will be subject to sudden breaks and changes.

There is a distinct attraction towards studies and interests of an astrological, occult, and scientific nature. If these interests are approached maturely, the native can broaden his mental outlook upon life.

#### Neptune in the Third House

This position inevitably will bring the native a good deal of short distance travel. Some care will always be necessary concerning traveling companions and people encountered as a result of the journeys undertaken. If the native is not careful either his confidence may suffer or a loss through fraud or dishonesty may occur.

#### Pluto in the Third House

When Pluto is posited in this House it indicates that the native is attracted to travel of an unusual nature. There is some indication that he will go underground for part of his life and work with people of ill-repute. He will be attracted to studies involving evolution. He will have peculiar experience with his relatives.

The character of the native here will be extremely ingenious, penetrative and forceful.

#### FOURTH HOUSE

##### Sun in the Fourth House

The Sun in the Fourth House intensifies all the matters concerning the domestic side of the native's life, whether they are bad or good. He will become more deeply involved in important matters concerning his family. The Sun here assists the native in matters concerning his property and it's welfare.

The Sun here demonstrates the alternate outcome of previous efforts and how they can effect the latter years of life. This position should enable the native to maintain his vitality and energy during these later years of his life.

##### Moon in the Fourth House

When the Moon is in the Fourth House it indicates that the native will be strongly bonded with his mother. He will feel very close to her and hold her in high esteem. The home ties, in general, are very important to the native and he has an intense desire to have his domestic life comfortable, peaceful and tranquil. When this does not happen, he can become very emotionally depressed.

The position indicates that the latter part of life will be very important to the native and that he will be very active up until his death.

##### Mercury in the Fourth House

When Mercury is in the Fourth House the powers of imagination are intensified and the native will also have a strong mind. The direction of the domestic affairs and the actions of others in the environment will effect the prevailing line of thought. When there is harmony in the domestic affairs then the native will have a comfortable mental outlook. He will make substantial progress in the general handling of affairs of both a private and a business nature. However, disharmony on the home front will cause him endless troubles.

##### Venus in the Fourth House

This is a good position for Venus as it will bring harmony and peace to the native's family life. He can expect to gain monetarily and socially through domestic and family affairs. It affords the native the capacity for making the home a center from which to regulate external affairs. Benefits are derived in various ways through other members of the family, particularly the female members.

There is ample opportunity available to the native to create a harmonious marital life.

##### Mars in the Fourth House

This is not a good position for Mars, as it will tend to cause the native some turmoil and strife as far as the domestic scene goes. Trouble will occur at times with, or through the parents, particularly if one of them is highly excitable or of a high strung nature. At the same time, despite the friction, there will be a desire for home comforts and for having the home as a base from which to direct external affairs. The native will have to use discretion and patience if he is to blend his home life with his ideals.

#### Jupiter in the Fourth House

Jupiter is well placed in the Fourth House and it usually brings family surroundings of a congenial nature, showing that benefit will come through the parents and other members of the family. The native will also derive some benefit through the actions, influence and support of certain people who either play some part in the family or whom circumstances bring into the family.

As long as there are no bad aspects to Jupiter, the last part of the native's life will bring many benefits and the material and financial side of affairs will be good.

#### Saturn in the Fourth House

When Saturn is in this House there is an indication of family life problems being hard. Difficulties or restrictions will operate during the early part of life, followed by family responsibilities, sometimes of an arduous nature as life progresses. Duties towards the parents may even interfere with marriage. If marriage does take place, home life will not be too happy because of work and financial problems. The end of the native's life will not be too happy either, as it will also bring its quota of trials and tribulations.

#### Uranus in the Fourth House

When Uranus is in the Fourth House sudden unexpected changes will tend to disrupt the family life. At one point, all will be going fine and there will be an aura of tranquility, then without warning turmoil will set in. Even in childhood sudden severe changes may occur, sometimes through the separation, divorce or death of the parents. Later in life residential changes will be compelled by circumstances. The end of life will bring even further sudden upsets.

#### Neptune in the Fourth House

When Neptune is posited in the Fourth House it indicates that the domestic side of the native's life will be clouded by some peculiar or mysterious conditions. Past events affecting parents or other members of the family may be covered by a degree of secrecy and it is also possible for incidents to do with the personal life to occur which one may not desire to be made public. However, sometimes this Planet gives an interest in psychic matters and this will have an influence on how the native will deal with the domestic side of his nature.

#### Pluto in the Fourth House

Pluto in the Fourth House indicates very unusual domestic and environmental conditions. It is a position which indicates that the native may be an orphan or he may lose his parents very early in life through a natural calamity. There is also an indication that the parents may very well perish through some form of violence.

Pluto in the Fourth House inevitably causes a breaking up of the domestic side of the native's life. This breakup will come either in the early or middle stages of his life and it may happen more than once.

## PLANETS IN THE FIFTH HOUSE

### Sun in the Fifth House

The Sun in the Fifth House is a good position and it invariably will assist in the forming of favorable attachments. It indicates male offspring will be predominate as a rule. It is an excellent position for artistic pursuits, especially for acting and is usually helpful for both speculation and investment.

In early life the desire for children will be strong. In middle life and in old age the interests and general welfare of young people will be foremost in the native's mind. He will sometimes find himself with a position which deals directly with helping young people spiritually and materialistically.

### Moon in the Fifth House

When the Moon is in the Fifth House it intensifies the emotions and it is conducive to love affairs and flirtations. However a lot will depend upon the Sign on the House cusp. It indicates female offspring will be predominate as a rule. It indicates that the native has potential artistic ability which can become highly developed with the proper training. The position indicates that the native possesses many aspects of good judgement regarding investments, but as far as speculation goes the native should use extreme caution. The enterprising side of the native's nature will be quite apparent and if taken advantage of many benefits will follow. In love affairs, however discretion is advisable and the emotional side of the nature should not be permitted to get out of control.

### Mercury in the Fifth House

This position affords the native an optimistic mental outlook with the capacity for blending intellectual matters with those of an artistic and educational nature. The native can assimilate knowledge with relative ease and then pass it on to others in the form of teaching and instruction for adults as well as children. In many respects, this position provides the native with a natural psychological understanding of children, their temperaments, likes and dislikes. It also affords the talent to make quick appraisals of their character and future possibilities.

This locality of Mercury indicates quite a variety of love affairs and attachments and this can cause a duplication of associations with the subsequent emotional difficulties.

#### Venus in the Fifth House

This is a good position for Venus as it gives strength and vitality to the native's depth of affection. The desire for love and companionship is strong, but if not properly controlled it can be productive of very unpleasant conditions. It is favorable to produce female children and is especially favorable for artistic interests. It indicates gain through speculation and investment if wisely handled. The artistic side of the nature is enhanced and there is usually a strong attraction towards acting and the theater arts. Some interest can also be taken in educational matters as well as those of a social, and pleasurable character.

#### Mars in the Fifth House

When Mars is in the Fifth House it intensifies the inclination towards flirtation. The passionate side of the nature will not be easy to keep under control. The position can be productive of some trouble and difficulty showing sudden attachments, discords and breaks. Sometimes it indicates the birth of children out of wedlock. It favors the birth of male children who will sometimes cause problems. Mars here is favorable for the pursuit of sculpture. There is an indication that the native will have a strong attraction to gambling and if he is not careful this will cause him many problems in life. There is a tendency to speculate in investments and careful analysis should be made in this area.

#### Jupiter in the Fifth House

Jupiter is well placed in this House and its radiations are mainly favorable. It assists the native in the formation of helpful love attachments and will bring benefit through them. It indicates that in some instances love affairs can originate through interests of a religious or sporting nature. It denotes a good influence over children and it indicates chiefly male children. It's also a good influence for speculation and investment, signifying many benefits providing reasonable judgment is applied.

There is a definite indication of considerable gain through speculation and investment.

#### Saturn in the Fifth House

Saturn in the Fifth House indicates difficulty in love affairs and it interferes in the forming of friendship associations. More often than not, these problems will originate through a personal difficulty of the native to express himself freely. Because of this difficulty, delays and awkward circumstances will surround the native. Saturn here restricts the family circle and a small family is depicted. Difficulty in the rearing of children is indicated here, but the native can rise above his problems and have a successful life. It is not a good position for speculation, but it does show a very good capacity for investment.

#### Uranus in the Fifth House

Uranus in the Fifth House intensifies the desire for romance and it denotes more than one love affair surrounded by sudden upheavals. It indicates a flirtatious nature and the native would do well to use discrimination. It is not a good position for children, as it shows anxieties connected with actual birth as well as their subsequent interests. Indication are they can be of either sex. From an artistic standpoint, it is good for theatrical, radio and literary interests. In speculation it shows unexpected gains through various sweepstakes types of gambling but the stock market.

#### Neptune in the Fifth House

When Neptune is posited in the Fifth House there is an inclination to participating in secret love affairs. Through such affairs, the native will gain some pleasure, although it can also cause some strife and unhappiness. There will be a trend towards deceit. It signifies a fairly large family with a predominance of female children.

The artistic side of the native is enhanced and there will be a great deal of capacity for acting and singing. Speculation and investment will require some thought, as there is a distinct danger of loss due to the intrigue and deception of others. The personal inclination to take risks, or even to become involved in deals of a shady nature is indicated.

#### Pluto in the Fifth House

When Pluto is in the Fifth House it has a peculiar influence over the native's love nature. There is a strong desire for love, however this is tempered by fickleness thereby bringing disappointment and unhappiness. The native will learn that he should not place too much trust in the promises of others. It is not such a good influence for children, as the position sometimes denies them or causes miscarriage or deformity. It is somewhat helpful for artistic matters and it gives an excellent capacity for the expression of emotion.

### PLANETS IN THE SIXTH HOUSE

#### Sun in the Sixth House

This is a good position for the Sun, as it will strengthen the vital forces and aid in the formation of defenses against illnesses. This position aids the native in his daily work and indicates ascension to a responsible position. There is a respect for authority, particularly where industrial and economic interests are involved.

In regards to health, the nature of the Sixth House limits the vital forces of the Sun, but the Sun affords the native the power to be careful and to safeguard himself against the dangers of illness.

#### Moon in the Sixth House

When the Moon is posited in the Sixth House the native will pay considerable personal attention to daily activities. His routine work will be of vital importance to him. If the native

can take advantage of his natural capacities of personal ingenuity, tact and the ability to handle people, he will make substantial and rewarding progress in his work. However, if he does not take advantage of his natural talents, he will experience a deterioration in his affairs. Much of the Moon's influence here will depend on the nature of the Sign on the Sixth House Cusp.

#### Mercury in the Sixth House

The planet Mercury in the Sixth House increases the susceptibility to nervous disorders and to ailments caused by worry and anxiety or as a result of travel. The native will have to use extreme care in pursuit of his studies because of his tendency to overdo things. In relation to the native's work, it creates restlessness where the occupation proves to be of a very routine nature. It shows that there must always be a degree of variety for work to be done well and interest maintained.

The position intensifies the power of discrimination and perception. It also gives the native a keen sense of criticism along with a psychological understanding of industrial and economic conditions.

#### Venus in the Sixth House

When the planet Venus is in the Sixth House, although it is a helpful position in some ways, it can bring blood disorders, infections of the throat, ears, and kidneys. As far as work goes however, this position is mainly favorable. It brings cooperation and further progress as long as there is harmony with others in the sphere of the work. Routine and output will suffer if there is any discord present. The native will derive many benefits through feminine influence and the cooperation of the female population.

#### Mars in the Sixth House

When Mars is posited in the Sixth House it exercises an exciting influence that may not be too good for health. It can show a liability to fevers, accidents, and danger associated with the work that is done. Although the position affords the native the capacity to work hard and is good for mechanical and kindred activities, it brings discord and friction. He will derive some degree of benefit through the masculine influence and the cooperation of men. Some financial loss is indicated by ill health or accident. It is not a good position for servants or employees, as it brings arguments and disputes with them, and at times, a degree of rebellion actually occurs.

#### Jupiter in the Sixth House

When Jupiter is in the Sixth House it brings sizable amount of benefit in matters concerning health, work, and employees. This position assists the recuperative powers so far as health is concerned, although there are times when it can bring on conditions of ill health through unwise habits. From the viewpoint of work, it helps to bring varied benefits while it shows that servants or employees, or even ordinary business colleagues or employees will be

willing to help and to work with the native for the general good. The underlying element of luck and protection will express itself in a very marked manner from time to time.

#### Saturn in the Sixth House

When Saturn is in the Sixth House the position emphasizes the liability to colds, chills, accidents involving falling or things falling on the native. There is also a tendency toward industrial disease. It brings arduous conditions of work, many difficulties, worries and anxieties, even though it shows the efficiency and capacity to carry out duties and responsibilities.

Saturn will tend to weaken the recuperative powers of the native, especially during the early part of life.

#### Uranus in the Sixth House

Uranus in the Sixth House brings a liability to accidents and illness through sudden events. It upsets the nerves and the general balance of the body and it can bring many unexpected ailments. It shows many sudden and unexpected changes concerning the occupation. Sometimes it denotes a sudden loss of work or an experiencing of unexpected setbacks. Alternatively it can also bring unexpected advancement and improvements. The position is excellent for the intellectual pursuits of matters of a scientific nature.

There will always be an element of difficulty connected with business colleagues or employees, and there will be a need for some form of independent action. This position sometimes indicates work and activities concerning the astrological and occult sides of life.

#### Neptune in the Sixth House

When the planet Neptune is posited in the Sixth House there will be a distinct liability to ptomaine and other forms of poisoning of the systems. This locality of Neptune warns against the over-use of drugs. The native is very attracted to drugs, smoking, and alcohol and he must learn to cope with this attraction otherwise it will cause him immeasurable problems. Care will be required in smoking and with alcohol, and where anesthetics are concerned. In the sphere of work there will be trouble at times through dishonesty or deception of others and through certain forms of intrigue. Personal confidences should never be given to those in the sphere of work, for the native will have trouble with the dishonesty of others.

#### Pluto in the Sixth House

The planet Pluto in the Sixth House will bring a liability to ailments caused through excessive radiation, especially to those associated with atomic, nuclear and electronic processes of work. It also signifies danger to those who work in the general area where these processes are being carried out. In matters concerning work it brings out opportunities for

the furthering of far reaching and even revolutionary ideas. On the other hand, it shows a cessation of these activities at times through circumstances that are favorable.

#### CONCLUSION

You are now at mid-course in your studies. Our experience indicates that since you have progressed this far you will complete the course. Not only that but you will receive your diploma and pass the comprehensive licensing exam issued under our Charter.



## *LESSON XII*

### Planets in the Houses

#### \* Introduction \*

Review the basic influence of each House before you study this lesson, just as you did in Lesson XI. Remember that the influence of each planet in each house can be enhanced or negated according to the aspects which that planet forms with the other planets. Proceed cautiously here, and do not attempt the new material unless you are sure of what you have already studied.

It may seem that the material is piling up on you, but please do not worry about this. Our course is very carefully designed to expose you to as much knowledge of astrology as possible, without confusing you. A knowledge of the influence of the planets in the houses is essential for a complete delineation. Lesson XII will conclude the study of this influence. The following two lessons will concentrate on the influence of each Sign as it occupies each House cusp. These chapters are extremely important, as they explain the effect of the three centres in astrology. The Signs, houses and planets are at the crux of astrology and their influence must be very carefully studied.

### SEVENTH HOUSE

#### Sun in the Seventh House

When the Sun is located in the Seventh House it is an excellent position for the emotional development of the native and it invariably suggests benefit through marriage. The native, however, must become aware of any social or ethnic differences which may interfere with his involvement with others. Sometimes this position discloses that the native's partner (Whenever there is reference to the native's "partner" this refers to either his marital or business partner.) will be of a higher social position, in which case the success of the relationship will depend strictly on the aspects of the Sun. The partners or friends of the native tend to be extremely proud people deeply concerned about social status. The Sun here, however, affords the native the potential to rise to a higher social position than the one into which he or she is born. The native must learn to be patient and accept his partner as she or he is and not how he would like them to be.

#### Moon in the Seventh House

The Moon occupying the Seventh House invariably designates that the domestic side of the native's life will be peaceful. It suggests a partner who is extremely talented for domestic arrangements and well able to assist in the general handling of family life. However, if the Moon is badly aspected, the reverse effect will occur and cause the native constant turmoil in his domestic life.

This position of the Moon signifies successful partnerships and cooperation in matters concerning business and finance. Again, we must consider the aspect, to determine the actual influence involved.

#### Mercury in the Seventh House

Mercury located in the Seventh House implies that the mental capabilities of the partner will be intensified. It is a favorable position for harmonious relationships with the in-laws or relatives of business partner. There is an indication that the native's marriage partner will be involved in substantial short distance business travel.

This position of Mercury provides the native with a cheerful disposition. It indicates an inclination towards literary pursuits. The native has an inherent talent to utilize the art of suggestion and thereby persuade people to do things which they normally would never consider.

#### Venus in the Seventh House

This is an excellent position of Venus as far as marriage is concerned. It intensifies the power of love-making and indicates that the native will maintain his sex drives for the duration of his marriage. The native of this position of Venus is well equipped to cooperate for the interest of others.

Social and public success is indicated. The native is able to adapt socially and politically to the norms of the day. It is an excellent influence for business partnerships and it signifies success in financial endeavors.

Venus posited here means that the native will realize considerable gain through his associations with women.

#### Mars in the Seventh House

Mars posited in the Seventh House signifies a questionable influence on the native. The native must learn to adapt to the strength of his partner's character without letting himself be used by it. The partner will have a bad disposition and a quick temper. Some interference by the relatives of the partner is also indicated, which would complicate things.

Mars in the Seventh House more than likely attracts the native into contact with public and social affairs. The basic drive of the native will cause him many problems here. Thus, the native will have to use discretion in all that is said and done.

#### Jupiter in the Seventh House

This is an excellent position for Jupiter and it provides many benefits through the marriage relationship. Sometimes Jupiter in the Seventh House indicates a marriage to a person of a different race. Generally, it precipitates gains through the actions of the business or

marriage partner. In connection with public and social affairs, it signifies that the native will hold a position of authority. The partner, even if he is really not interested, will show just concern and interest for the position the native assumes here.

#### Saturn in the Seventh House

When Saturn is posited in the Seventh House there is a strong indication that the native may marry someone who is considerably older. It also signifies some delay in the consummation of marriage. The marriage partner will be extremely frugal, to the point where he or she is over-cautious concerning financial matters and if this is carried to an extreme unhappiness will result.

In certain instances the health of the partner causes considerable anxiety and the partner soon becomes a burden. The nature of this problem, as always, will depend upon sign position and aspects.

#### Uranus in the Seventh House

When Uranus is posited in the Seventh House it provides a romantic nature for the native. Sometimes, because of the strong inclination to romance, the native marries either very early or very suddenly in life. He must be careful here to employ a certain amount of discrimination otherwise he may make the wrong choice. He generally succumbs to infatuations and will often follow temporary fascinations rather than true love. He must learn to be cautious with his emotions. He has a tendency to drop one association for another without carefully weighing the outcome.

#### Neptune in the Seventh House

The native of this position of the planet Neptune has a tremendous desire for the ideal marriage. Unfortunately, he seldom finds this ideal state. Neptune posited here invariably implies conditions of disillusion, deception and trickery. Marriage often is to a partner prone to drunkenness, sexual perversion and other undesirable habits. Therefore, care in choice of a marriage partner should be paramount.

If Neptune is well aspected and there is concrete understanding between the two people concerning their problems, ultimate happiness is achieved.

#### Pluto in the Seventh House

When Pluto occupies the Seventh House, there are negative indications as far as marriage goes. Peculiar conditions will undoubtedly surround the marital state of the native. There is a likelihood that the partner may walk out when problems arise. Yet, when the problems are small, the partner is capable of inducing happiness into the marriage.

There is an indication of more than one marriage and there is a chance the native may never find happiness in marriage.

## EIGHTH HOUSE

### Sun in the Eighth House

The Sun in the Eighth House generally indicates a quick death. Death from heart failure is a condition that should be guarded against.

The influence of the Sun in this position quickens the actual conditions of death and thus it helps to prevent any undue suffering. It indicates possible benefit through legacy or inheritance. It also assists in the partner's handling of financial affairs.

### Moon in the Eighth House

The Moon in the Eighth House affects the functional side of the native's life indicating that functional irregularities will most likely be the cause of death. However, there is a strong signification that the death will be reasonably peaceful. When the Moon resides in the Eighth House, the native can expect to gain financially through legacy, inheritance or even through unexpected gifts. There is also an indication that the native will enjoy a certain amount of financial gain through the dealings of the marriage or business partner.

In some instances, death, when the Moon is posited the Eighth House, can be caused by unwise risk, but normally, if such risks are avoided, death will be as a result of natural causes.

### Mercury in the Eighth House

This position of Mercury indicates that the nervous system and or the respiratory system will be affected at the time of death. There is an indication that sometimes the death will be associated with or caused by travel. Invariably, this position of Mercury will bring the native into contact with the conditions associated with the death of other people. The native may often hold a position where he is associated with funeral homes, wills, cemetaries, etc. Depending on aspects, this closeness to death will affect the mental outlook. When Mercury is posited in the Eighth House the native can help to alleviate any mental pressure through the practice of hypnotism, as he has a latent talent for this subject.

### Venus in the Eighth House

When Venus is posited in the Eighth Home, it indicates that the native will die a very peaceful death, closely related to natural causes. Sometimes the actual cause of death will be related to the throat or the kidneys. Venus here increases the prospects of financial gain through legacy, inheritance and it indicates that the partner's handling of money matters will be efficient. As far as the partner is concerned, he is very honest and willing to share benefits. This will help to create a peaceful financial relationship.

There is some indication that the native will pass away while in his sleep.

### Mars in the Eighth House

When Mars is in the Eighth House the liability to a violent and sudden death increases. Death can also occur through a very bad wound or as a result of an operation. Sometimes there is a bad fever which affects the head, the excretory or generative organs. As far as marriage and business partners are concerned, endless problems are indicated. The native will find that his partner may be overly extravagant and this may cause some severe financial losses.

There are prospects of gain indicated through legacy or inheritance. There will be substantial dispute with the marriage or business partner concerning the handling of the money.

### Jupiter in the Eighth House

Jupiter is in a favorable position here and it indicates a release, through death, from material or physical suffering. Death will usually come from natural causes unless there are other indications somewhere in the nativity chart.

As far as legacy and inheritance goes, it is a good position. It can even bring more financial gain than was originally anticipated. The partner has a natural talent for dealing with money matters and this eliminates the financial worries that may arise. There is also an intense indication of financial gain through the demise of friends and members of the family circle.

### Saturn in the Eighth House

When Saturn occupies the Eighth House it is not in a good position concerning the health of the native. Saturn here will undoubtedly prolong the conditions of illness previous to death, thereby increasing the suffering. It indicates chronic ailments and yet the native will have an undying grip on life. With some natives of this position senility will occur at a relatively early age.

As far as legacy prospects and inheritance are concerned, it is not a helpful influence at all. Sometimes some form of inheritance can occur, but it undoubtedly will be combined with obligations and responsibilities that can almost nullify the benefit being derived. Worry and fear can sometimes occur through the viciousness of the marriage or business partner. Although the partner possesses the capacity to efficiently handle financial affairs, he tends not to share any of the benefit derived.

### Uranus in the Eighth House

Uranus in the Eighth House indicates a strong liability to a sudden and violent death. This will sometimes be the result of a sudden shock, a stroke or a sudden heart failure. As far as financial gain through legacies or inheritance, the position of Uranus here is unpredictable. It denotes the unexpected. Sometimes money or some type of gain will suddenly come from unexpected sources. Uranus often causes unforeseen events to occur which are financially

beneficial for the native. This will sometimes come through the premature death of the next of kin.

#### Neptune in the Eighth House

This position of Neptune signifies death of an unusual nature. It indicates that the native may meet death by drowning, drugs, poisoning, coma, etc. The native may not die violently, but he will die suddenly.

In matters concerning legacies and inheritance, Neptune's influence is one of uncertainty. It can bring disappointments or a loss of benefit through some form of trickery or deception. The action of the marriage or business partner in connection with money matters is not always straightforward and from a business standpoint partnership should be avoided.

#### Pluto in the Eighth House

Pluto in the Eighth House is associated with deaths in which there is a previous disappearance, isolation or confinement. The native will often drop out of ordinary life or contact with other people previous to his death actually occurring. There is some indication that the native may be involved in a natural disaster of some sort. It is not a very helpful position for prospects of gain through legacy or inheritance. The marriage or business partner will more than likely complicate the financial position of the native's life. Once again, it would be wise for the native to avoid business partnerships or, at least use discretion in the choice of a partner.

### NINTH HOUSE

#### Sun in the Ninth House

This position of the Sun affords the native excellent possibilities for long distance and overseas travel. In a feminine nativity it suggests the possibility of marriage to someone of foreign birth or to a person met while traveling abroad. When the Sun occupies the Ninth House, it enhances the opportunities for progress, prestige and dignity abroad. It indicates that the native will be very fond of religious peace. He may even hold an ecclesiastical position of authority. The native is very attracted to ceremony. It is a reasonably good position for contact with the marital or business partner's relatives and it signifies that some of them will be very helpful to the native.

#### Moon in the Ninth House

This position of the Moon increases the prospects for long distance and overseas travel. There are some indications that the native may find financial and social success while traveling abroad. This success often entices the native to take up residence abroad either temporary or permanent, depending on aspects. The Moon here intensifies the possibilities of travel by water, especially if in a Watery Sign or by air if in an Airy Sign. As far as religion

is concerned the native tends to follow a conservative course of activity and probably adhere to the family religion.

The Moon in the Ninth House denotes a keen imagination and a mind receptive to higher thought ideals. The native has the inherent ability to study or understand metaphysical subjects.

#### Mercury in the Ninth House

When Mercury is in the Ninth House, the potentialities of thought and inspiration are sharply accentuated. Although the mental outlook is mostly optimistic the native is characterized by a mental restlessness and changeability which can cause him some confusion. With the planet Mercury in the Ninth House, the native will have a keen interest in a variety of matters concerning religion, philosophy, law, foreign affairs and long distance travel. It is an excellent position for success in the pursuit of language studies and it suggests versatility in this respect.

#### Venus in the Ninth House

When Venus occupies the Ninth House the philosophical framework of the native is strengthened. The natural cheerfulness and optimum of the native is intensified. Venus in the Ninth House reveals a strong belief in spiritual aspects of life. The native is naturally attracted to travel especially to those places of noted scenic beauty. The desire however is more centered around comfort than adventure. As far as religion is concerned, the native of this location of Venus has a marked propensity to follow one of the more orthodox forms of religion.

This position of Venus is generally favorable for contact with the relatives of the marriage or business partner. It is significant to note here that the most beneficial contact with the relatives will be with females.

#### Mars in the Ninth House

Mars in the Ninth House indicates an intense attraction to adventurous travel, it also implies that there is a certain amount of danger involved as a result of such travel and risks should be weighed. It signifies that the native has a strong militant view concerning religious affairs. He is always ready to fight for his own religious concepts yet he also has a tendency to be tolerant of the religious concepts of others. The position signifies a liability towards friction with the relatives of the marriage or business partner. This occurs mostly with members of the male sex.

When Mars is in the Ninth House the native should exercise discretion in all matters concerning the legal side of life. Despite any provocation, personal feelings should not be permitted to influence decisions and the native should always avoid extremes.

#### Jupiter in the Ninth House

This is an excellent position for Jupiter as it signifies that the native will improve himself financially through contact with foreign and overseas affairs. There are also indications that the native may undertake overseas travel for the promotion of a financial endeavor. As far as religious matters are concerned the native is of very high principle and may hold an important religious position. He is extremely attracted to the ceremonial side of life.

The position is excellent for long distance and overseas travel.

#### Saturn in the Ninth House

When Saturn occupies the Ninth House the orthodox views of religion are strengthened. It also implies a keen interest in the occult areas of life. It indicates that the native should expect to have a successful financial endeavor overseas. However, there is also influence which stipulates that the native must be careful not to become over involved in long distance travel because it can have an adverse effect on his health. The success or failure of his financial adventures abroad will, of course, depend strictly on the aspects formed by Saturn.

#### Uranus in the Ninth House

When Uranus is posited in the Ninth House there are indications toward travel of an unusual nature. Sometimes this is connected with space exploration and scientifically related matters. The inventive aspect of the character is strongly accentuated and the native may become involved with affairs of an exploratory nature. The religious interests of the native are likely to be directly connected with the areas of the occult. There is an indication that the native may form some strange and uncommon friendships with people from the off beat areas of life.

#### Neptune in the Ninth House

Neptune in the Ninth House increases the possibilities for long distance travel. There are general indications for success abroad, but the native should try to avoid taking up permanent residence abroad because trouble is indicated here. Religiously and philosophically, the native is attracted to the psychic and mystic areas of life. There are strong indications ensuring financial success abroad. This position affords the native precise powers of insight and understanding concerning matters on the spiritual realm. The native of this position of Neptune has natural powers of good judgement.

#### Pluto in the Ninth House

When Pluto is posited in the Ninth House there is an early attraction in life towards one of the more orthodox forms of religion. Depending on aspects, Pluto can either indicate a considerable amount of long distance travel or a basic denial of it. The native is very attracted to travel of an unusual nature. Depending directly, once again, on the aspects, Pluto can either enhance the probability of successful marital or business relationships or it can destroy them. Pluto here also indicates that the native has the inherent power to

eliminate existing conditions and then replace them with ones of an entirely different character.

## TENTH HOUSE

### Sun in the Tenth House

When the Sun occupies the Tenth House, the radiations indicate that the native of this position possesses a natural ability to run his own business. It implies that he may attain a position of significance in a public or private company. It helps to increase the prestige and reputation which the native will obtain. This locality of the Sun strengthens overall character development and it indicates a tremendous capacity for organization and leadership. The opportunities for making headway in business associations and for deriving recognition from these efforts are numerous and the native need only recognize these opportunities to capitalize on them. He must, however, coordinate his efforts with the opportunities available for the most successful results.

### Moon in the Tenth House

When the Moon occupies the Tenth House the native has several opportunities for advancement in the public and political areas. In many instances, interests and activities of this type afford the native many travel opportunities. It is a favorable position for the success of a one man business or businesses of a small nature. The position favors activities which bring the native into contact with the public. It is an excellent influence for matters relating to every day life. The native may become involved with farming and agricultural interests and there is some indication of financial success in these areas. The native has a very peaceful and harmonious domestic arrangement. This peace is extremely important to him and he will do almost anything to maintain it.

### Mercury in the Tenth House

Mercury here indicates that the native should find success in an executive or administrative position. The influence is excellent for all municipal activities and matters concerning journalism and the newspaper field. Mercury's radiations here are also beneficial for all forms of clerical and secretarial work. The native has a natural tendency to act in a straight forward manner and to be honest in all business transactions. He is very efficient in carrying out his duties and responsibilities. This position of Mercury intensifies the native's inherent interest in politics and matters concerning the government.

### Venus in the Tenth House

Venus in the Tenth House affords the native a strong attraction to the artistic professions. The native may be connected, in one way or another, with some form of singing, dancing or acting. This is an excellent influence for financial success in the banking, accounting or insurance worlds. The societal and public position ensures the native considerable prestige.

The native may exert some political influence if he can learn to blend his political views with his social life in which case he should attain high personal prestige.

#### Mars in the Tenth House

Mars indicates that the native's profession may be associated with activities of an architectural or engineering nature. The native, of this position of Mars, often demonstrates the capacity to study medicine, surgery, dentistry, chemistry or photography. It increases the spirit of enterprise but indicates that the native should avoid taking unnecessary risks. He should also endeavor to control the impulsive side of his character as it can cause him many problems.

#### Jupiter in the Tenth House

Most of the natives of this House position of Jupiter are inclined to the legal side of life. Some of the most profound lawyers of all time have Jupiter strongly placed in their nativities. There are indications which denote that the native will find financial success overseas. Jupiter affords the native a tremendous talent to etch out progress in any serious undertaking. The professional prominence of the native will undoubtedly augment his social position. Even if the native never seriously takes up the study of law, his mind will always operate from a legal viewpoint.

#### Saturn in the Tenth House

Saturn exerts a powerful influence when it is in the Tenth House. Depending on the aspects the influence can be excellent or completely contrary. If well aspected, it indicates tremendous business, professional, and social success, but if on the other hand it is badly aspected, it indicates nothing but problems in these areas. This position of Saturn will bring the native into contact with the commercial side of life, usually into professions concerning management or control. There are indications that the native is quite capable of shouldering responsibility and authority.

#### Uranus in the Tenth House

With Uranus posited in the Tenth House, we can expect that the native's business and professional affairs are subject to sudden and unexplainable changes. The indications are that he will somehow be connected with affairs of a scientific nature. This position of Uranus strengthens the independent element of the native's nature. He is well-equipped to carve out his own nook in the world.

The native of this position must be constantly prepared to accept sudden changes in profession and also to adapt himself to the new situations. If he cannot learn to accept these changes as part of his very existence, his life will be a very unhappy one.

#### Neptune in the Tenth House

The influence of Neptune in the Tenth House is somewhat problematic. It indicates that the native will experience several financial crisis during his lifetime. There is indication that the native will be subject to a considerable amount of deception from others concerning the financial side of life. There are strong indications that the native will be involved with the publicity and advertising worlds. It also implies that the native's profession may, in some way, be linked with prisons, reformatories and institutions. At times, the native will encounter difficulties through trade fluctuations, strikes, lockouts, or through national and international disturbances. The native should be careful not to let the suggestions of others influence his personal judgements.

#### Pluto in the Tenth House

When Pluto occupies the Tenth House the implications are that the native will, in some way, be related to mortuary work. He may be an undertaker or cremator, or he may simply maintain the condition of the cemeterial grounds. This locality of Pluto can either indicate a tremendous amount of personal prestige or the complete opposite. There is no middle point for the native's prestige. There is a tendency towards deceit and dishonesty as far as business dealings are concerned, so the native of this position should attempt to avoid anything which is not strictly straightforward where business, money, personal or emotional matters are concerned.

### ELEVENTH HOUSE

#### Sun in the Eleventh House

When the Sun is in the Eleventh House the indications are that the native will make friendships with powerful people in influential positions. These friends undoubtedly will be in a position to give the native assistance with his plans, hopes and wishes that would not be possible otherwise. It also implies that in some instances these friends may be of tremendous financial aid. This position of the Sun is extremely favorable for social and public activity. The native should always strive to maintain a balance between such social activity and his business interests.

#### Moon in the Eleventh House

This position of the Moon indicates that the native has a tremendous capacity for entering successful friendships. It also indicates that the native will derive considerable assistance from these associations. Many of the friendships formed here will be directly connected to the domestic side of the native's life. Social and welfare work appeals to the native. He can make many friends through his personal capacity to make people feel at home and at ease when working, conversing or cooperating with him.

#### Mercury in the Eleventh House

When Mercury resides in the Eleventh House the native induces his friendships through interests of an intellectual, educational and literary nature. There are indications that the

native is a very serious person and has the capacity for intellectual cooperation with others. The native here is very attracted to scientific studies and experiments. He has a certain flair for the social or public sides of life rather than those of a business or professional nature. This locality of Mercury also implies that the native will have no trouble promoting harmony between his neighbors and relatives.

#### Venus in the Eleventh House

This is an excellent position for Venus and it assists the native in the formation of his friendships and associations. It increases the power of his affections. Venus, here, signifies that the majority of the native's friends are women and that some of them will be connected with artistic endeavors. The position warns the native to be very cautious in his expenditures on entertainment. Venus creates a natural aura of social popularity for the native and friends will continually seek his advice.

#### Mars in the Eleventh House

Mars in the Eleventh House indicate that in the majority of instances the native forms friendships quickly and easily. There is a danger here that through impulse, the native may form unwise friendships with people of a shady character. The friends which are usually formed when Mars occupies this home will be mostly males. The native should always strive to avoid the impulsive side of his character when entering into friendships. Unwise friendships made here will create subsequent friction and disturbance with an undesired reaction upon other areas of life.

#### Jupiter in the Eleventh House

Jupiter in the Eleventh House is an excellent position for the formation of long and lasting friendships. The native will acquire important material and spiritual assistance through his friendships and associations. In many instances, friends occupy extremely influential social, public and business positions and the native stands to gain accordingly. The nature of this help depends on the Sign and Planet influence. The hopes and wishes of the native, once more, are enhanced through the influence and support of friends. Intellectual, scientific and social interests will be productive of friendships which will be long lasting.

#### Saturn in the Eleventh House

When Saturn is posited in the Eleventh House there are indications that the native will encounter serious difficulty acquiring friends. His trouble here, in relating to people, may often result from a personal shyness or diffidence. It can result from an unfavorable environment or some trying circumstance early in life. The few friendships that are made, however, are long and enduring ones. These friendships are generally with people who are much older than the native.

#### Uranus in the Eleventh House

Some very strange and rather uncommon friendships are displayed when Uranus is in this House. The native continually experiences the sudden gain or loss of friends throughout his life. These sudden and unexpected occurrences concerning his friendships can cause the native a tremendous amount of grief. He must learn to accept that this is part of life and nothing can change it. There are indications that some of the friends are directly associated with masonic, scientific, astrological and occult matters and they can assist the native in the strengthening of personal desires.

Uranus, here, implies unexpected realizations of personal hopes and wishes, yet it also indicates severe and sudden disappointments.

#### Neptune in the Eleventh House

Neptune posited in the Eleventh House suggests that the native finds it relatively easy to make friendships and associations. He is attracted to those people who are directly or indirectly associated with the psychic, religious and philosophical areas of life. The native must be very careful of his friends' suggestions in relation to his business. Although his friends always mean well, there are indications that these ideas are harmful to the native's financial make-up. It is extremely important for the native to separate his social and business lives. He has an excellent chance to gain a wonderful incite into the psychic and spiritual areas through the assistance of his friends.

#### Pluto in the Eleventh House

When Pluto occupies the Eleventh House, it is difficult for the native to enter into solid and lasting friendships. Although he probably does not realize it he will be the main cause of this difficulty here. The friendships which he does make will be out of the ordinary. These friendships will more than likely persist for a short time and then suddenly break up. Many times this will be caused by the native changing his residence. In other words, a barrier is erected by circumstances which are very difficult to overcome. Sometimes the position brings unhappiness as a result of speaking or writing too freely among friends and acquaintances. The native should refrain from putting his feelings on certain matters into words.

### TWELFTH HOUSE

#### Sun in the Twelfth House

When the Sun occupies the Twelfth House, the implications are that one third, if not more, of the native's life will be unfortunate and liable to obscurity. Depending on the aspects, the native will either possess the ability to rise up from such misfortune and sorrow and help himself or he will wallow in his own troubles.

The native of this position of the Sun will have strong leanings towards the occult and psychic areas of life. Most of the people born with the Sun in the Twelfth House, you will find, possess uncommon tastes and inclinations.

### Moon in the Twelfth House

When the Moon is in the Twelfth House there are indications that the native's life will be full of limitations and restrictions. This is an ideal position for a monk or a nun, a hospital surgeon or a nurse, for it favors all sympathy work. The native is continually involved in secrets which are of the utmost importance. Either he will carry the secret of another or have some secret of his own which would injure him if known to others. This position ensures the native a natural love of the occult, mystery and romance. If under any spell of the opposite sex, he or she will be inclined to be indiscreet in love affairs and inclined to allow the senses to dominate the reason.

### Mercury in the Twelfth House

Mercury occupying the Twelfth House denotes that the native has a subtle mind. He loves to take risks and adores dangerous adventures of a secret nature. If Mercury is well aspected here the native has a distinct ability to study occult related subjects. He is also well equipped to investigate mysteries or follow unusual modes of thought. This position of Mercury intensifies the native's power, of imagination and it indicates that with proper training constructive visualization can be developed.

There is a tendency for the native of this House position of Mercury to create enemies through a rash personal criticism of others by speech or writing. Sometimes the mental stress caused by such aggravation can disturb the basic intellectual balance of the native. He must be very careful here.

### Venus in the Twelfth House

When Venus occupies the Twelfth House the native is very inclined to romance and there are indications of obscure or clandestine love affairs. The position of Venus often suggests an early marriage, yet it will undoubtedly bring the native into contact with those who may have the power to influence affections after marriage. In some respects, this position of Venus is difficult, for it signifies that the native will experience both periods of secret joy and secret sorrow.

When Venus is posited in the Twelfth House the indications are that interests concerning the affections are one of the major causes of enmity in the native's life.

### Mars in the Twelfth House

Mars in the Twelfth House denotes that the native's life is replete with many strange and unfortunate adventures. When confronted with a situation like this, if the native should act more out of impulse than reason, grave dangers to his health and mind are indicated.

The native of this position is liable to false imprisonment, treachery through misplaced affections, and injuries from enemies. In some cases, this position of Mars denotes poverty and a life long difficulty with finances.

This position of Mars also indicates that in time of war, if the native is involved, he will more than likely find himself taken as a prisoner.

#### Jupiter in the Twelfth House

When Jupiter occupies the Twelfth House it implies a tremendous amount of potential for success in the occult studies and a respect for sacred and ancient beliefs. It also indicates that the native should find success in affairs of a quiet and mysterious manner of which the general public is unaware. This position of Jupiter enables the native to gain either directly or indirectly through his enemies or to turn them into friends even against their own wills. It signifies that the native will find success toward the middle or latter portion of his life and this will bring him aid and assistance from good friends.

#### Saturn in the Twelfth House

When Saturn is posited in the Twelfth House, it implies restrictions and many unhappy conditions as well as an increasing liability to bad luck. This position of Saturn denotes a person who is very reserved and fond of solitude, with strong inclinations to enjoy seclusion. It is an extremely unfavorable position for all save those who love to work in secret and live by themselves.

Many obligations will be forced on the native by both people and circumstances. In some cases the personal condition of health will be such that long periods in the hospital occur. It also suggests a liability to imprisonment which could be as a result of unwise actions or through the enmity of others.

#### Uranus in the Twelfth House

When Uranus is posited in the Twelfth House it implies periods of unexpected and sudden conditions of enmity. It intensifies the liability towards accidents. It also indicates that the native may be held responsible, unfairly, for accidents involving injury to others.

This position of Uranus suggests the formation of secret attachments. These are often associated with elopements and a secret marriage. These affairs usually come to the surface at a later date.

This is a favorable position for those who are inclined to act from occult or psychic motives, in which case it favors the mysterious and romantic.

#### Neptune in the Twelfth House

When the planet Neptune occupies the Twelfth House it exerts an influence which is very difficult to see when good, or to guard against when evil. It is a position showing that one could be framed by the actions or insinuations of those who are unfriendly disposed. There is also a danger of seduction and of trouble through attempts of intimidation or blackmail. It is a position that can bring a danger of being kidnapped or used as a bait to ensnare others.

On the other hand, Neptune can bring benefit through secret ties, associations, agreements and understandings.

#### Pluto in the Twelfth House

Pluto in the Twelfth House is another unsettling position bringing a danger of intrigue and subtle enmity. The native will find people doing things in the background causing mischief, and it is difficult for one to pinpoint the individual who is causing the trouble. It is also a position creating trouble for the native through anonymous letters.

When Pluto is in the Twelfth House there is a tendency for the native to do things which have a boomerang effect. This will many times lead to sorrow and therefore, the native should carefully plan ahead so as to avoid this. Usually this will be a direct result of the native having to give way to the demands of others who are using him for their own interest.

#### CONCLUSION

We have now finished with influence of Planets and houses. Remember the factual statements here concerning the nature of these influences are the results of thousands upon thousands of recorded observations down through the centuries. These observations were corrected time and time again so that the accuracy of the influences is excellent. Variations of these indications are the result of assorted aspects of other planets and conditions of the universe related to the native's nativity chart and his progressed charts.

We are now going into the influences of the signs in the houses and the effect produced. In a relatively short time you will be doing chart erections and basic delineations. When waiting for lessons periodic review will never hurt you. The more of the course material that you can acquire as "finger tip" knowledge the easier your works as an astrologer will be.

# LESSON XIII

## Introduction

Lesson 13 affords you an elaborate portrait of the influence of the first 4 signs of the Zodiac as they pass through the twelve Houses. It is of paramount importance that you realize that seldom does one sign completely occupy one house. Usually a sign is partially contained in two houses at the same time. A sign is referred to as an "intercepted sign" (See [Note 1](#)), if it is completely contained within one house. You should realize now the tremendous importance of the decanate division. It is impossible to consider the influence of the Signs in the houses without studying and weighing the authority of the decanate division which was explained in Lesson IV and is repeated here for emphasis. (Review [Lesson IV](#) if needed).

Decanate – a decan is one of three 10° divisions for each signs 30°. In other words each sign has three, 10° decans. The three decans are divided according to the element of the sign itself, which governs the first decan. The second decan is governed by the next following sign of that same element, and the third by the third sign of that element. Thus, the first decan of Aries is governed by Aries itself; the second decan by Leo; and the third by Sagittarius. It must also be noted that the planetary ruler of the decan is the same as the ruler of the sign governing that decan. In other words, the first decan of Aries is ruled by Mars the planetary ruler of Aries, the second decan of Aries then is ruled by the Sun, the natural ruler of Leo, the third decan of Aries is ruled by Jupiter the planetary ruler of Sagittarius. Our special chart will help to clarify any confusion you may experience here. (See Illustration 1)

DECANATE DIVISION CHART

Sign	Natural Ruler	1st Decan	Ruler	2nd Decan	Ruler	3rd Decan	Ruler
♈	♂	♈	♂	♌	☉	♐	♃
♉	♀	♉	♀	♍	♃	♊	♁
♊	♃	♊	♃	♎	♀	♏	♁
♋	♁	♋	♁	♌	♂	♐	♃
♌	☉	♌	☉	♐	♃	♈	♂
♍	♃	♍	♃	♊	♁	♉	♀
♎	♀	♎	♀	♏	♁	♊	♃

♈	♁	♈	♁	♋	♃	♌	♄
♉	♂	♉	♂	♌	♃	♍	♄
♊	♁	♊	♁	♎	♃	♏	♄
♋	♁	♋	♁	♏	♃	♐	♄
♌	♁	♌	♁	♏	♃	♈	♁

ILLUSTRATION I

NOTE \*1

*Once you have mastered this table of decanates, interpretation of their influence becomes a relatively simple matter. Basically, the whole of the Sign Aries is ruled by Mars, but the first decan of Aries is more specifically under the domination of Mars than the following decanates. The second decanate has a flavor of Leo in it, hence there is a sub-influence of the Sun present. The third decanate has a flavor of Sagittarius in it, hence the presence of a sub-influence of Jupiter. You must not forget, however, that in each case the influence of the sign as a whole comes first in importance: the influence of the sub-division only modifies that of the sign slightly without altering it's inherent nature.*

*Suppose, for instance, you are considering the Sign Aries in 23° of the third House. The natural ruler of Aries is Mars so the aspects of Mars and the influence of Aries must be considered first. In light of these considerations you must also consider the position of Jupiter as it rules Sagittarius, the 3rd decan of Aries. The energy and impulse of Aries must be considered in light of the Sagittarius influence.*

THE SIGNS IN THE HOUSES

The Sign it is in, and more especially the particular degree of the Zodiac, rising upon the eastern horizon at the time of birth is known as the Ascendant Sign. This location is the 1st and most important of the Houses. It depicts the personal appearance and to a considerable extent also the health, mind, and disposition. It is this specific part of the Zodiac which has the most direct influence on the physical body and it's material wants. The five physical senses find their complete expression through the Ascendant. Of course the nature of this expression depends on the Sign rising and the complete fixed position of the entire Universe at that time especially the Sun, Moon and all the planets.

Because of this tremendous significance of the Ascendant Sign, we shall consider not only the sign but also the decanates of each Ascendant Sign as they pass over the horizon. This will not be done with the decanates of each Sign in every house. Once you have completed our course of study you will be well qualified to do this with your own personal knowledge.

## Ascending Signs And Their Decans In The

### FIRST HOUSE

#### ♈ Aries in the Ascendant Position

##### 1st Decan of Aries

When the 1st Decan of Aries rises, it denotes a frank, open, out-spoken and free-handed disposition. The fate of this native is embodied in the native's impulsive and headstrong tendencies, also in his fearless pioneering and progressive spirit. He is ambitious and desirous of rising on the world and he will not ignore opportunity. He is very fond of acquiring knowledge and is keen in all intellectual pursuits. The position and aspects of Mars must be weighed thoroughly.

##### 2nd Decan of Aries

When the second Decan is rising we must consider the influence of Leo and the position of the Sun very carefully. The aspect between the Sun and Mars, if there is one, should be delineated completely.

The 2nd Decan rising modifies the tendency to words ambition and rashness. Fate is influenced by ambition and emotion, the vitality is increased, and the character is strengthened morally.

##### 3rd Decan of Aries

Now we must consider the power of Sagittarius and the position and aspects of Jupiter. Any aspect between the Sun and Jupiter is of tremendous value.

The 3rd Decan rising inevitably makes the whole sign more fortunate. It augments the desire for demonstration and expression and attracts the native towards the philosophic and religious sides of life. It stimulates idealism and increases impulsiveness.

#### ♉ Taurus in the Ascendant Position

##### 1st Decan of Taurus

Taurus rising suggests a diplomatic, secretive, obstinate and self-willed disposition. The native is practical, dogmatic, determined, resentful, persistent and stolid. He will evince strong likes and dislikes, take sudden prejudices and demonstrate considerable reserve and diffidence. We must consider the position and aspects of Venus, since it is the planetary ruler of Taurus.

##### 2nd Decan of Taurus

When the 2nd Decan of Taurus is rising it awakens the internal nature of the sign, providing the native more natural intuition, discrimination and practical business ability. There is also a tendency to become more critical as well as intuitive and although he is clever the native will have many strong temptations to become selfish and over inquisitive.

When the 2nd Decan of Taurus is rising we must consider the position of Mercury in relation to Venus.

### 3rd Decan of Taurus

The 3rd Decan of Taurus rising denotes more ambition, but it also indicates that the native is often over laborious and cautious. It strengthens the Taurean nature, strengthening the intellectual qualities and stimulating reason. The influence of Capricorn tends to lessen the intuitive nature of Taurus. Chastity is one of the chief benefits provided by Capricorn.

The position and aspects of Saturn must be carefully considered here, especially in relation to Venus.

## II Gemini in the Ascendant Position

### 1st Decan of Gemini

This position of Gemini implies a kind, willing, humane, intellectual and expressive disposition. The fate of the native is invariably improved when restlessness and diffusiveness are overcome. The whole life will advance through educational and intellectual progress. The native is very curious and has a tremendous desire to learn.

We must consider the position and aspects of Mercury to determine the complete effect of this influence.

### 2nd Decan of Gemini

The 2nd Decan of Gemini rising balances the whole sign providing the native with perception, foresight and real artistic ability. It also affords an opportunity to blend head and heart with reason and intuition.

All of which concerns the planet Venus, also its position in relation to Mercury must be considered.

### 3rd Decan of Gemini

People born when the 3rd Decan of Gemini is rising are generally successful in dealing with the public. Fate is generally influenced by guardians or friends and it very often there is something connected with domestic affairs which affects the whole life.

The position and aspects of Uranus must be considered here as well as the Aquarius influence.

### ♋ Cancer in the Ascendant Position

#### 1st Decan of Cancer

The 1st Decan of Cancer rising denotes an imaginative, fanciful, receptive and tenacious disposition. Fate of the native is usually bound up with domestic ties, family interests and impressionable attachments. The native will exhibit a certain amount of timidity, reserve and mistrust, which will produce morbid and doubtful associations.

We must consider the complete influence exerted by the Moon when studying this decan. The power and principles of Cancer are profoundly felt here.

#### 2nd Decan of Cancer

The 2nd Decan of Cancer rising awakens the psychic and mystic tendencies, yet it also provides the native with a certain amount of control over his sensations. It increases the tenacity of the sign, and denotes determination, love of power, ambition, and internal receptivity.

Both the influence of Scorpio and the position of Pluto must be evaluated to ensure a complete delineation of this influence.

#### 3rd Decan of Cancer

The 3rd Decan of Cancer rising strengthens the whole sign and suggests a very hospitable and sympathetic nature. The native is very studious and intuitive, possessing a keen love for the acquisition of knowledge.

We must consider the influence of Pisces and the position and aspects of Neptune. Neptune's aspect to the Moon will provide us with a clear insight into the personality of the native.

### ♌ Leo in the Ascendant Position

#### 1st Decan of Leo

The 1st Decan of Leo rising denotes a jealous, frank, generous, and ambitious disposition. Fate develops rapidly, and an eventful life is the outcome of the love of power and the organizing ability which the native manifests. Downfalls and problems are usually the result of hasty and passionate impulses, but the native has the power to recover his balance through firmness, endurance, and self-control. This sign provides great vitality and a splendid physique, the body being strong and generally very healthy.

When the 1st Decan of Leo ascends, we should note carefully the position of the Sun and the aspects it forms.

### 2nd Decan of Leo

The 2nd Decan of Leo rising suggests a liability towards extremes, making the native more demonstrative, active, and at times very rebellious. It awakens the philosophical side of the nature when the nativity denotes such a possibility. The willpower of the sign as a whole is strengthened if the Sun is well placed and in good aspect with Jupiter.

We must consider all the aspects of the Sun, but most in particularly the aspect, if any, which it forms with Jupiter.

### 3rd Decan of Leo

The 3rd Decan of Leo rising strengthens the willpower of the sign and adds to the impulsive and persistent side of Leo. In some instances it provides opportunities to unite head and heart, and the intellect will strengthen the higher emotions providing zeal and ardour. There is also a quiet determination that is unequalled. Fate here is to a great extent under the control of the native. His willpower is controlled by reason and illuminated by intuition.

When the 3rd Decan of Leo ascends, we must consider the influence of Aries and the position and aspect of Mars.

## ♍ Virgo in the Ascendant Position

### 1st Decan of Virgo

Virgo rising denotes a quiet, reserved, retiring and receptive disposition. The path is strictly dependant on opportunities. The native, although lacking in determinative ambition, is persevering and ingenious. Here the sign provides more than a usual amount of selfishness, however, this is often counteracted by sympathy for the troubles of others and by a sense of justice which the native develops when the intelligence awakens. He is very orderly, critical, systematic and often self centered and is rarely understood on first acquaintance. The native thrives best in a business atmosphere and although never lazy or afraid to work he prefers to use his wits whenever they will serve.

The position and aspects of Mercury must be completely considered.

### 2nd Decan of Virgo

The 2nd Decan of Virgo ascending awakens the independence of the native and makes the native thoroughly practical and well adapted for all business pursuits. It also furnishes him with some artistic inclinations, and/or musical ability. Fate is mainly determined by the social element or the political world in which distinction is generally sought and obtained.

Wealth is acquired through industry, thrift and by adopting practical common sense methods in business organization.

The influence of Capricorn and the position of Saturn must be studied to conclude a complete consideration of this Ascendant.

#### 3rd Decan of Virgo

The 3rd Decan of Virgo rising accentuates all the business and practical tendencies of the sign Virgo and adds intuition to the mental qualifications for acquiring wealth where financial enterprise is concerned. It is fortunate for fate as it affects the general disposition by adding determination to all the Virgo characteristics. There is usually considerable artistic ability.

When the 3rd Decan of Virgo ascends we must evaluate the influence of Taurus and the position and aspects of Venus.

#### ♎ Libra in the Ascendant Position

##### 1st Decan of Libra

Libra ascending suggests a courteous, affable, kind and affectionate disposition. The fate is mostly in the hands of others, as there is little ability to mould or alter circumstances. The native is controlled principally by feeling and intuition, more so than reason. He is keen of observation, fond of company, and generally very artistic, refined and truly sympathetic. There is not much energy or incentive to action, and consequently life tends to run in grooves as the native is prone to lean on others for support.

We must consider the position and aspects formed by Venus for a complete delineation.

##### 2nd Decan of Libra

The 2nd Decan of Libra ascending accentuates the sympathetic side of the native. The native may be remarkably intuitive, and generally take a keen delight in social intercourse, loving and appreciating all that pertains to the social side of life. Fate is affected by friends and associates, so much so as to make the native a slave, to friends and attachments.

##### 3rd Decan of Libra

The 3rd Decan of Libra rising weakens the influence of the sign as a whole, and tends to make life more or less unfortunate. However, somewhere in the horoscope there is usually an influence which provides the native with natural ability to rise up from unfortunate situations and to benefit through the experience. If the native should, however, succumb to restlessness, and impatience it can work to his detriment. This position of Libra suggests that the native can improve his fate through education.

## ♏ Scorpio in the Ascendant position

### 1st Decan of Scorpio

The first decan of Scorpio rising depicts a reserved, shrewd, secretive and proud disposition. There are two distinct types of people born under this sign, the extremely ignorant and the highly mystical. The former are inquisitive, deceitful, jealous and treacherous while the latter are prudent self-controlled and highly dignified. In many respects this is an unusual sign as it produces natives of one extreme or the other. The weakest people born under this influence are those who have no control over their criminal senses while the strongest are the mystical and intelligent.

### 2nd Decan of Scorpio

When the 2nd decan of Scorpio ascends it accentuates either of the extremes mentioned above. Fate is usually unfortunate and often disastrous. If the native is born into a wretched environment he rarely succeeds in raising himself above mediocrity. The natives of this position seldom produce their own opportunities and their life is simply in the hands of chance.

### 3rd Decan of Scorpio

The 3rd Decan of Scorpio rising awakens the sensitive nature of the sign and provides a keen desire for emotional attachment thus reducing the selfishness inherent in Scorpio's influence. However this position of Scorpio increases the jealous tendencies of the native. He will have to be extremely careful of this otherwise it may ruin his life.

## ♐ Sagittarius in the Ascendant Position

### 1st Decan of Sagittarius

The first decan of Sagittarius rising denotes an open-minded, honest, sympathetic and generous disposition. The native is highly impressionable, though fond of liberty and independence. He is often reckless extravagant and careless. When undeveloped he is thoughtless, erratic and rebellious but when intellectually awakened he is philosophical, a lover of law and order, peaceful and intuitive.

### 2nd Decan of Sagittarius

The 2nd decan rising depicts the impulsive and headstrong tendencies of the sign as a whole. It also indicates that the native goes to extremes in exhausting his mental and physical energy. The native of this position must be very careful not to become over-excited. If he can not learn to control his excitability mental and nervous disorders are indicated. He must cultivate his powers of self-control and learn to conserve his energy.

### 3rd Decan Sagittarius

When the third decan of Sagittarius ascends it awakens the better half of this dual sign and it incites the intuition and provides the native with the ability to prophesize and foresee the future. It increases the love nature of the sign and makes the native very demonstrative and ardent in affection. The native must be careful of his impressionable nature as it can accentuate his problems. He may find himself drifting aimlessly from one relationship to another without appreciating the true value any of them.

### ♑ Capricorn in the Ascendant Position

#### 1st Decan of Capricorn

Capricorn in the ascendant provides an ambitious, persevering plodding, and persistent disposition. Fate is determined by the moral growth and the power to organize and rise above the difficulties of the early environment. The native is basically reserved, firm and self-reliant and anxious to be at the head of affairs. The Capricorn influence provides the native with tremendous potential for tact, prudence, and progress both financially and socially.

#### 2nd Decan of Capricorn

The 2nd decan of Capricorn rising incites the ambitious qualities of the native and provides him with a persistent driving nature. He is inclined towards conservative and orthodox conditions. This position of Capricorn strengthens the character and indicates that the native will be a strong willed person.

#### 3rd Decan of Capricorn

The 3rd decan of Capricorn ascending modifies the self-reliance of the sign but strengthens intellectual and mental qualifications. If the native can manage to obtain a good education the indications are that he will become a useful and important member of society. Circumstance will dictate the life of the native, much more than the ability to rule his own destiny.

### ♒ Aquarius in the Ascendant Position

#### 1st Decan of Aquarius

The first Decan of Aquarius ascending implies a refined sympathetic, and humane disposition. Fate depends upon the nature of friends and acquaintances the native gathers around him. He has the ability to read character, and study human nature, but he does not always act upon his own intuition. He must be careful not to let his sympathies over-rule his reason and intuition. The undeveloped Aquarian is often quiet and true, with good and kind intentions, but easily led by companions. He will often agree to do something without considering the results.

#### 2nd Decan of Aquarius

The second Decan of Aquarius rising modifies the tendency to day-dream, as it renders the mind active and capable of intellectual attainment. It does not, however, provide sufficient continuity or concentration to qualify for literary or educational work. Fate is often affected by relatives and companions. Much of this influence will depend on the type careers and occupations in which the latter are involved.

### 3rd Decan of Aquarius

The third Decan ascending improves the Aquarius nature, providing more balance and a higher standard of intellect with very refined tastes and clear discrimination. This Decan attracts the native towards the occult and mystical side of life, as it often awakens the clairvoyant faculty. Fate is affected by marriage or love affairs, yet the native is not inclined towards marriage and he may well prefer a celibate life.

## ♆ Pisces in the Ascendant Position

### 1st Decan of Pisces

Pisces ascending denotes a restless, anxious, impressionable and mediumistic disposition. Fate is rarely under the native's control, as there is some impelling force behind pushing him toward good or ill unconsciously. He is kind and just, and he tries to encourage the romantic and sentimental side of his nature. He rarely understands himself or his emotions. He is inclined to be secretive, is very receptive and often inspired.

### 2nd Decan of Pisces

The second Decan of Pisces rising awakens all the latent sensitiveness of the sign Pisces. It also provides a keen internal aspiration to become a channel through which the forces of good may flow. It lessens the methodical tendency of Pisces, but increases the inclination towards economy and usefulness. This position provides the native more persistency and the ability to utilize the virtues of Pisces without all its vices.

### 3rd Decan of Pisces

The third Decan of Pisces ascending encourages the weaker side of the sign. It intensifies the selfish and jealous tendencies of the sign. Conventionality and the material side of life are cultivated. The native must carefully control these preferences or his life will be an unhappy one.

*Note: From here on the Sign and planets for each decan will not be listed. We feel that it will be excellent practice for you to note which are involved from [Illustration 1](#), the decanate chart, or if possible from your memory. Remember "decanate" and "decan" mean the same thing. See also [note 1](#) page 2.*

## SIGNS IN THE 2nd HOUSE

### ♈ Aries in the 2nd House

Aries in the 2nd House inevitably incites extravagance and this can cause many financial woes for the native. He has the tendency to spend more than he has. The native must cultivate a resistance for this urge to spend or he will continually be in a monetary doldrum. Nonetheless, Aries in the 2nd provides the native an excellent capacity to earn money. He should exercise discretion when opportunities for easy money arise because this will sometimes lead to unwise risks.

### ♉ Taurus in the 2nd House

Taurus's influence here provides a certain amount of practicality for the native. He is quite efficient when dealing with monetary matters. The native is sharp and conservative when spending his resources. He has a deep respect for honesty and integrity and he will endeavor to promote these ideals. The native of this position usually will ignore unwise risks and easy money speculations. He would prefer to build up a reserve for the future so that he always has something to fall back on. Women, in general, will have a tremendous financial effect on the native. It can be good or bad according to the aspect involved.

### ♊ Gemini in the 2nd House

Gemini exerts its dual influence here and indicates that the native will make money through a variety of efforts. Although the main source of income will be the native's normal business or profession, he has the capacity to develop an auxiliary force for extra money. When Gemini influences the financial side of life it would be wise to warn the native to see that the inclination to overlap interests and activities does not involve dual obligations. Those will produce nothing more than unnecessary problems.

### ♋ Cancer in the 2nd House

This position of Cancer intensifies the power of imagination in regard to making money. The main significance, however, of Cancer is that it incites the conserving principle. This does not necessarily interfere with willingness to spend money when he has to. In other words, the native is very efficient when dealing with his money. Rarely does he waste money and yet he does not hoard it all to bring it to the grave with him. He is in the middle of the two extremes. On the other hand, family upsets, squabbles and disputes can have an adverse effect on the financial aspect of his life.

### ♌ Leo in the 2nd House

Leo in the second House provides the native with the sound ambition to obtain a substantial income. The basic power of organization are strengthened and this aids the native in his handling of people and affairs associated with the financial side of life. There are times, however, when the native must exercise some self-control otherwise his extravagant qualities may cause him trouble.

The spirit of enterprise is one of the strongest features of Leo and when this is applied to the finances much can be accomplished.

#### ♍ Virgo in the 2nd House

Virgo in the 2nd House intensifies the frugality with which the native approaches his financial life. The native does not shy away from spending money, but when he does spend he will make sure that he is getting his money's worth. The native of this position must always be careful of the criticism which Virgo naturally provides him. He has a tendency to be over critical of his business partners and this can cause a tremendous amount of friction. This criticism, however, can benefit the native as long as he uses it constructively and not merely out of habit.

#### ♎ Libra in the 2nd House

The sign Libra in the 2nd House provides a natural attraction to the financial interests of life. The native here loves to be involved in monetary dealings. Luxuries and the better amenities of life have strong appeal for him, yet he will want money to come easily and without too much effort on his part. This desire to make the easy money must be carefully watched because the native may easily be led into fraudulent dealings. His main weakness is his reliance on other people even though they can help him financially.

#### ♏ Scorpio in the 2nd House

Scorpio in the 2nd House indicates that the native has the potential to work long and hard for his income. He has natural patience and his efforts are invariably rewarded whether he works for himself or others. The native will always need to watch his expenditures for even though he is not personally extravagant, he has a tendency to over spend on equipment and machinery for business purposes. Forethought should be paramount in speculation and undue risks should not be taken.

#### ♐ Sagittarius in the 2nd House

Sagittarius in the 2nd House signifies that money matters will be reasonably progressive and that the native is subject to periods of luck and good fortune. The native will usually find that his income is derived from a variety of sources. For instance, if he can combine his main vocational interests with his secondary ones, the result should augment his income. The native may sustain losses from being overly generous with people and causes for the common good.

#### ♑ Capricorn in the 2nd House

Capricorn in the 2nd House intensifies the ambition and drive of the native as far as his financial life is concerned. The desire for money will be intense because of the security it can offer once a reserve is built up. The native has a natural talent for the regulation of expenditures, but he must be careful not to be over-cautious as this may deny him

necessities. The practicality which Capricorn provides should regulate the financial activities of the native, demonstrating that he can be cautious without denying himself any of the necessities of life and some of its luxuries. He must recognize this potential if it is to benefit him.

#### ♈ Aquarius in the 2nd House

When Aquarius occupies the 2nd House it suggests that many of the native's personal hopes and wishes will be associated with money and the financial side of life. Financial success will ensure the realization of the native's hopes and wishes. The native should derive more benefit as a result of constructive investment than from speculative risks. Again, the native of this position should cultivate his powers of self control in order to regulate his expenditures.

#### ♹ Pisces in the 2nd House

When Pisces occupies the 2nd House, it suggests that the most benefit will be derived through the creation of goodwill and by correct cultivation of associations. There is some indication that the native may experience losses as a result of imposition, deception, and false friends. He should constantly be cautious with the friends and associations he makes. The inclination to make easy or quick money should always be resisted because endless troubles are indicated here. He should avoid all shady characters because all they will do is cause him problems.

### SIGNS IN THE 3RD HOUSE

#### ♈ Aries in the 3rd House

When Aries is in the 3rd House it incites the creative side of the native. It suggests that the native may have a deep interest in studies connected with construction and machinery. Aries, here, indicates that the native will travel a considerable amount and that the majority of this travel will be undertaken on the road. The native has an inborn driving desire for exploration and the challenge of the unknown. There is some implication of an accident while driving a car, so the native should exercise caution while driving.

#### ♉ Taurus in the 3rd House

The influence of Taurus in the 3rd House implies that the native will be involved in a considerable amount of short distance travel and that the nature of this travel will be determined by the everyday circumstances of life. When travel is undertaken, the Taurus mind will plan every move in advance so that the journey will be as comfortable as possible. The Taurus influence here provides the native with excellent powers of concentration and this is of tremendous aid for any type of study he may become interested in.

#### ♊ Gemini in the 3rd House

The influence of Gemini in the 3rd House provides the native with a versatile mentality and the capacity to study a great variety of subjects. Because of this tendency, he should be careful and try to conserve some of his mental energies by not taking up too many subjects at once. The problem here is obvious, a great variety of interests can confuse the mind. Gemini here implies that the native will be involved in a considerable amount of short distance travel. This will be air travel mostly, but some rail travel is indicated.

#### Cancer in the 3rd House

Cancer here increases the possibilities for short and medium distance travel by water. There is some indication that for personal or business reasons some long distance travel will be undertaken. The native has a tremendous desire for changing scenes, but the factor of comfort en route is of paramount importance to him. Cancer's influence provides a vivid imagination, hence the native has some inherent literary ability. It intensifies the power of memory and the native is able to recall minute details of his past life. There will be strong domestic ties in the native's life.

#### Leo in the 3rd House

The influence of Leo in the 3rd House implies a restriction of travel making it directly dependant on circumstances. This is problematic in light of the natural desire for travel which Leo also provides the native. Road travel is the most appealing, as the native has a tremendous capacity for appreciation of the mountainous beauty of the country. Art and education are the fields which the native can find success with studies. He has intense admiration for the contemporary art and prides himself in this feeling.

#### Virgo in the 3rd House

The potency of Virgo in the 3rd House implies that the native's profession will compel him to undertake a considerable amount of short distance travel. The native is very impatient and voices a certain amount of criticism concerning this form of travel. The time factor and the hassles of the rush hour will irk him to no end. As far as studies are concerned, the native has a marked desire to know how things work. The intricacies of science and literature will fascinate him and he will always want to know the precise principles involved. His inquiring mind is one of his most valuable assets.

#### Libra in the 3rd House

The sign, Libra here suggests a considerable amount of short distance travel and that there will be a natural blend between pleasure and business travel. The nature of this travel is subject to the free personal decision of the native. Companionship during travel is an essential factor, as the native has no desire to travel alone and he will find no pleasure doing so.

The native has an inherent understanding of human nature and character and therefore, he can find success and pleasure studying psychology, psychiatry or astrology.

### ♏ Scorpio in the 3rd House

Scorpio in the 3rd House implies that the native will be involved in a considerable amount of short distance travel, and that such travel will be the result of circumstance rather than personal choice. The factor of comfort is extremely important to the native and if he cannot arrange this comfort when traveling, he will be unhappy. Studies concerning the occult and kindred matters are especially appealing to him. Many natives of this position become deeply involved in the astrological world. The native has excellent powers of retentive memory and this is an invaluable asset for his studies.

### ♐ Sagittarius in the 3rd House

Sagittarius in the 3rd House indicates that the native will experience a considerable amount of short distance travel. This travel will be the result of both business and social interests. The beauty of the country is extremely appealing to him and so he prefers road travel if it can be arranged comfortably. The native is particularly attracted to the studies of philosophy, law, history, and languages. He has an inherent driving desire to understand people and life and his place in relationship to them.

### ♑ Capricorn in the 3rd House

The influence of Capricorn here implies that the native will do a considerable amount of short distance travel. This travel is associated with his profession and comfort is paramount to him. The native is very studious and may even follow a conscientious political career. If he does not pursue politics the native will study his business until he knows it perfectly. The ambitious drive of the Capricorn influence spurs the native on the lofty heights of his dreams. The memory is intensified and the native has a tremendous capacity for memorizing important facts.

### ♒ Aquarius in the 3rd House

When Aquarius occupies the 3rd House it enhances the interest and desire for air travel, while also stimulating the urge for road travel. Circumstance will play a major part in determining the exact amount of travel undertaken and much will depend on the financial and business positions. The native has an intense natural desire to enjoy research work, especially if it is connected with the scientific world. Many forms of character reading, astrology, palmistry are appealing to the native.

### ♓ Pisces in the 3rd House

Pisces in the 3rd House implies that the native will experience a considerable amount of short and medium travel. This travel is a result of both circumstance and the personal preference of the native. The native is intensely attracted to water travel. Pisces in this position provides the native with excellent powers of imagination and therefore, he has a natural talent for writing. The writing of plays, scenarios, fiction, detective stories, crime

investigation will all prove interesting and helpful. The native would also find some interest in such studies as natural history, marine life, photography, psychic and mystical matters.

#### SIGNS IN THE 4TH HOUSE

##### ♈ Aries in the 4th House

Aries in the 4th House suggests that home and family life will be productive of active and at times even of unsettled conditions. The domestic atmosphere is conducive to a considerable amount of arguments, disputes, especially between the male members of the family. Yet, beneath this hostile atmosphere, each member of the family will like and appreciate the other members. Various changes of residence will occur and during the first part of life certain of these can be of a disturbing or unpleasant character, inciting a feeling of personal rebellion.

##### ♉ Taurus in the 4th House

The influence of Taurus in the 4th House suggests that the home arrangement will be reasonably stable. The domestic changes that the native is subject to will be of a sudden and drastic nature, implying a complete upheaval in his life. Financial matters play a prominent part in the trend of affairs at home. Especially after marriage the financial condition of the native will determine the success of the marriage. Taurus, here, suggests that during the closing years of his life the native will travel quite a bit.

##### ♊ Gemini in the 4th House

The Gemini influence in the 4th House suggests that there will be a fair sized family and that the domestic arrangement is subject to numerous residential changes as a result of professional changes. The native's family life, both before and after marriage, will be lively and full of variety. At times, the relatives play quite a prominent part in the decisions arrived at. The personal activities of the native will remain operative until the closing years of his life.

##### ♋ Cancer in the 4th House

The Cancer presence in the 4th House indicates that the native will have very strong domestic ties. The attachment to parents and the early environment is very strong. Even though circumstance and professional opportunity will often bring the native away from the home, he always feels a deep attachment to the family and will return home from time to time. After marriage, the personal inclination for travel, change and movement will tend to lessen. The native now is looking more for domestic comfort and the creation of residential permanence.

##### ♌ Leo in the 4th House

The Leo influence in the 4th House demonstrates that home and family affairs will be of great importance to the native. There is a strong sense of loyalty to the other members of the family and a pride in family history. A rigid discipline in the rearing of children is passed on from generation to generation. The latter part of the native's life insures him some security and permanency of residence. Many of the native's personal interests during this closing period will be associated with children and grandchildren.

#### ♍ Virgo in the 4th House

The influence of Virgo in the 4th House implies the native's early environment may be somewhat restricted, due to the views of the parents and their enforcement of discipline and adherence to a certain code of life. This conservative attitude of the parents naturally creates a desire in the native for change and variety. It implies many early attempts by the native to break away from the rigidity of the home life and outright conservatism of the parents. The later period of life will be reasonably active and progressive. Virgo here suggests that the professional activities of the native will be carried out right up until the end of life.

#### ♎ Libra in the 4th House

The Libra influence aids the domestic arrangement by lending the balance it needs to become harmonious. In many cases, it is indicative of some form of partnership between the parents and the children. A strong bond of affection with the parents is suggested and this bond will be maintained throughout the life of the parents. During the closing years of life, there will be an increased desire for companionship. The end of life is usually comfortable and secure.

#### ♏ Scorpio in the 4th House

The Scorpio influence in the 4th House implies a somewhat turbulent and eventful home life. During the earlier years emotional upsets are implied which will disturb the family harmony. Some of these upsets will be caused by the parents failure to see eye to eye with the children. Changes of residence are indicated and these changes will be quite abrupt, sudden and unexpected. Despite the tension caused by emotional upsets and domestic changes there will be strong links and affectionate bonds with the parents. Later life is inevitably very eventful and is likely to bring the native extensive travel.

#### ♐ Sagittarius in the 4th House

The Sagittarius influence in the 4th House implies that numerous residential changes will occur both early in life and continuing until the later years. Life will be eventful domestically, mainly because the other members of the family will express a degree of independence compelling various changes. During the latter years of life, interest concerning religion, writing or the publishing field can become prominent. In general, these later years will tend to be very active.

#### ♑ Capricorn in the 4th House

The Capricorn influence in the 4th House implies that the earlier part of life was somewhat secluded or restricted. Some of the early conditions may have been quite difficult as a result of the native's father encountering business, financial or emotional difficulties. Some personal ambitions will be connected with home and family life and will be realized after marriage has taken place. The latter part of the native's life will be as active as anything which was previously carried on. Many earlier hopes and wishes will be brought to fruition and the native will gain financially through these efforts.

#### ♒ Aquarius in the 4th House

The Aquarius influence in the 4th House suggests that some of the personal hopes and wishes are directly associated with domestic and family affairs. The implication here is that there will be few, if any, changes of residence and if there are they will be of paramount importance. Some of the earlier hopes and wishes will be realized during the latter part of life. The closing years of life are usually very comfortable and peaceful for the native. He takes a tremendous interest in the activities of his grandchildren and will do anything possible to help.

#### ♓ Pisces in the 4th House

The Pisces influence in the 4th House suggests a large family which is subject to many and varied changes. During the earlier years of life various changes of fortune are shown to affect family conditions. At times things will run smoothly and at other times they will be unsettled and unsatisfactory. The latter part of life suggests a considerable amount of variety. There are some indications that the last days may be spent in a hospital, nursing home or similar institution. Even if this should occur, there will be ample companionship to provide many pleasant hours.

#### CONCLUSION

You are now working at the beginnings of delineations. Your skills in going forward as an astrologer will be developed in the remaining lessons. The next lesson will conclude the signs in the houses and then on to the vital points of aspects. At this stage in your training you should be able to realize how extremely general are the sun sign horoscopes of every day newspapers and magazines. You already have a wealth of knowledge in your memory and at your fingertips in your lesson books. Yet there is so much to come at the end of which you will be capable of erecting and delineating a very accurate chart which will do so much good for your client, relative, friend or yourself.

## *LESSON XIV*

### Introduction

Lesson 14 concerns the impact of the Signs as they occupy the last eight Houses of the Zodiac. Proceed cautiously and remember that your study of the Signs, Houses & Planets is coming to a close. You will never actually cease your investigation of these focal points of Astrology. The lessons are providing you with a sound basis for interpretation and delineation of the potential influences in a nativity, but you must realize that your study and investigation should never end. This is one of the most incredible concepts of Astrology: the potential areas for investigation are endless and you can pursue these either professionally or as a hobby. The Signs, Houses, and Planets should now be part of your very thought process. You should ponder and consider the logic of the influence. Once again may we remind you of a very effective method of weighing their influence. Set apart a certain amount of time every day; it can be any time during the day, but preferably when your mind and soul are free from the tensions of everyday existence. Make yourself comfortable, sit back, take a few deep breaths, and relax every part of your body. It may take ten or fifteen minutes or even a half hour for you to become completely relaxed but it is time well spent and you owe this period of relaxation to yourself. (Those of you who are familiar with and appreciate the astounding beauty and logic of Yoga can well understand this principle.) Once you have achieved this state of total mental and physical relaxation you are ready to meditate and absorb the knowledge exposed to you.

If you cannot find the time to do this every day, a couple of times a week will suffice. Now let us complete our consideration of Sign influence in the Houses of the Zodiac.

### FIFTH HOUSE

#### Aries in the Fifth House

The influence of Aries in the fifth House suggests an ardent emotional make-up. The emotional drive must be kept under control, otherwise the impulsive side of the nature will dominate and cause endless problems. The native tends to form associations and attachments with members of the opposite sex which, although exhilarating at the moment of impact, can fizzle out quickly signaling an acute sense of disillusionment and lack of fulfillment.

So far as children are concerned, the indication is mainly of males and usually of a medium-sized family. The prospects for rearing children are reasonably good.

#### Taurus in the Fifth House

Taurus in the Fifth House implies an intense desire for affection, yet this desire is of a conservative, rather than a diffuse, nature. Once the native has formed an attachment his desire is for this relationship to be permanent. Personal sincerity is of paramount importance

to the native, and he will expect the same in turn from his friends. All the emotional affairs of his life, will be taken very seriously and the native will approach his emotions with an aura of ceremony.

Taurus here provides the native with a natural love for children, and it indicates that he will find much success and happiness in matters concerning children.

#### Gemini in the Fifth House

Gemini in the Fifth House bestows the flirtations tendency on the native's personality. Many love affairs, sometimes a couple at a time, are indicated as the Gemini influence lends its dual impact. The desire for variety is at the base of this person's character. He will crave change and yet always maintain the uncanny knack of appreciating all he sees. He will find himself immensely attracted to the intellectual set, and his conversational ability should draw him the variety he craves.

The indications for children are not strong, and his family is usually very small.

#### Cancer in the Fifth House

The influence of Cancer in the Fifth House implies the emotional type who can be very happy at times and just as sad at others concerning his love affairs. There is a deep inner desire for love and affection but this revolves directly around a tranquil domestic life. The successful balance of the domestic scene is critical to the balance of this native's overall character.

A large family is a distinct possibility as the native is extremely compassionate when dealing with the problems of the young.

#### Leo in the Fifth House

The Sign Leo in the Fifth House strengthens the emotional ardor. The native is flirtatious and will fall in and out of love at the drop of a coin. He is considerably passionate and receptive to love, yet he is easily led astray, foolishly thinking that he has now found true love.

Only a few children are indicated and the native will have acute problems sustaining the patience to rear children.

#### Virgo in the Fifth House

Virgo in the Fifth House incites the native's intellect and suggests that most of his successful relationships are on this mental plane. However, if the intellectual approach to love affairs is carried to an extreme, it can become just as much of a liability as an asset. Personal sincerity is crucial to the native and he has the utmost respect for it.

Although the family will be small, the native is well-equipped to handle the natural domestic problems that arise.

#### Libra in the Fifth House

Libra in the Fifth House intensifies the native's natural desire for companionship and contributes a warm balance to these relationships. Before marriage, there will be numerous love affairs, but these will all dissolve quickly and the native will continue his search for true love. Although he is not over-conservative, the influence of Libra tends to narrow his philosophy about life.

The indications are for a small family and the native is provided with the competence to rear these children.

#### Scorpio in the Fifth House

Scorpio in the Fifth House intensifies the passionate side of the native and implies that he will experience periodic infatuations. Although he is fickle, the native of this position of Scorpio seems to feel, very intensely, all of the relationships he gets involved in. Scorpio here suggests a jealous nature, which, if not controlled, can disrupt the tranquility of the native's life pattern. He must be very careful of this tendency to jealousy.

Scorpio suggests that some children may be born out of wedlock, and the native should always consider this possibility. A large family is indicated.

#### Sagittarius in the Fifth House

Sagittarius, in the Fifth House, indicates an inherent desire for variety and therefore this position implies a number of love affairs. Each affair is intense and seems permanent, yet suddenly this acute desire for variety pops up and the native has to move on. He is vehement against being tied down to one person and is not afraid to make this known.

Sagittarius, here, indicates a medium-sized family, predisposed to male children. The native is very competent and trustworthy when operating at the domestic level.

#### Capricorn in the Fifth House

The natives of this position of Capricorn will constantly search for a smooth-running love affair, and, once they find it, will do almost anything to maintain it. The Capricorn native shuns uncertainty and searches for the permanent love affair. He longs for this permanency so he doesn't have to spend much time with his love life, and can devote more of his energies and ambitions to other areas of life, namely, his business.

It implies a rather large family and indicates some rebellious youth in the family due to the conservative, staid aura, of training surrounding the raising of the children.

### Aquarius in the Fifth House

Aquarius in the Fifth House indicates that love affairs will develop through social contacts. Sometimes a long-standing friendship will suddenly burst into a love affair, and, in this instance, lead on to marriage. Complications can arise as a result of two or more friendly associations developing to the point of attachment, and thus creating a need for a decision which is not easy to make.

The domestic implications are for a small yet very tightly-knit, family. Each member has the mutual respect of the others.

### Pisces in the Fifth House

When Pisces occupies the Fifth House, the emotions are intensified and often are much deeper than they appear on the surface. For this reason, if the native gives way to his feelings too freely, sorrow and unhappiness are indicated. The native is capable of making many personal sacrifices for his beloved, but he should be discreet for these sacrifices are not always appreciated.

The influence of Pisces here indicates a rather large family, and implies that the native is quite capable as far as rearing children is concerned.

## THE SIXTH HOUSE

### Aries in the Sixth House

Aries in the Sixth House endows the native with a strong physical body, excellent vital powers, and plenty of life force. The native has a considerably active mental and physical nature; he must be careful of this. Over-activity upsets the balance of the health, and causes a natural restlessness, which occasionally results in insomnia.

The native has a natural capacity for hard work, but routine can lead to boredom and this can produce inefficiency.

### Taurus in the Sixth House

The influence of Taurus here suggests a powerful physical strength and endurance. The vitality is strengthened and the muscular make-up is solid. Taurus invariably suggests a hearty appetite which must be contained, or else heart trouble is indicated.

Taurus provides the native with an inherent capacity for hard work. He is persistent and will always finish the job he starts. He must learn to organize his work schedule around substantial periods of rest. This will have to maintain efficiency in his work.

### Gemini in the Sixth House

The Gemini influence here indicates that the native's mental strength is greater than his physical strength. Even so, the Gemini body is well adapted and coordinated, and its movement is swift and efficient. The native must be acutely careful not to overstrain himself mentally, as this can cause a depletion of his health. Undue excitement or any form of excessive study or worry will disturb the health.

Mental interests will dominate the work of the native.

#### Cancer in the Sixth House

Cancer does not provide a natural strong physical body, as there is a great deal of receptivity to environmental conditions. The health can be shaken through worry about domestic upheavals as well as because of emotional or mental discord caused by the nature of the work being done.

In connection with the work, the native of this position of Cancer will insist on cleanliness and comfort in his surroundings. Without this, the caliber of work will shrink.

#### Leo in the Sixth House

Leo is an excellent influence in the Sixth House. It indicates good health, physical strength and, overall, a well-formed body. The native should be extremely careful, however, not to become overly active or excited because this can cause him some heart trouble. He should cultivate his suave powers of calmness and conserve his energies.

Leo provides the native that indelible talent for organization and indicates a tremendous capacity for administrative work.

#### Virgo in the Sixth House

Although Virgo provides the native with a healthy physical make-up, it also endows him with a healthy appetite. The Virgo person will never suffer from malnutrition, but he must be careful to avoid overweight. He will always remain healthy and his appearance is crucial to the Virgo peace of mind.

As far as the work atmosphere is concerned, the Virgo native here must have everything precise and exactly as he likes it. He is not the one to shy away in the background and let someone else delineate the work conditions. He is extremely critical and analytical of the conditions surrounding the work atmosphere.

#### Libra in the Sixth House

The Libra influence in the Sixth House implies a strong physical body which is unfortunately haunted by emotional disturbances. In other words, if the native is experiencing emotional traumas, a corresponding depletion of health invariably occurs. The high point of his physical health fluctuates with the peak of his emotional tranquility.

In the work atmosphere, harmony, congeniality, and cleanliness are essential. The native functions best in a peaceful harmonious atmosphere.

#### Scorpio in the Sixth House

The Scorpio influence here strengthens the physique and intensifies the natural power of physical endurance. The implications are that good health can be maintained provided that normal habits of life are followed and excesses of food, drink, and sex are avoided.

Scorpio incites the personal capacity for hard work, and proper sanitary conditions will help to induce efficiency. Uncleanliness is foreign to the native, and it will lower the level of his work.

#### Sagittarius in the Sixth House

Sagittarius in the Sixth House provides the native with a wiry yet healthy body. Once again, a serious depletion of health can occur when the native becomes over-active or over-excited as a result of a period of mental-emotional strain. The native should be extremely careful to intersperse work with periods of pleasure and of physical and mental rest. He must also be careful of the restlessness which Sagittarius naturally affords him.

In the work sphere, the native cannot tolerate monotony, and he needs as much variety as possible. Exhaustion or rebellion will occur if the native spends a prolonged period of time or effort on one monotonous job.

#### Capricorn in the Sixth House

Capricorn indicates that in the early life the health of the native is weak, but that as life rolls on, his strength and grip on life increases. The native of this position of Capricorn reaches his physical peak later in life than the rest of the Signs of the Zodiac, and because of this, the latter part of his life is sometimes the most productive.

The personal capacity for hard work is intensified and the native strives to be as efficient as possible and to organize activities with the best possible advantages. He does not like to work for others and prefers his own way.

#### Aquarius in the Sixth House

Aquarius in the Sixth House indicates a physical robustness and implies a normal healthy body. This Aquarius native, however, should be extremely careful of his blood and always attempt to maintain its purity. A poisoning of the blood stream can occur as a result of sluggish circulation and this can lead to morbid changes which are unfavorable for the health of the native.

The native desires the work conditions to correspond to his personal hopes and wishes. If this can be arranged, his efficiency at a job will be intensified, but if it cannot be arranged, the competency will be stymied.

#### Pisces in the Sixth House

Pisces exerts a weak influence in the Sixth House, and indicates that the native will need to take tremendous care of his body. He must constantly strive to maintain his physical and emotional strength. Personal cleanliness and the cleanliness of surroundings is essential for the maintenance of good health.

Pisces in the Sixth House implies numerous difficulties with the working conditions. Invariably the capacity to work will be good, but some of the conditions will be uncongenial, and when working for others, jealousy or unfriendliness from co-workers is indicated.

### THE SEVENTH HOUSE

#### Aries in the Seventh House

The influence of Aries in the Seventh House implies that the native is highly idealistic in the areas concerning his affections and marriage. This is dangerous, and he should cultivate a sense of practicality in the actual forming of associations. A considerable amount of emotional impulse is indicated, and this is intensified by a natural desire for companionship with the opposite sex. If the native cannot modify the impulsive side of his emotional make-up, an unsuccessful marriage is indicated.

The native should avoid partnerships, because numerous problems are indicated. If the situation should arise where a partner is necessary, he should be very discriminate.

#### Taurus in the Seventh House

The Taurus influence in the Seventh House enhances the native's desire for affection, but it also provides him with an inherent discriminatory nature. Hence, he will only enter into a relationship after careful consideration of the outcome of that relationship. For this reason the native will find much happiness and success in marriage. He is a naturally faithful person, and will do almost anything to maintain domestic tranquility.

Partnership in business will be successful and long-term. Once again, the native employs his natural powers of discretion and will make a wise choice.

#### Gemini in the Seventh House

The variety of the Gemini influence here implies that the native will be involved with several affairs at once, and that sometimes more than one marriage will occur. The natural Gemini drive for variety and change must be controlled, because it can cause hurt and incite

emotional trauma. The native will continuously seek those who operate on the intellectual plane. His ability as a conversationalist will attract many people to him.

The native should use complete discretion in the choice of a business partner. The most suitable one would be the one with the highest degree of adaptability.

#### Cancer in the Seventh House

Cancer incites the native's natural desire for domestic comforts and a peaceful family life. Thus the native is very serious about marriage and will make sure that he chooses the right partner. The Cancer influence here suggests numerous emotional traumas which can lead to considerable heartache. The native must strive not to let his emotions rule his intellect. If he can cultivate his intellectual powers, then he can effectively deal with his emotional problems.

This position of Cancer is excellent for partnerships, because the native is responsive to and considerate of the problems which may arise.

#### Leo in the Seventh House

The Leo influence, here, intensifies the natural desire for affection. It implies that the ambitions of the native will determine the types of relationships he will seek. The impact of Leo in this House indicates a successful marriage, and implies that after marriage, the social position is of paramount importance.

Partnerships should be avoided because the native wants to be his own man, make his own decisions, and run his own business.

#### Virgo in the Seventh House

The Virgo influence, here, suggests that the native is discriminate and critical of the relationships he enters. He analyzes every aspect and possibility before committing himself. The native desires the comforts and overall amenities of marriage, and will do almost anything to sustain these. The immensely critical nature which Virgo implies is the main marital problem. The native must strive to understand and accept the partner as he is, and not try to change him.

As far as partnerships are concerned, once again the criticism of Virgo interferes, and if the native cannot modify this tendency, he should avoid such associations.

#### Libra in the Seventh House

The Libra influence in the Seventh House implies a natural attraction towards marriage. The native has a strong desire for companionship and affection. He has an idealistic conception of marriage, and it would behoove him to consider the practical side as well. The

balance and peace of Libra affords the native the inherent potential to create a successful domestic life.

As far as partnership is concerned, the influence of Libra is excellent. The native is capable and willing to consider the partner's view. Successful ventures are implied.

#### Scorpio in the Seventh House

Scorpio, placed here, intensifies the emotional desires and incites the desire for marriage. The major problems facing the native, as far as associations and marriage go, are the intense jealousy and antagonism which is part of his basic nature. If he can modify these negative influences of Scorpio, he will become a more complete person, and he stands a better chance for a successful marriage.

Partnerships have the potential to be successful but, once again, the native will have to learn to curb his jealousies.

#### Sagittarius in the Seventh House

Sagittarius indicates that the native needs a variety of attachments and associations before he can even consider the idea of marriage. The Sign is sometimes productive of more than one marriage, as the native will become bored and look for something new. It is crucial for the native to not feel as if he is missing anything. The woman who can make him happy is rare, and this explains why he spends so much time looking for her.

The native should shy away from partnerships because failure is indicated.

#### Capricorn in the Seventh House

The influence of Capricorn in the Seventh House implies that the ambitious side of the nature will determine the affectionate and marital aspects of life. The native will marry only if this can be efficiently meshed with his ambitious drives. His career is of paramount importance to him, and he does not want anything to interfere with his professional success.

The prospects of partnership are excellent simply because the Capricorn native here is highly discriminate, and he would not bother with partnerships unless he knows he has the right man.

#### Aquarius in the Seventh House

The Aquarius influence in the Seventh House suggests that the native will rely on marriage to realize all of his childhood hopes and dreams. This can be very dangerous, as this type of naivete can only lead to heartache. The native is intensely attracted to those older than himself, as he sees them being the answer to his fantasies.

The influence is questionable as far as partnerships are concerned. Although they can be easily formed, the native's immaturity can destroy them just as quickly.

#### Pisces in the Seventh House

The influence of Pisces in the Seventh House suggests that the native has an idealistic approach to his emotional and marital affairs. Although this is an effective approach, the native must also cultivate a sense of practicality if he is to avoid the hurt of reality. If the native cannot acquire this sense of practicality, he can become very disillusioned with life and never find happiness.

Partnerships may be very successful, but, once again, the native must be careful not to let his idealistic tendencies cloud the real issues.

### THE EIGHTH HOUSE

#### Aries in the Eighth House

The influence of Aries in the Eighth House suggests that cerebral disturbances are a primary cause of death. The native should always be intricately careful with his head and brains, and anything connected therewith because these are very sensitive areas. The native must be cautious when driving or riding in a car, for danger is imminent.

The possibilities for inheritance are few, and even if one should occur, the amount of benefit obtained is minimal.

#### Taurus in the Eighth House

The influence of Taurus in the Eighth House suggests that the heart may be one of the major causes of death. Disorders of the throat can also lead to the native's death. He must be cautious with any throat or throat-related disease or infection.

The prospects for inheritance are excellent, and the native can expect to inherit some land or property of considerable value. The property may already be the home of a prospering business, and this could be included in the inheritance.

#### Gemini in the Eighth House

Gemini in the Eighth House implies that the chief cause of death may be a cessation of respiratory activity. The condition of the lungs and the respiratory system should be maintained because they are sensitive. Also, the native should avoid excesses of alcohol or drugs, because they are potentially dangerous to his body balance.

An inheritance from a relative is indicated, but it will not be that substantial, and will probably occur in the middle stage of the native's life.

### Cancer in the Eighth House

Diseases of the breasts, epigastric area, pancreas, and the womb may be responsible for the native's death. These areas of the body are highly sensitive, and the native should always be aware of this. Sometimes extreme cases of insomnia are indicated, which are dangerous to the mental and physical well-being of the native.

The possibilities for inheritance are directly dependent on the family wealth. It is rare that inheritance will originate outside of the immediate family. Whatever wealth the family has, it will leave behind for the native's pleasure.

### Leo in the Eighth House

Leo in the Eighth House reveals the fact that the heart or the spinal cord are related to the native's death. Death can occur from any of the various forms of heart disease.

The impact of Leo on the inheritance cycle is tremendous. The native can expect to become rich through inheritances from all angles. The immediate family, relatives, and distant friends are all potentials for the inheritances. Leo affords the native a natural desire to gamble, and if this desire is not modified, the fortune inherited could be just as quickly wasted.

### Virgo in the Eighth House

The native of this position of Virgo must be careful of his stomach and intestines, because they are extremely sensitive areas of the body. Ulcers are indicated, and this possibility is intensified because of the natural worry which Virgo provides the native. If he can learn to modify the critical aspect of his nature, then he will worry less, and the overload on his intestines will cease.

As far as inheritance is concerned, the influence is doubtful. There is a slight chance of some gain through this means, but more than likely, the native will never experience the financial aid of an inheritance.

### Libra in the Eighth House

Some form of kidney disease such as nephritis or Bright's disease, etc., will be a major contributor to the death of the native. The kidneys are extremely susceptible, and the native should constantly maintain their strength.

Libra in the Eighth House indicates that the native can expect a substantial inheritance through the death of either the marital or business partner. It also suggests that a legacy may be left to the marital or business partner, and that the native will gain from this.

### Scorpio in the Eighth House

Scorpio indicates that the native may die a violent death because of some unwise risk or adventure undertaken. Scorpio is concerned with all sexual disorders, and with such occurrences as Hernia, Fistulas, and Hemorrhoids. The implication of a violent death is completely dependent on the planetary aspects involved.

The possibilities for gain through legacy or inheritance are numerous, but there are indications that this money will be spent unwisely, and never realize its true potential.

#### Sagittarius in the Eighth House

Death can occur, under Sagittarius' influence here, through accidents arising from all forms of sporting activity, more especially through sports of an equine nature. Other possible causes of death could be through fevers such as enterio, or through arterio-sclerosis, abscesses, tumors or growths.

The implications for inheritance are excellent, and it may even come from some distant unknown source such as a distant relative, and, in certain instances, through a relative or the business or marriage partner.

#### Capricorn in the Eighth House

The influence of Capricorn in the Eighth House implies that the native, no matter how sick he is, has an uncanny grip on life. In the face of death from a chronic illness, the native will prolong his agony and pain despite the suffering, through his desire to live. The Sign is indicative of senility, and the native may live until he just fades away.

As far as legacy and inheritance are concerned, the native can expect a minimal inheritance from a close member of the family, but this will not amount to anything substantial.

#### Aquarius in the Eighth House

The influence of Aquarius in the Eighth House indicates that death may be caused through some form of blood circulation. Pernicious anemia is one of the more serious complaints from the natives of this position of Aquarius.

The native is a dreamer, and he may live in a fantasy as far as inheritance is concerned, always dreaming of the fortune he, unfortunately, will never realize. He may be the beneficiary of a small inheritance, but his dreams are of the big one.

#### Pisces in the Eighth House

The native of this position of Pisces must be extremely cautious where drugs and alcohol are concerned, because he has a tendency to over-indulge, and this can prove fatal. If he cannot modify this tendency, an early death is indicated. Death can occur through the

respiratory organs stopping their normal functions because of an undue secretion of phlegm and mucus of a catarrhal nature.

The indications for legacy and inheritance are almost non-existent. The native should not expect any financial help through the aid of inheritance.

## THE NINTH HOUSE

### Aries in the Ninth House

Aries in the Ninth House implies that philosophically, the native is somewhat of a rebel. He does not agree with most of the accepted tenets of philosophy, and prefers to formulate his own. He is a politically-minded individual, and a close association is often found between his philosophical and political outlook.

The native has a strong spirit of adventure, and hence long-distance and overseas travel is appealing to him. His fiery nature will invariably take him down to the tropics, his finances permitting.

### Taurus in the Ninth House

Philosophically, this Taurus native will tend to accept the orthodox forms of religion. He will not contribute much more than his adherence to the philosophical development of his society. Whatever training and convictions his guardians built into him will remain with him for the rest of his life. He is afraid of what he does not know, and this is a tremendous hindrance to his development.

Taurus in the Ninth House restricts the native's possibilities for overseas travel. The native more often than not is well-equipped financially to travel, but he lacks the initiative.

### Gemini in the Ninth House

The influence of Gemini in the Ninth House expands the broadness of thought. Philosophically, Geminis are the most interesting people of the Zodiac. They are constantly ready to exchange ideas and look for new and different meanings of life. The Gemini native of the Ninth House has the mental capacity to reshape and improve upon the philosophical tenets of the day.

Although Gemini provides the native with a driving desire to travel, this will depend strictly on the personal finances. Several opportunities for overseas travel will come his way, and he need only to capitalize on these opportunities.

### Cancer in the Ninth House

Philosophically, the Cancer native of the Ninth House will follow the basic convictions and beliefs which his family introduced to him. The Cancer person loves the security of

conservatism, and he offers very little to contribute to the development of thought. He is more at home simply accepting the tenets laid down by the great teachers of the day. However, this native may have an intense interest in psychic matters, and he can pursue this without interfering with his principles.

Several overseas cruises are indicated, as the native reveres the sea and loves to travel on it.

#### Leo in the Ninth House

Leo in the Ninth House suggests that the native was brought into a rigid religious family, and that as the years pass and he becomes more and more free, he will question deeply these convictions forced upon him. Although he may adhere to these family principles for a long time, it is most likely strictly from the fear of losing his family's respect. As soon as he conquers this and his mind opens up, he will begin to understand himself. Inherently, this individual is deeply psychic, and acutely interested in the occult.

The native usually will have to wait until the latter part of his life before he can take those overseas cruises he always has dreamed of.

#### Virgo in the Ninth House

In the early years of life the native will adhere to the family philosophical precepts, but as the Virgo influence develops, he will question, criticize, analyze, and eventually develop his own ideas. Eventually, depending on the rest of his horoscope, he may contribute some significant ideas to the world of philosophical thought.

His natural desire for overseas travel should be rewarded on numerous occasions. Of course, this will depend on his financial status, and whether or not he can afford these excursions.

#### Libra in the Ninth House

The Libra native of the Ninth House has a beautifully open mind from the very beginning of life. Although he will respect and admire his family's philosophical principles, these will not tie him down, and he undoubtedly will formulate his own ideas and opinions.

The personal desire for travel is not too intense, and if an overseas journey should occur, the native will take it lightly, without making much of a fuss.

#### Scorpio in the Ninth House

Although this native tends to adhere to the philosophical and religious tenets into which he was born, he has a wonderful inherent potential to delve into the occult and psychic worlds. Whether or not he can awaken and realize this potential will determine if he will progress in his thoughts on the meaning of life.

Circumstances will determine if his inherent desire for travel will be fulfilled.

#### Sagittarius in the Ninth House

Sagittarius in the Ninth House provides the native with a sincerity of conviction regarding philosophy and religion. The native will seriously pursue the tenets and precepts of philosophy, and he will be completely convinced of what he believes in. He has a substantial capacity to pursue the study of the occult and psychic worlds, and once he has matured, he will seriously undertake this pursuit.

The indications for overseas travel are excellent, and, depending upon financial circumstances, he will travel the world.

#### Capricorn in the Ninth House

The Capricorn mind is too busy pursuing a career to make an effective study of philosophy. This is not to say that he is ignorant of the different philosophical tenets of the day. He may be very well-read in the field. The point is that this is not of paramount importance to him, it's just something that he should know about. It's part of the driving Capricorn class.

Much overseas travel is indicated as a result of business ventures. This can be particularly rewarding for the Capricorn native because he can blend in his business with his pleasure. This is very important to him.

#### Aquarius in the Ninth House

Some of the most philosophically advanced thinkers of all time have had Aquarius strongly placed in their Ninth House. The Aquarius influence leaves no stone unturned in its pursuit of philosophical truths. There is abundant potential for the study of psychic and occult matters. Once more, the native may make some significant contributions to these areas.

The native will have to overcome difficulties and obstructions if he is to fulfill his inherent desire for travel.

#### Pisces in the Ninth House

Pisces provides the native with a natural desire to investigate the philosophical tenets and precepts of the day. He will conduct his study with fervor, and is perfectly willing to make the necessary sacrifices for this study. The rewards are great, for the greatest satisfaction a Pisces can obtain is to realize a philosophical truth. He will have a passing interest in the psychic and occult, but although he will be well-informed, he will not take it very seriously.

Pisces, in this position, indicates that the native will make several overseas voyages. He will make certain that he is financially capable of doing this.

## THE TENTH HOUSE

### Aries in the Tenth House

The influence of Aries in the Tenth House implies that the native's profession may involve the construction and mechanical businesses. It indicates involvement in all forms of building: houses, shops, offices, factories, etc., and the various trades associated therewith, such as brickmaking, cement, concrete, carpentry, and painting. Road and bridge construction hold numerous financial opportunities for the native. He may also find some success in the timber and forestry businesses.

### Taurus in the Tenth House

The impact of Taurus in the Tenth House suggests that with the proper training, the native has the inherent ability to pursue a profession connected with the financial side of life. He may find considerable success in the banking world. He is well-equipped to advance in the stock exchange or through stock broking.

The Taurus native of the Tenth House is artistically inclined, and hence he may pursue one of the arts—music, singing, painting, etc. – professionally. Again, this is dependent upon opportunity and the training available.

### Gemini in the Tenth House

The Gemini influence in the Tenth House implies that the native will find the most success and happiness in a profession where his intellectual capacity is utilized. There is an inherent potential for success in journalism or some form of writing. The native will not find professional happiness unless he is constantly thinking and developing his intellectual prowess. It may very well be that this native will have some type of business with a transportation agency. This will keep him in contact with a diverse and varied set of people.

### Cancer in the Tenth House

The native of this position of Cancer has an intense original imagination, and if he is to find professional happiness, he must utilize his imagination. It seems that many of the people born with Cancer in this position find success in the advertising and publicity worlds. There is a wealth of potential for the imaginative type in these fields.

Although the native can conjure up many interesting and efficient ideas for novels, short stories, etc., he does not have the natural talent of putting thoughts into words, which is so necessary to a writer. If he were to pursue this field, he would have to train himself, rigorously.

### Leo in the Tenth House

The influence of Leo in the Tenth House is excellent for the educational field. The native has a natural desire and talent to fulfill some capacity related to education. Instruction is probably the best career for the native as he loves to teach and pass on the knowledge he has acquired to others.

The native can also expect to find some success in the stock market, but he must be very careful here, and make sure that he understands every move he makes.

#### Virgo in the Tenth House

Virgo implies that the native should find a considerable amount of success in the agricultural field. The marketing and selling of all forms of farm produce would also prove beneficial.

The native can also expect to find some success in the clerical and secretarial fields, although these areas should not be considered for a life-long profession. The native should use the clerical and secretarial fields as stepping-stones, and no more.

The native should also come into contact with interests concerning food reform and manipulative forms of healing, such as osteopathy.

#### Libra in the Tenth House

The influence of Libra indicates that the native may expect to find considerable success working in some capacity with precious stones and metals. The native could expect to find much success in the field of metallurgy or simply in the cutting and polishing of precious stones.

The native can also satisfy himself in some capacity with the diamond industry. The Libra influence implies that the native has the utmost respect for the work he does, and for this reason is very efficient.

#### Scorpio in the Tenth House

The influence of Scorpio in the Tenth House suggests that the native should pursue a medical or dental career. Of course, it is necessary for the person to be afforded the opportunity, but once that is there, this is the best professional area for him to pursue to pursue. The Scorpio influence will provide the native with all the necessary drive and determination necessary to pursue this career. Even if the native, for some unfortunate reason, cannot pursue medicine professionally, hospital work of some capacity is suitable.

#### Sagittarius in the Tenth House

All aspects connected with the legal side of life hold a considerable amount of potential success and happiness for the native. Accounting, insurance, or shipping are also indicated as possible areas for professional development. The native has a tremendous desire for

intellectual development, and the more of this that his profession will enable him to do, the happier he becomes. The happier and more content he is, the more efficient his work is.

#### Capricorn in the Tenth House

The tremendous ambitious and business drive is vividly portrayed by this position of Capricorn. The native of this position has an almost limitless capacity for organization. He is the one who will be responsible for the degree of efficiency with which a business operates. For this reason, he functions most effectively when in an administrative or executive position. From this point, he can effectively relegate his power and ideas through his labor force.

#### Aquarius in the Tenth House

A love and command of statistics and minute details is indicated by this position of Aquarius. If the native can effectively blend his intellectual and mental interests with the world of mathematics, then a scientifically related profession is strongly indicated. This sign implies success in electronics and everything which is related directly or indirectly to the world of electricity. The native may very well study the field of astronomy professionally.

#### Pisces in the Tenth House

Pisces in the Tenth House indicates that the native has a natural potential to pursue nursing or medical work. All forms of hospital and remedial work are suitable, since the native has an acute compassion for his fellow-man, and is always willing to help him.

There are also indications that the native may follow some type of sea or water profession, where he is near the water everyday. Pisces have a great love for the water.

### THE ELEVENTH HOUSE

#### Aries in the Eleventh House

The impact of Aries in the Eleventh House indicates that the native has a strong desire for enduring and lasting friendships. The personal drive of the native in dealing with friends is intensified and impulsive decisions can result, which may cause problems. The implication here suggests that the native should employ his natural powers of discrimination when seeking friendship. Submission to impulse can only lead to disillusionment.

The fire of Aries provides the native with the natural drive to effect the realization of the majority of his hopes and wishes.

#### Taurus in the Eleventh House

The Taurus native of the Eleventh House does not have a wide variety of friends, but the friendships he does make will invariably be permanent and enduring. Once he has

committed himself, the native will do almost anything to preserve the balance of the relationship. He is very effective in the handling of his finances, and he will undoubtedly seek those who are like him in this respect. Hence, many of his friends will be business and professional acquaintances.

The personal hopes and wishes of the native are connected with financial interests, and his practical and realistic approach should help satisfy these hopes.

#### Gemini in the Eleventh House

The Gemini influence in the Eleventh House suggests a wide variety of friendships and associations. The native is popular and well-liked, and his uncanny knack as a conversationalist brings him into contact with people from all walks of life. His main interests are in the intellectual realm, and most of his serious friendships will emanate from this.

The native may never realize the fulfillment of his personal hopes and wishes, simply because they are constantly changing, and he is never completely sure just what he wants.

#### Cancer in the Eleventh House

Cancer in the Eleventh House implies that family and domestic interests and activities will be the main source through which friendships and associations will be developed. The native will often make some strong and lasting friendship at family gatherings, where the domestic ease and comfort are conducive to pleasant conversation.

The native's hope and wishes will center around the progressive development of the domestic situation. The native wants nothing but the best for his family, and the majority of his hopes are for the improvement of his family's lot.

#### Leo in the Eleventh House

The impact of Leo in the Eleventh House provides the native with an easy-going disposition, and indicates that many of his friends will be from the same professional and social position that he is. The native has the good sense and control to maintain a cheerful outlook, even during the hardest of times. This is an excellent capacity, and helps to preserve friendships that otherwise would have dissolved.

The native does not overemphasize his hopes and wishes, and he resigns himself to the hand of fate. He is a realist in the truest sense of the word.

#### Virgo in the Eleventh House

Virgo in the Eleventh House suggests that the native will not find it easy to form lasting and important friendships. His critical and analytical nature will eliminate possibilities by the dozen. The Virgo person is not afraid to come right out and tell you what he thinks of you,

whether it is good or bad. However, the few true friendships he does make are of paramount importance to him, and they will more than likely be life-long.

The Virgo native of the Eleventh House has few secret hopes and wishes, and he does not consider them feasible.

#### Libra in the Eleventh House

The Libra influence in the Eleventh House provides the native with a natural charm and ease which attracts many people. He is more than willing to meet people on their own ground, and is interested in a variety of subjects. Although this natural charm and grace will attract many people, the native is very careful about those with whom he develops close relationships. Only a few true lasting friendships are indicated, with numerous passing ones.

The native is very serious about his hopes and wishes, and sincerely believes in their existence. He is very secretive concerning these, and will only discuss them with his close associates.

#### Scorpio in the Eleventh House

The Scorpio native of the Eleventh House will experience a considerable amount of difficulty in forming genuine friendships. The native here is burdened with an over-abundance of jealousy, and this is the crux of his problem. If he can eliminate the element of competition from his relationships, much of the tension will be relieved. Underneath his jealousy and the competitive "I'm better than you" type of atmosphere, the native is warm-hearted and faithful to the end.

The native's hopes and wishes are centered around his professional advancement. He aspires to be rich and famous, and all his dreams are of his impending glory.

#### Sagittarius in the Eleventh House

Sagittarius in the Eleventh House provides the native with a natural friendliness and a desire to be in the company of people. It is crucial to the Sagittarius type that people accept and like him. He patterns and organizes himself according to his inherent desire to be accepted. In time he is well accepted, and has friends from various areas of life. He is keenly interested in sports and many of his friends will be connected with the world of sports.

The personal hopes and dreams of the native concern his position in society, and how well people react to him.

#### Capricorn in the Eleventh House

As surprising as it may seem, Capricorn in the Eleventh House indicates the shy, withdrawn type, who has trouble making friends and meeting people, unless they make the first move. Once the initial barrier is broken, the native will open up and prove an interesting

companion, friend, or lover. As he gets older, this native will become less and less shy, and eventually he will completely conquer the problem.

Business and professional advancement and success will occupy most of his hopes and wishes.

#### Aquarius in the Eleventh House

Aquarius in the Eleventh House strengthens the natural charm and personality of the native, and suggests that it will be easy for him to make friends and to keep them. His intellectual interests and drives will bring him many diversified friends, and this diversity of people will be of paramount importance for him. He desires to be a leader amongst his friends, but he is also more than willing to help them out.

The success of friendships and the continual mutual assistance they offer will be the main outlet for the native's hopes and wishes.

#### Pisces in the Eleventh House

The Pisces native of the Eleventh House will find it relatively easy to make friendships and associations because of a natural sympathy and understanding he has concerning human nature. His friends are his whole life, and if one of them is sick or in trouble, he is the first one to try to help out. The only problem indicated is that sometimes people will take advantage of his natural generosity, and this can hurt.

The native does not profess any substantial belief that his hopes and wishes will come true, as he tends to take a philosophical outlook on life.

### THE TWELFTH HOUSE

#### Aries in the Twelfth House

The Aries native of the Twelfth House may encounter disparity from others whenever he tries to present new ideas or to open up new lines of communication. The Aries influence provides the native with a drive for new things, but people will not always understand the way he fulfills this desire.

There is some indication that the native may spend some time imprisoned as a result of war or political actions.

The native should always strive to maintain his desire for novelty.

#### Taurus in the Twelfth House

Taurus in the Twelfth House indicates that matters concerning the financial side of life will be the cause of some enmity. The elements of jealousy and obstinacy are contributing factors, and this will be more pronounced should family money be involved.

This influence of Taurus indicates some business losses through a mishandling of finances. There is also some indication that the native may suffer due to unfair business or trading tactics of competitors.

#### Gemini in the Twelfth House

The Gemini native of the Twelfth House would be wise to watch the actions of relatives and neighbors, and never talk too freely about personal or confidential affairs. This same sense of discrimination is required in correspondence and writings, and nothing of a confidential or important nature should be put into letters.

In general, the native of this position should be leary of any form of writing. Although the native has a natural desire for writing, endless problems are implied.

#### Cancer in the Twelfth House

Cancer in the Twelfth House indicates that affairs concerning the family side of life, property, or even residence are avenues through which enmity can occur. Discords and emotional upsets with other members of the family will cause the native a considerable amount of strife. This will be especially problematic for him because his domestic life is so important to him.

#### Leo in the Twelfth House

Leo in the Twelfth House implies that the majority of enmity in the native's life will come from people in authoritative or influential positions. The way in which the native reacts to this problem is indicative of the intensity of the problem. If he can handle this with maturity, he can overcome the problems, and they will not cause him too much trouble. If he deals with these problems on an immature basis, the troubles will be of major importance.

#### Virgo in the Twelfth House

The Virgo native of the Twelfth House is well-equipped to deal with any enmity which should arise. Enmity will most likely arise in the sphere of business or vocation because of the jealousy of co-workers. The native is well able not only to modify this discord, but also to explain the problem to those involved. From another angle, though, the element of the native's criticism can sometimes engender misunderstandings or feelings of harm from co-workers, which can develop into resentment.

#### Libra in the Twelfth House

The influence of Libra in the Twelfth House indicates that discord may arise through matters concerning marriage, business partnerships, or cooperation, and hence the native should always proceed cautiously here. If the marriage or business partner is the more dominant and he takes a more prominent part in social or public affairs, this will be resented by the native. Sometimes if misunderstandings of this nature are taken too seriously, the marriage or partnership will dissolve.

#### Scorpio in the Twelfth House

In the Scorpio native of the Twelfth House, jealousy is the major source of enmity. Either through the native's own personal jealousy, or the jealousy of his acquaintances, endless problems are indicated. As the native matures, he should learn to control and modify this negative emotion. As he develops emotionally, he begins to understand how this emotion causes him unnecessary trouble. He will also learn how to handle those associations and acquaintances who have the same problem. If the native can somehow survive the early difficulties here, he will be all right.

#### Sagittarius in the Twelfth House

The native of this position of Sagittarius must be extremely careful of his close friends, because some of them will turn on him. The more success the native procures in life, the stronger this possibility is. The real trouble is that these people will not turn on him openly, but will seek to destroy him behind his back. These people are jealous of the native's position, and they are ready to do anything to lessen the strength of that position.

#### Capricorn in the Twelfth House

The influence of Capricorn in the Twelfth House implies very little liability to enmities. The native is very shrewd, and is not easily taken advantage of. He understands his societal and professional positions, and is very careful not to create any unnecessary friction. If he should, and this is a distinct possibility, pursue a political career the potential enmity is increased. The native would be wise to stay out of politics, as a considerable amount of trouble is indicated.

#### Aquarius in the Twelfth House

This is a very bad position for Aquarius. It is the sign of friendship and good nature, but here the natural goodness and charm of Aquarius will be viciously taken advantage of by foolish friends. The real essence of this problem is that it may change the harmony of this native into bitterness and hatred. The native does not have the potential to understand that some people in the world are evil, and so he himself will become evil in his blind attempt to make take revenge.

#### Pisces in the Twelfth House

Pisces in the Twelfth House will bring the native into contact with people who are looking for nothing but their own personal gain. However, the Pisces native is better equipped to deal with this situation than the Aquarius native. Whereas the Aquarius person will change himself from something ideally beautiful into something terrible just to get even, the Pisces native will simply and realistically consider this one of the unfortunate realities of life, and continue to be himself. The Aquarius native here would do himself a favor to take a lesson from Pisces.

### CONCLUSION

Our consideration of the influence of the Signs in the Houses of the Zodiac is now complete, and we are ready to commence our investigation of the influence of the aspects. Once again, we are going to repeat the definition of the difference between the Signs and the Houses, because the difference is crucial to your understanding of Sign and House influence.

The Signs and Houses are obviously related, but we must not confuse them, because they are two very different things. The Signs are fields of potential energy and influence moving through the Houses, or departments, of life, which in turn remain stationary. The Signs exert the heavenly influence, and the Houses represent the intricate allotments of our earthly assets, and experiences. It is important that you understand this concept. Remember to save your booklets, because they will serve as invaluable references when you are delineating a client's chart.

This material which is nowhere assembled as carefully as we have done it here at, is the result of thousands upon thousands of charts studied and recorded throughout history.

# *LESSON XV*

## INTRODUCTION

We are going to commence our investigation of the enlightening world of aspects. The aspects are important for the simple reason that they determine the potential power of the influences of the planets in their natal and progressed positions. It would be futile to begin a nativity delineation without first evaluating the influence of the planetary aspects. The aspects are just as important to the astrologer as the slide rule is to the mathematician. Without a consideration of the aspects a horoscope is meaningless.

During our investigation of Planetary Sign position, we noted that harmony was established when certain planets swung through certain Signs with which they had an affinity, whereas disharmony began when they passed through Signs with which there was no affinity. Friction can be useful or troublesome, according to the soul development of one's nature. Aspects are crucial factors through which we can determine harmony or disharmony within the horoscope. Aspects fall into two major groups: good and bad, harmonious and disharmonious, those of ease and those of friction. It is a misconception in the field of astrology that we should fear the disharmonious aspects. Some of the noblest and finest people of all time have had the greatest array of disharmonious aspects. Because they had to overcome the forces that hindered them, they became strong. Friction is the result of disharmonious action, but without friction, we would live in a dull routine world where nothing changed and everything went exactly according to plan.

Evil does not necessarily have to be analogous with the disharmonious aspects, if the basic character is strong. Before we can even attempt to analyze the influence of the aspects, we must consider the Sign and House position of the planets. Planets in their dignity or exaltation can withstand all the adverse aspects without being thrown off balance. Planets in their detriment or fall are weakened, and they may not show any inspiring conduct, even under good aspects.

Aspects are important because they incite specific events. Events are inherent in the nativity as potentialities. The good or ill effect of an event is modified by the development of the character that has taken place during the intervening years. The tuning of events is revealed through the progressions and transits.

Events, and the greater part of what we call destiny, result from character. People who have not developed patience, conscience, strength, and "grit" bring into manifestation events which are the result of their own disharmony. Selfishness is the keynote of practically all the sins. For example, laziness is simply a dislike of putting the activities of the body and brain into use, because it pleases the uninspired self not to do so. Theft is an indulgence in the desire to appropriate for ourselves what rightfully belongs to others. Envy, jealousy, and hatred result from the intense avidity to possess people and objects which belong to others.

We must realize that the interpretation of aspects must be based upon a real knowledge as to whether or not the native puts self first, or whether he has risen to a stage of consciousness wherein he cooperates and can work in harmony with other people. Bad aspects in the charts of these latter people can only be interpreted as the evil things that other people do to them, or the difficulties encountered in the fulfillment of their ideas and enterprises. Very few events come under the cloak of destiny. We cannot choose our birth, nor our childhood experiences, and we all must die someday. The time we and our loved ones die is destiny, and there is no known way to avert this event. In reality, death is as natural as birth or sex, and should be considered in the same light. This frame of mind or train of thought is very hard to obtain, yet it is real. We can ascertain, from mere and unadulterated logic, that the majority of our actions are subject to our own free choice under the given circumstances. Ideally, we should all strive to meet all events in a mood that is constructive and not destructive. Under the aspects of Mars, we can encounter people and events with fortitude and courage, or with weakness and little strength of character. Under Saturn's aspects we can approach people and events with moroseness and melancholy, or with patience and philosophy. Under Neptune, we can meet events in chaos and confusion, or with a deep insight of understanding which can reveal the whole mystery of life.

We cannot understand the nature and significance of an aspect from the mere statement that one planet is trine or square to another. We must be aware of the Sign and House position of each planet. The effect of Venus square Moon is very different when the square is from the Fifth to the Eighth Houses, than it is when the square is from the Second and Sixth Houses. Again, Venus in Libra square Mars in Capricorn is entirely different in effect from Venus in Scorpio square Mars in Leo.

If two planets are strongly placed by Sign and House, but are in conflict with one another, then the disharmonious aspect will call forth the strength and power of each planet, and the aspect will cause the native to accomplish something that no one under good aspects would take the trouble to do. If, however, one planet is strong by Sign and House and the other is debilitated, then the latter will represent the thing, person, matter, or defect in character that causes the difficulty.

The nativity represents the moment in time when the child is born. This moment has been acted upon by a million various radiations. It has been subjected to the changes and modifications in the universe. The character has been following its own maturation process, yet just as a maple will not grow into an oak, so the birthchart will keep the individual within his own pattern. In the scope of that pattern, he can effect his own improvements or simply drift aimlessly, never appreciating the beauty of his potential.

Aspects between planets demonstrate tendencies, abilities, and disabilities, rather than attainment. We often will see greater progress in the chart of a person who has less ability, than in one with more, because we find greater persistence, greater zeal, or greater enthusiasm.

#### How and Why the Aspects Exert Their Influence

## I. CONJUNCTION

Two people pulling on a rope usually make their presence felt more effectively than one person pulling alone. Similarly, two planets placed together in the same part of the Zodiac combine to place a greater emphasis in that area. When two or more planets are positioned within a few degrees of each other, they are said to be in conjunction. The closer they are together, the more exact the conjunction and the stronger the emphasis. Planets more than seven degrees apart are not close enough to combine their rays effectively, consequently the 'orb', or maximum distance allowed between two planets if they are regarded as being in conjunction is seven degrees. The conjunction aspect has been determined to be of a harmonious nature. This is quite true, yet the majority of studies and publications which research this area fail to acknowledge or recognize the true reason for this harmony. The harmony or disharmony in the aspects which the planets form with each other is determined strictly by the elemental nature of the Signs in which they are placed. Consider this conjunction aspect: Planetary Sign and House position simply enhance or modify this influence and determine the scope of influence.

This aspect concerns the influence of two planets which are found in the same Sign of the Zodiac, and within seven degrees, either forward or backward, of each other. The two planets, Mars, and the Sun, are positioned in the Sign Gemini, which happens to occupy the Ninth House. Sun 12° – Mars 18°. Gemini is an Air Sign, and planets placed in the same Sign or Signs of the same element produce the harmony which like elements provide. See [diagram I](#).

The Sun and Mars, being so close together here, constitute a substantial expression of concentrated power. A conjunction of this kind must always be considered harmonious.

### A Basic Delineation of the Sample Conjunction

The consideration of any aspect involves the following evaluations. This method of studying aspects will be known as: *ASPECT INTERPRETATION CHART*

1. Aspecting Planets
2. Elemental and Sign Position of the Planets.
3. The Nature of the Aspect
4. The House Influence
5. Influence of Aspects which the Aspecting Planets Form with the Other Planets.

Example:

1. Aspecting Planets: Mars and the Sun
2. Sign Elemental Position of Planets: Air–Air–Harmonious
3. The Nature of the Aspect: Conjunction--Harmonious influence because of elemental congeniality.
4. The House Influence: Ninth House: Philosophy, Higher Education, Religion–Gemini is well–placed.

5. Other Aspects: Mars–good; Sun–fair. Our assumption (this is a hypothetical situation, arranged solely to demonstrate the delineation of an aspect for you) is that Mars is in relatively good aspect with the rest of the nativity, but the Sun is 'afflicted' by Uranus.

NOTE: AFFLICTION: Is the term used to describe a disharmonious relationship between two planets.

We are now ready to depict the impact of this conjunction between Mars and the Sun in Gemini in the Ninth House.

The Harmonious aspect between the Sun and Mars strengthens the native's power of command. It creates an enterprising, energetic, courageous, blunt, enthusiastic and crusading character. Tremendous strength of vitality is provided for the native. He is forceful and quite persistent.

There is only one Sign involved in the conjunction aspect and, in this example, the air Sign of Gemini, with its dual nature, is our consideration. The basic influence of Gemini is variety and change. The Gemini native is deeply involved in intellectual pursuit. It is his constant striving for intellectual satisfaction that causes his need for variety and change. He is the great thinker of the Zodiac, and wishes to know all.

We have already determined that the nature of the aspect is harmonious, and no further elaboration is necessary here.

The condition of Gemini in the Ninth House is excellent. In other words, Gemini is well equipped to exert its basic influence when occupying the Ninth House. Gemini in the Ninth House implies that the native is deeply involved in philosophical thought, and that he has the potential to acquire the best education possible.

We have already considered the nature of the other aspects, and now we will see exactly how they influence our delineation.

From all indications, we can reasonably and logically expect that this person will never cease his inquiry into the meaning of life. This quest for philosophical and intellectual truth is insatiable, and his natural conversational ability is an invaluable aid to this development. The overall significance is quite favorable, and it suggests that the native may make some valuable contributions to the world of philosophy. The native is avidly interested in the occult and psychic areas of life, and if he chooses to follow this interest, he may reshape some area of occult thought. The trouble from Uranus is not strong, but it can cause problems which the person will have to cope with. The nature of the trouble suggests that the native has a tendency to pursue too much variety, and this tends to confuse him. Yet, he has more than enough potential intellectual strength to conquer this weakness.

You must always remember that the conjunction aspect cannot produce disharmony inherently, but it may very well be that other influences will negate its harmony. For instance, if the Sign in which the two planets are placed is not in a favorable House position,

or if one or both of the planets are in either detriment or fall, then the inherent power of this conjunction is limited, and the native must cope with the problems that arise. For instance, if all three of these conditions were present – 1) Bad Sign–House Position; 2) One planet in detriment; 3) One planet in fall – this would just about completely drain the last ounce of harmony from the aspect. The native would be lifeless in the areas which were indicated by the nature of the Sign, House, and Planets involved. We hope that you can now appreciate why we spent so much time analyzing the influence of the Planets in the Signs, and the Signs and the Planets in the Houses. You should know upon sight which Signs and Planets are favorably placed, and which ones are not. Your success in accomplishing this depends solely on whether or not you have retained what you have learned. The booklets are excellent reference material, and in the beginning you can practice and check yourself by looking up your information. This knowledge will become part of your very nature as you keep referring to the booklets. The lack of competent astrologers in the world is appalling, and soon you will be part of our remedial process for that situation.

## II. THE OPPOSITION

The second major aspect for our consideration is the angular relationship between two planets, which we refer to as the opposition. This aspect occurs when two planets form a 180° angle with one another. Another, and possibly more effective, way of stating this, is to merely say that the two planets in question are residing in opposing, or opposite, Signs. The words opposite, opposing, and opposition are very misleading, and we must clarify the confusion immediately. The majority of astrologers throughout the years have always assumed that the opposition aspect constituted disharmony, and produced a negative effect in the nativity. Although there is some truth to this statement, it is inadequate, and quite incomplete. It is very hard to understand how such a fallacy as this has gained such world wide acceptance. Let us investigate the potential harmony or disharmony involved in the opposition aspect and we shall see for ourselves.

For two planets to form the opposition aspect, they must be positioned in Signs which are opposite to each other. (They are 180° apart.) There are six groupings which constitute the only possible division of the Zodiac into opposing Signs. By the very nature of the horoscope, these groupings can never change. They will be the same in every nativity that you consider. They are:

Aries–Libra

Taurus–Scorpio

Gemini–Sagittarius

Cancer–Capricorn

Leo–Aquarius

Virgo–Pisces

Remember these combinations, because they carry a tremendous amount of significance.

Now consider the same groupings, but in light of their elemental natures.

Fire–Air

Earth–Water

Air–Fire

Water–Earth

Fire–Earth

Earth–Water

In view of a consideration of this concept, it is startling to think that the opposition was believed inherently evil for so many years. The fact is that the basic opposition aspects produce a harmonious influence. It is obvious from the chart above that the opposing Signs of the Zodiac produce elemental harmony. (If you do not immediately understand why this is so, you should go back and reread [lesson VIII](#) and refresh your mind on the principles of elemental harmony.) The elemental harmony of the opposing Signs is responsible for the potential harmony of the opposition aspect. When we say that planets in opposition aspect are the recipients of potential harmony, this does not mean that the aspect always produces harmony. The word potential is crucial, for the opposition aspect has almost as much potential discord. The basic aspect is good, but other factors involved can modify or even negate this harmonious influence. In some cases, where there are a number of other adverse factors, the influence can become disharmonious, and bring a considerable amount of discord and trouble into the native's life.

#### OPPOSITION ASPECT: EXAMPLE

Our example of opposition will concern a harmonious influence, and we shall consider this in light of the variations according to the possible negative influence of certain other factors, namely, the positional potential of the Signs and Planets in the Houses. See [Diagram 2](#).

Our example concerns the nature and influence of the opposition involving Jupiter in    in the Second House and Uranus in    in the Eighth House.

Once again, we must consider the nature of this aspect according to the same rules we used when we evaluated the effect of the conjunction. It is imperative to investigate the influence of the following:

1. Aspecting Planets
2. Elemental and Sign Position of Planets
3. The nature of the Aspect

4. The implication of House influence
5. Other aspects involving the aspecting planets
6. Delineation

### I. Aspecting Planets

The planets which are involved in this aspect are Jupiter and Uranus. Jupiter should naturally connote the principle of expansion to you. Jupiter signals the continual inquiry into motives and purposes. Jupiter, with its magnanimous outlook, seeks the answers to all the questions.

Uranus is the planet of insight and inquiry into the astounding laws governing nature. It is the planet of the inventor, and is original and scientific, almost never prone to emotion.

It is easy to see why a harmonious aspect involving these two planets can be so powerful. The basic natures of these two planets are in agreement, and produce outstanding potential.

### II. The Elemental Sign Position of the Planets

The first thing to look for is whether or not there are any striking characteristics about the positions of Jupiter and Uranus in Sagittarius and Gemini. The most striking point in the aspect is that Jupiter is dignified.

This must be noted because, just as a planet in its detriment or fall will weaken the influence of the aspect, a dignification strengthens the inherent potential of the aspects.

Finally, Gemini and Sagittarius constitute an harmonious Air–Fire elemental balance. Now we know that the planets are well matched, well placed, and in uncontested elemental harmony. The aspect appears to be congenial.

### III. The Nature of the Aspect

The aspect is harmonious and all we need now is to study any House or other planet modification.

### IV. Implication of House Influence

To refresh your memory on the natures of the Second and Eighth Houses of the Zodiac, you should refer back to [Lesson Seven](#) and carefully consider what departments of life they represent. Basically, the Second House is the House of Finance and Possessions, and the Eighth House deals with death, sex, legacy, etc.

### V. Other Planetary Influences

The assumption here is that there are no adverse aspects which could damage the potential of the aspecting planets.

## VI. Delineation

The opposition aspect in question must be deemed an harmonious one, and its influence is powerful on the native. It seems that the planets involved, Jupiter and Uranus, and the Signs, Gemini and Sagittarius, are all strengthening the intellectual competency of the native. The native will be very wise with his finances, yet always looking to expand into new horizons. His possessions are very important to him, and he will make sure that they are in the best condition. His intellectual audacity will undoubtedly bring the native some most interesting and prized possessions which will amaze his family and friends. He is constantly seeking new and different ways to make money, yet he has the common sense not to become obsessed with these yearnings. He will look at the philosophical reality of death and rarely does it upset his emotional stamina.

An aspect this harmonious is very strong in any horoscope. It implies a completeness in those areas of life indicated in the horoscope. You will find as many aspects of this incredible nature as you will find people who command the utmost respect in these areas.

Now let us consider the same opposition aspect, only from the other side of the fence. Suppose we are considering the influence of Saturn in 26° Aries in the Eleventh House, and the Sun in 24° Libra in the Fifth House. SEE [DIAGRAM 3](#).

According to our aspect chart we approach the study of this aspect in the following manner:

### I. Aspecting Planets

The Sun and Saturn are the two planets involved in this aspect. The sun is the authority of our solar system. It gives existence and energy to everything and without it we could not exist. The Sun represents the creative urge and the will to lead.

Scientific laws and the countless theories of mankind are developed by Saturn. Facts and material things weigh down heavy upon the soul of Saturn, and from this he evokes theories. Saturn gives depth to character and strength of conviction. He confers sobriety, prudence, good sense, dependability, and patience. The planets match up well, but we must now look and see if the nature of the aspect will permit them to function according to their capabilities.

### II. Elemental and Sign Position of the Planets

This is the most enlightening point in this aspect. Both the Sun in Libra and Saturn in Aries are in the position of their fall. Thus the potential strength of each planet is seriously handicapped. The inherent harmony of the aspect has been limited. It is now up to us to determine exactly how much damage has been done and what areas of the native are affected.

### III. Nature of the Aspect

It is important that you realize that the basic relationship between the Signs involved is an harmonious Fire–Air balance. This however is only the latent harmony which exists in the aspect. The influence of the Planets will determine the degree of harmony or disharmony which is created. Whereas Jupiter and Uranus enhanced the harmonious nature of Gemini and Sagittarius, Saturn and the Sun modify the harmony between Aries and Libra. The Sun and Saturn are two powerful influences, but their influence can cause as much harm as good to befall the native. In this case, the planets are inciting unpleasant circumstances which can only implicate problems for the native.

#### IV. HOUSE INFLUENCE

We must now recall the areas of life which come under the domain of the Fifth and Eleventh House. If you cannot automatically remember this influence, it would be wise to go back to [Lesson VII](#) and review each House once again.

Basically the Fifth House governs the principle of creation, physical, artistic, and financial. The financially creative power of the native as far as speculation and investment are concerned is under the influence of the Fifth House.

The Eleventh House rules the friendships of the native and also exerts an influence on the hopes and wishes of the native.

#### V. THE INFLUENCE OF OTHER ASPECTS

We will proceed, here, on the premise that the rest of the aspects formed by the Sun and Saturn are relatively indifferent in their impact on this aspect. In other words, although Saturn and the Sun are receiving no additional strength from other aspects, their potential power is not weakened either. In the majority of aspects which you will encounter, some additional strength or weakness will be indicated. To interpret this additional influence presents no problem at all. You simply determine if the influence is beneficial or detrimental, and then according to the nature of the Planets and Signs involved, you modify your delineation. Remember that this influence will never be as powerful as the aspect in question and it can only exert a limited influence. Nonetheless, it is necessary to consider for a complete delineation.

#### VI. DELINEATION

The native of this aspect has many problems which he must learn to cope with. The creative financial potential of the native is severely limited. This defect more often than not stems from the native's over sensitivity to minute details and facts. He will tend to spend most of his time toying with insignificant ideas, and overlook the real factors which could make him successful.

This is where your value as an astrologer is obvious. If a client with this aspect were to employ your services, you could warn him of this adverse tendency in his character. It is very important that you explain to him that it is not his fault that he is this way. The majority of

the people in the world are afraid to recognize their faults because they feel guilty about them. They foolishly think that somehow it is their fault that they are the way they are. They are ashamed of the negative aspects of their character, and are afraid to face and deal with them. You must be able to explain to your client that everyone in the world is affected, at the moment of birth, by countless millions of radiations from the planets and the stars, and that these radiations determine the positive and negative aspects in his character. Tell him that it was not up to him to choose the qualities of character which he would most desire. Your job is to explain to him the positive and negative tendencies in his character so that he can most effectively manipulate them.

As far as friendships are concerned, the native of this opposition aspect must, once again, attempt to avoid the meaningless details of relationships and search for the meaningful aspects. Many difficulties are indicated in relating to people, but now the native will realize this, and he can pursue a solution.

Generally speaking, the creative talents of the native are restricted. He has trouble deciding what is important and what is not. If he is not sufficiently warned, he could waste his whole life toying with meaningless detail and never realize any progress. He inherently has the potential to enter lasting and meaningful relationships, but he must be willing to work through the initial difficulties which exist.

#### THE TRINE ASPECT

The next aspect to be considered is the influence of the trine aspect. This is the aspect of 120°.

In other words, we want to consider the nature and influence of planets which are 120° apart in a nativity. The orbit of influence of this aspect will be 7° in either direction. Once again, to determine the harmony of the aspect we must take our rules and apply them to the aspect. Our trine aspect concerns the nature and influence of the Moon 1° in Scorpio in the Third House and Uranus 0° in Cancer in the Eleventh House. Exploring our chart we find: (SEE [DIAGRAM 4](#)).

#### I. THE ASPECTING PLANETS

The Moon defines our emotional make-up and our reactions to the different situations with which we must deal during the course of our lives. Whereas the Sun is the giver of life, the Moon is considered to be the soul which takes care of that life.

Uranus, in a nativity, is the planet of insight and inquiry into the astounding laws which govern nature. It is the planet of the inventor, and is original and scientific, almost never prone to emotion. Uranus is the planet which governs astrology and thought processes.

#### II. THE SIGN POSITION AND THE PLANETS

Uranus is in Cancer, and this constitutes the water elemental influence which is in direct contrast to the Moon in Scorpio. So the basis of the elemental nature of the aspect will produce disharmony. However, let us investigate further. The Moon is well placed in Scorpio, and although Uranus is not well-placed in Cancer, it brings Cancer, the Moon's natural sign, into play and this situation strengthens the aspect.

So we have, here, a basic disharmonious influence, which is contested by a strong Moon.

### III. THE NATURE OF THE ASPECT

We have determined that the elemental nature of the aspect produces disharmony, and yet the Moon is very strongly placed in Scorpio and its strength is naturally intensified because of the position of Cancer.

Thus we find that although the elemental nature of the aspect is disharmonious, it gains a tremendous amount of strength from the integral position and influence of the Moon. Although Uranus causes some trouble, its potential strength is modified by the Moon, so it does not cause too much friction.

*Note: You must always remember to consider the complete position of the Planets involved in the aspect.*

### IV. THE HOUSE INFLUENCE

Once again, please refer back to [Lesson VII](#) and refresh your memory as to the areas of life which come under the domain of the Eleventh and Second Houses.

Briefly, the Second House is the House of Finance and Possession, and the Eleventh, the House of Friends and Hopes and Wishes.

### V. OTHER ASPECTS

Once again, we are going to assume that this aspect is only mildly affected by other aspects, and the influence is so minute that it does not merit consideration.

### VI. DELINEATION

The basic effect produced by the elemental conflict produces some problems for the native, but the swift power of the Moon affords the native the potential to overcome these problems. The native will find that he has some initial problems making friendships and maintaining them. These initial problems are due to the influence exerted by Uranus in Cancer in the Eleventh House. The native will go through many emotional changes before he will be able to open himself up to the beauty of friendship. Once he can achieve this, and it won't be easy, the powerful Moon will take over and strengthen his emotional endurance and provide him the stamina to live through the trails and tribulations of friendship.

The native also has a tendency to worry too much about his financial position. He must cultivate a sense of prudence as far as his material possessions are concerned. In other words, he must be able to accept the position he has, and not always look for what he cannot attain. If he cannot do this, the effect upon his emotional stability will be disastrous. The balance and serenity he needs is within his chart, but he must take advantage of this of his own will.

## THE SQUARE ASPECT

The square aspect is the aspect which places two planets 90° apart from each other, with a 7° orb of influence, in the nativity. According to the accepted misleading train of astrological thought, the square is considered to be evil. We know better, and by applying the principles of the aspect to our rule, we determine if the aspect produces harmony or disharmony, or a combination of the two. Our example Square aspect concerns the nature of influence of the Planets Mercury, 15° Capricorn Twelfth House, and Uranus 20° Aries in the Third House. SEE [DIAGRAM 5](#).

Some astrologers will automatically assume that this is an evil aspect, and they will commence their delineation along such lines. This approach is grossly in error, and has been debasing the true value of astrology for many years. The simple application of our Aspect Rules will reveal the nature of this aspect.

### I. ASPECTING PLANETS

Mercury is the Planet of mind, reason, and intellect. It implies intellectual movement and progress. Mercury distinguishes the progressive man from the unprogressive, who can only do what he has been trained to do.

Uranus, very significantly, governs astrology, because it extends an acute insight into the very substance of the laws that concern man and his relationship to the solar system. Some of the greatest men of all time have had to start anew in the middle of their lives, and this new start, caused by the rays from Uranus, has brought them their fame.

### II. ELEMENTAL AND SIGN POSITION OF PLANETS

Uranus is fairly well placed in Aries, and it brings the element of Fire into the aspect. Mercury is identically fairly well placed in Capricorn, and it provides the aspect with the Earth element.

### III. NATURE OF THE ASPECT

The combination of Fire Earth produces disharmony and consequently causes problems for the native. Neither planet is either powerfully or weakly placed, and there is no dignification or exaltation. Likewise, there is no detriment or fall. The conclusion drawn, then, is that the aspect is problematic and there is no obvious power implied to modify. The native must reach into his own soul to find the power to combat this influence.

#### IV. HOUSE INFLUENCE

Again, you should refer back to [Lesson VII](#) to refresh your mind concerning the influence of the Twelfth and Third Houses.

The Twelfth House indicates the enmities and secrets of the native. It rules institutions of all kinds, and also secret enemies. It denotes the basic strength or weakness of your body and soul.

The Third House, briefly, is concerned with travel, studies, relatives, and correspondence. The Third House incites the synthesizing powers of the native and his ability to form sense impressions and to mold destiny within one's social environment.

#### V. OTHER ASPECTS AND THEIR INFLUENCE HERE

We are going to assume that there is a powerful harmonious aspect formed between Mercury and Pluto in Cancer in the Sixth House. This strengthens the power of Mercury and now indicates that the native will have some additional help besides his soul to counteract the negative influence which the aspect indicates.

#### VI. DELINEATIONS

The position of Mercury in Capricorn in the Twelfth House has been strengthened by the aspect with Pluto and thus it becomes the main outlet for the native to deal with this aspect. The basic disharmony of the aspect suggests that the native will encounter much difficulty through the underhanded activities of some of his acquaintances. It also implies that he has a driving urge to be first or number one in all his endeavors, and this confuses him. He cannot understand it when he is not first in something he tries. He will quickly discard it in favor of something else, and this is very bad. We must draw on his intellectual strength from Mercury and reason that he cannot always be the best, and learn to settle with whatever he gets as long as he has done his best.

If the native wants to pursue some study, he should not get discouraged if, in the early going, he finds that the studying seems too difficult. In other words, as far as studying goes, initial problems are indicated, but overall success is also indicated. He should be advised here that patience is a virtue, and he need not let early disappointments discourage him.

In summary, this aspect indicates problems, but the native can draw from the strength which Mercury affords him here to combat these woes.

We have now considered the four major aspects of the horoscope. These are the most powerful influences in the horoscope, and they should be considered very carefully. The minor aspects must also be considered, but they should not receive as much emphasis as the major ones simply because they are not that strong in a nativity.

#### A SUMMARY OF ALL ASPECTS

## I. MAJOR ASPECTS

A. **CONJUNCTION** – Those planets which are placed in the same Sign of a nativity within 7 degrees of each other. The seven degree orb of influence may be either forward or backward. Naturally, the more exact (closeness in degrees) the conjunction, the more powerful it is.

B. **OPPOSITION** – Planets which are positioned in Signs which are opposite to each other in a nativity. The orb of influence once again is seven degrees either way.

C. **TRINE** – Planets which are within 120 degrees of each other in the nativity. The orb of influence once again is seven degrees.

D. **SQUARE** – When two planets are 90 degrees apart in a nativity. Orb is seven degrees.

## II. MINOR ASPECTS

A. **SEXTILE** – Planets which are 60 degrees apart in a nativity. The orb of influence of this aspect is six degrees.

B. **SEMISQUARE** – Planets which are 45 degrees apart. Orb of influence is 3–4 degrees.

C. **SEMISEXTILE** – This aspect is formed by planets which are 30 degrees apart. The orb of influence once again is 3–4 degrees.

D. **SESIQUADRATE**– Planets which are 135 degrees apart. The orb of influence once again is 3–4 degrees.

E. **QUINCUNX**– Planets which are 150 degrees apart form this aspect. The orb of influence is 3–4 degrees.

The aspect rules may be applied just as simply to the minor aspects as they are to the major aspects. You must always remember, however, that the major aspects should be considered first, and given the most concentration, and then consider the minor ones and accord them less emphasis.

<u>ASPECT</u>	<u>DISTANCE</u>	<u>SYMBOL</u>	<u>ORB</u>
CONJUNCTION	0		7–8
SEMISEXTILE	30		3–4
SEMISQUARE	45		3–4
SEXTILE	60		5–6
SQUARE	90		7–8
TRINE	120		7–8

SESQUIQUAURATE	135	3-4
QUINCUNX	150	3-4
OPPOSITION	180	7-8

Learn this chart very carefully, and make certain that you comprehend the nature of the aspects.

As you must understand by now, the ASPECT INTERPRETATION METHOD makes aspect delineation not only simple, but extremely interesting and enlightening.

#### I. THE NATURE OF THE ASPECTING PLANETS

- A. Consider the basic principles which are embodied in each planet involved in the aspect.
- B. Combine these principles and determine for yourself what the planets considered together imply.
- C. Meditate for awhile on the symbols of the planets until you get the feeling of each planet. Please approach this seriously, as it can be a most rewarding experience.

#### II. ELEMENTAL AND SIGN POSITION OF THE ASPECTING PLANETS

- A. Determine the elemental nature of each planet.
- B. Make note, by referring to [Lesson Nine](#) or [Ten](#), of the Sign position of each planet. List any exaltations, falls, detriments, or dignifications. If none of the above exist, determine if the planet is well-placed or not.

#### III. THE NATURE OF THE ASPECT

- A. Based on your observation in rules 1 and 2, make a careful note of the potential harmony or disharmony of the aspect.
- B. Carefully consider the reasons behind your conclusion because you must understand each aspect completely.

#### IV. HOUSE INFLUENCE

- A. Evaluate the meanings of each House involved in the aspect and make sure you understand the nature of each.
- B. Please make note of whether the Houses involved are angular, succedant or cadent. The strength of a planet differs from House to House and you can determine this by noting angular, succedent, or cadent planets. Please refer to [Lesson VII](#).

## V. CONSIDERATION OF OTHER ASPECTS

1. The aspect in question can either be strengthened or weakened depending on the aspects which it

forms with the other planets.

2. Study the complete nature of these other aspects and determine if they strengthen or weaken the aspect you are considering. Sometimes this influence will be of tremendous importance and, at other times, it will hardly effect your delineation.

### TERMS YOU MUST KNOW

The following are some terms which you should become familiar with.

Combust: A Planet is said to be combust if it is 3° or closer to the Sun. Because of the immense power of the Sun, this Planet's influence is considerably weakened. When you find a conjunction of this type, you must consider that the Sun is the most powerful influence of the aspect, and that the power of the aspecting Planet is minimal. It is important for you to realize that you need not completely ignore the influence of this planet but that it's influence is limited.

Cazimi: This is a term used by some astrologers to note the position of a planet within 0° 17' of the Sun's Longitude, or "in the heart of the Sun." Ancient authorities deemed that it fortified the planet as much as the combust position debilitated. We, however, after intricate recording and investigation, ignore the distinction and classify it as combust. It should be considered in the same light as a combust planet. There is no real distinction between the terms, but it is good for you to be familiar with the term.

### BENEFIC AND MALEFIC

Benefic: Aspects which are formed by the division of the circle by 3 are considered benefic. E.g.:  $360 / 3 = 120$  trine aspect. The point is that such aspects will exert a beneficial influence on the native.

Malefic: Aspects based on the division of the circle by 2 are said to be malefic. E.g.:  $360 / 2 = 180 / 2 = 90$  = opposition and square aspects. According to a rapidly declining train of thought, these aspects are problematic for the native.

Of course, it is our opinion that such a consideration of aspects is pure folly and will only confuse the student. The only complete and efficient way of determining harmony or disharmony within an aspect is through our Aspect Interpretation Chart. The only reason that we make note of the terms is because it is important for the well-developed astrologer to have the knowledge of such terms and to understand why they are not relevant.

Sinister Aspect: This is an aspect which is computed forward in the order of signs or counter-clockwise in the nativity.

Dexter Aspect: The aspect computed backward in the order of Signs.

You will encounter many different ideas on the inherent power of these two types of aspects. Many astrologers maintain that a Sinister Aspect exerts a harmonious influence, while the Dexter Aspect institutes disharmony. Once again, you can easily recognize the futility of either argument. Harmony or disharmony within an aspect has nothing to do with the direction of the aspect. The terms should be employed simply to indicate the direction of the aspect, and not the nature of the same.

Eclipse: An eclipse is a phenomenon which involves the Sun, Moon, and Earth. There are two readily distinct types.

1. SOLAR ECLIPSE: That in which the Moon stands between the Sun and Earth, cutting off from our vision not only the light of the Sun, but also the Sun itself.

2. LUNAR ECLIPSE: That is which the Earth cuts off from the Moon the light of the Sun, depriving it of its illumination, but still leaving it in our line of vision as a dark shadowy object.

A Lunar eclipse can occur only at the time of a full Moon, when the Sun and the Moon are in opposition, close to the Moon's Nodes. An eclipse of the Sun comes from the West; of the Moon comes from the East.

The influence of the eclipse simply weakens or limits the impact of the Sun or Moon, depending on the eclipse. There are several publications you can refer to to find out exactly when eclipses will occur, such as almanacs, newspapers, etc.

GRAND TRINE – When three or more planets complete a triangular formation in the chart. Comparison of these three planets according to your aspect interpretation chart will reveal the nature of the influence.

QUINTILE ASPECTS – A group of aspects, introduced by Kepler, based on a division of 1/5 of the circle. They have had a very limited adoption and we do not consider their influence significant.

UNASPECTED PLANETS – The influence and strength of a Planet which forms no aspects is determined simply by Sign and House influence.

ACCIDENTAL DIGNITY – When a planet is placed in an angle – that is, near the cusp of the 1st, 10th, 4th & 7th Houses – it becomes very important. Hence it is said to be dignified not because of Sign but because of place.

## CONCLUSION

In the next Lesson, XVI, you will study our method of chart erection. It is the most efficient method which you will find. Many astrologers and astrological associations teach complex, intricate methods which sometimes take hours to complete; our method is direct and simple, yet just as accurate as the more confusing ones. We are not concerned with the development of your mathematical skills, but are more interested in maturing your skills as a delineator.

Finally, this lesson should make you realize how far you have advanced towards your goal of graduation as an Astrologer.

# *LESSON XVI*

## INTRODUCTION

Lesson XVI concerns the concept of time and why it is so important to you as an astrologer. This lesson is short in length because it is very important and complex and you must read it over a few times till you understand it. You need not memorize it but you must understand it. The element of time is what produces the individuality of every horoscope. It will be necessary for you to know the exact time – hour, minute, – when your client was born. This time will be solar time (time which is based on the movement of the Sun). You must learn our method to convert this into Sidereal time, (pronounced SY DEAR-EE-AL) which is true star time based on the motion of the universe. Our method for the computation of star time (Sidereal time) is not difficult however, if you do not give it your undivided attention, you may become confused.

It is our contention, that the simpler these computations are, the better for the student. For example, there are many people in the world who have acutely logical minds, and possess amazing inherent powers for character analysis. Such people are well-adapted for astrological interpretation. However, they may have an ardent dislike for figures, and shy away from anything which involves complicated calculations. What a shame that many people of this type are prevented from astrological investigation for such a senseless reason! It seems to us that many astrologers have purposely complicated the computations to build up their own egos. We will present this concept of time and computation in an easily comprehensible manner, so that even those with a deep-down phobia for figures are able to proceed in their astrological development. It is imperative that you realize that our method is efficient and complete, and that it produces the exact precision of more complicated systems.

No horoscope can be accurately erected until you have mastered several basic factors concerning time. Dating from the early history of Society, the various governments of the world have tried to simplify man's relationship to time. In so doing, and in continually changing these simplifications, they have created endless difficulties for the astrologer, who is trying to calculate the true Sidereal time for a given event or birth. In this Lesson, the reasons for the calculations to be made are explained, and definitions are given for all terms used. (As the same understanding is required of a student of astronomy, surveying, aerial or marine navigation, fuller explanations of the principles involved will be found in textbooks dealing specifically with these subjects.) As much of this is of interest to the general public, the same explanations can be conveniently found in a necessarily restricted section of Whitaker's Almanac. Every practicing astrologer should always keep a copy of the current edition of some Almanac, as it is extremely useful for reference.

## LOCAL MEAN TIME

Before we can calculate a horoscope, we need to understand the various kinds of time. LOCAL MEAN TIME gives us exactly noon when the Sun is directly overhead, or rather, at its

highest place in the heavens. Since the Sun apparently moves in relationship to the Earth, it stands to reason that the actual time of noon will vary as we happen to live in various places, for example, when it is 7:00 A.M. in Philadelphia, it is noon in London.

The Sun moves approximately sixty miles every four minutes. This average sixty miles forms one degree of longitude, hence the Sun travels one degree of longitude in four minutes of time, or 15 degrees to the hour. Suppose a certain city is sixty miles or so west of your birthplace, the Sun will not reach this other city for four minutes. In the past, each city or country place maintained its own time, but as people moved more frequently, they argued about the correctness of their watches so much, that Standard time was introduced. Before we can set up the angles of the horoscope, we first need true Local Mean Time. Therefore, when the birth time is given, it is given in Standard time, and it is necessary for us to convert it to Local Mean Time. This procedure is very simple and should cause you no trouble. Remember that this correction is simply to find the true local mean time. More computation is necessary before we can erect the chart but this is our beginning.

### STANDARD TIME

On November 18, 1883, Standard Time was inaugurated in the U.S. (and Canada). However, the geographical lines of the Time Zones were not definitely established until March 19, 1918. For example, the state of Georgia did not change to Eastern Standard Time until then. Previously, it had been on Central Standard Time.

Since the meeting of train schedules, etc., is impossible on the basis of local time, Standard Time Zone meridians were spaced at intervals of 15 degrees of longitude east and west of Greenwich, and all clocks within each zone were adjusted to the mean Solar time of the mid-point of the zone. The material which follows need not be memorized. You will refer to it many times in the future and eventually it will become part of you.

#### Time Belts of the U.S.

1. Eastern Standard Time – E.S.T. is calculated to the 75th meridian west longitude.
2. Central Standard Time – C.S.T. is calculated to the 90th meridian west.
3. Mountain Standard Time – M.S.T. is calculated to the 105th meridian west.
4. Pacific Standard Time – P.S.T. is calculated to the 120th meridian west.
5. Alaska was standardized in 1918 on 150th Meridian west, but in actual practice, other zones are and have been in use: 120° 150°, 165°.\*

\*If you look in an Ephemeris or an Atlas, and you find that the place where you were born is exactly on the 75th, 90th, 105th, or 120th meridians, you need make no calculations for Local Mean Time. It will coincide with Standard Time. Again, if you were born previous to November 18, 1883, no correction is needed. In the following exercises, the meridians are correct only to the nearest degree.

#### Some Simple Exercises in Converting Standard Time to Local Mean Time

Ex. 1. If you were born in New York City at 4:10 A.M. Eastern Standard Time (E.S.T.), what is your Local Mean Time?

Any map will indicate to us that New York City is 74 degrees WEST of Greenwich, that is to say, that it is 1 degree east of the 75th meridian. Therefore the Sun has already passed over N.Y.C. before it reaches Philadelphia, or rather, the 75th meridian. It will have taken four minutes to travel this distance, hence when the Eastern Standard clock at either Philadelphia or New York shows 4:10 A.M., it will be 4:14 A.M. Local Mean Time in New York City.

Ex. 2. Suppose you were born in Dallas, Texas, at noon (12:00 P.M) C.S.T., what is your L.M.T.?

A map or ephemeris tells us that Dallas is  $96\frac{1}{2}$  degrees west of Greenwich, that is,  $6\frac{1}{2}$  degrees west of the 90th meridian.  $6\frac{1}{2}$  degrees equals 26 minutes (Note: when the place in question is west of the meridian, we subtract the time correction; when it is east of the meridian, we add it.), thus the L.M.T. for Dallas, Texas at noon is 11:34 A.M.

Ex. 3. Suppose you were born in Los Angeles, California at noon P.S.T., what is your L.M.T.?

The ephemeris or map shows us that Los Angeles is 118 degrees west, or 2 degrees east of the 120th meridian. 2 degrees yields 8 minutes. The Local Mean Time in question will be 12:08 P.M.

Ex. 4. If you were born in Minneapolis on June 2, C.S.T. midnight (12:00 A.M.), what is your Local Mean Time.

Minneapolis is 93 degrees west, that is, 3 degrees west of the 90th meridian. 3 degrees yields 12 minutes (for west, remember we subtract). Therefore, the L.M.T. is 12 minutes before midnight on June 2, so in actuality you were born at 11:48 P.M. on June 1.

Ex. 5. Suppose you were born in Washington, D.C. at 7:15 P.M., E.S.T., what is your L.M.T.?

Washington, D.C. is 77 degrees west, or 2 degrees west of the 75th meridian. 2 degrees yields 8 minutes of time. For places west of the meridian that sets the time, subtract these minutes, hence your L.M.T. is 7:07 P.M.

With this method, discovering the L.M.T. for anyone born in the U.S. is a simple matter. You need only be able to add and subtract, and these computations will never involve difficult numbers.

### Foreign Standard Time

Europe is divided into three belts of time.

I. Greenwich Mean Time (G.M.T.) is set for zero longitude. At an International Meridian Conference in 1884, it was agreed by astrologers of the leading nations that they would use

the meridian of Greenwich as the zero degree on all maps. Greenwich Mean Time is used throughout Great Britain, France, Belgium, Holland, Luxemburg, Spain, Portugal, Algeria, and Morocco.

2. Middle or Central European Time (M.E.T. or C.E.T.) is standardized on 15 degrees east longitude. It is used in Germany, Sweden, Norway, Austria, Hungary, Poland, Switzerland, Italy, Czechoslovakia, and Yugoslavia. The time is one hour fast of Greenwich, hence subtract one hour to obtain G.M.T.

3. Eastern European Time (E.E.T.) is standardized on 39 degrees east longitude. It is used in Turkey, Greece, Bulgaria, Romania, Estonia, Latvia, Finland, Egypt, Palestine, and the Union of South Africa. The time is two hours fast of Greenwich, hence you subtract two hours to obtain G.M.T.

You will find the following notes on time in foreign countries useful, particularly if you ever become interested in Mundane Astrology.

India went on Standard Time on January 1, 1906. It is standardized on 82<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>degrees east longitude, i.e., 5<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> hours fast on G.M.T. Note that Calcutta is not on this standard. It is 5 hours 53 minutes 21 seconds fast of Greenwich.

Burma is standardized on 97<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>degrees east longitude, i.e., 6<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> hours fast of G.M.T.

Indo China and Thailand are standardized on 105 degrees east longitude, i.e., 7 hours fast of G.M.T.

Western Australia, Hong Kong, and the Philippines are standardized on 105 degrees east longitude, i.e., 8 hours fast of G.M.T.

Japan and Korea are standardized on 135 degrees east longitude, i.e., 9 hours fast of G.M.T.

Eastern Australia is standardized on 150 degrees east longitude, i.e., 10 hours fast of G.M.T.

Marshall and Soloman Islands are standardized on 165 degrees east longitude, i.e., 11 hours fast of G.M.T.

New Zealand, Guam, and Samoa are standardized on 172<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> degrees east longitude, i.e., 11<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> hours fast of G.M.T.

#### PLACES IN THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE

Argentina and some of the West Indian Islands use Atlantic Time, which is standardized on 60 degrees west longitude, i.e., four hours slow of G.M.T.

Newfoundland, Labrador, and Uruguay are standardized on  $52\frac{1}{2}$  degrees west longitude, i.e.,  $3\frac{1}{2}$  hours slow of G.M.T.

Canada uses Atlantic Time for places east of 60 degrees west longitude, such as Nova Scotia. From 60 degrees west to 90 degrees west, Canada is standardized on the 75th meridian, i.e., four hours slow of G.M.T.

Puerto Rico, Chile, and Paraguay use Atlantic Time, four hours slow of G.M.T.

The Panama Canal Zone uses Eastern Standard Time, five hours slow of G.M.T.

Hawaii is standardized on  $157\frac{1}{2}$  degrees west longitude, i.e.,  $10\frac{1}{2}$  hours slow of G.M.T.

The U.S.S.R. is divided into ten zones of time, extending from 30 degrees east longitude to 150 degrees east. These zones occur regularly at intervals of 15 degrees, each equivalent to one hour of time.

#### Some exercises to obtain Foreign Local Mean Time

Ex. 1. If you were born in Paris at noon by the clock, what is your L.M.T.?

Paris is 2 degrees 0 minutes east of the Greenwich Meridian which is  $0^\circ$ , hence you will add 8 minutes. Your L.M.T. is 12:08 P.M.

Ex. 2. If you were born in Berlin at noon by the clock, what is L.M.T.?

Berlin is 13 degrees 24 minutes east of the Greenwich Meridian. The difference to the 15th meridian is  $1^\circ 36'$ , hence for west of this meridian, you subtract six minutes. Your L.M.T. is 11:54 A.M.

Ex. 3. If you were born in Jerusalem at noon by the clock, what is your L.M.T.?

Jerusalem is  $35^\circ 14'$  east. This is  $5^\circ 15'$  east of the 30th meridian, so add 21 minutes. Your L.M.T. is 12:21 P.M.

Ex.4. The Korean War started at 4:00 A.M. on June 25, 1950 by Korean Standard Time. What was the L.M.T.?

Seoul is  $127^\circ$ , which is  $8^\circ$  west of the 135th meridian that sets the time, hence subtract 32 minutes to get the L.M.T., which will be 3:28 A.M.

Ex. 5. At the request of Burmese astrologers, Burma declared itself a republic on January 4, 1948, at 4:20 A.M., in Rangoon. What was the L.M.T.?

Rangoon is 96 degrees east and the meridian that sets the time is 97<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> degrees east. Thus Rangoon is 1<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> degrees west of the meridian. Subtract 6 minutes and the L.M.T. will be 4:14 A.M.

### Daylight Savings Time

This is sometimes referred to as Summer Time. It is the pet aggravation of astrologers. This was originated in England in 1916. It consists of the arbitrary setting ahead of the clock by one hour, thereby shifting all the day's activities an hour earlier, ending the work day that much sooner and leaving an hour more of daylight in which to indulge in seasonal recreations. In general, it commences at 2 A.M. of the Sunday following the third Saturday in April, and ends on the Sunday following the third Saturday in October. For births occurring during this time, the astrologer must subtract one hour to obtain the correct Standard time.

WAR TIME was invented during World War II. This means that the clock was set one hour ahead during both the summer and winter. In the U.S., War Time began February 9, 1942, and ended September 30, 1945. All you must do for people who were born during this time is subtract one hour, from the birth time to obtain true Standard Time. Remember this calculation must be made regardless of whether it was winter or summer as War Time embraced the entire year.

DOUBLE SUMMER TIME – During World War II, some European countries used War Time all the year around, but during the summer they employed what they called Double Summer Time. This simply means that the clocks were turned ahead by two hours. You must subtract two hours when computing the horoscope of a person born during this time. Any almanac will list which countries employed Double Summer Time.

GREENWICH MEAN TIME – The position of the planets in some ephemerides is given in Greenwich Mean Time, which is simply the Local Mean Time of the suburb of Greenwich, four miles South East of London. Through this suburb the zero degree of longitude passes. The Royal Observatory is located there. In London, time is sometimes stated in Greenwich Civil Time, meaning that no correction has been made from Greenwich for the four mile distance. However this does not concern you. This Civil Time is stated simply for reference.

SIDEREAL TIME (S.T.) – Sidereal Time is time measured by the stars, and not by the Sun. Sidereal Time is slightly faster than Sun Time. If a fixed star is exactly overhead on any particular day, and the Sun is also overhead then on the following day, that is, 24 hours later, the Sun will arrive at the same overhead portion approximately four minutes later than the fixed star. The star or sidereal time is therefore much more accurate and that is why we use it. There are many more complicated aspects of sidereal time but this is all you are required to know at this point.

### Sample Chart Erection

In order for you to accurately erect a horoscope, you need an Ephemeris, a Table of Houses, and a lot of concentration and patience. The Ephemeris which we use and strongly

recommend is The 200 Year Ephemeris, by Hugh MacCraig. We feel that it is the most useful and inexpensive for our students and graduates. The Table of Houses we employ is the A-P Table of Houses. It not only includes computations for the Equator to 66 degrees North Latitude, but also a simple method for using the same tables for Southern Latitudes.

With these two books and the simple application of our chart erection principles, you can compute the figures for any horoscope. All you need now is a sheet of blank horoscope charts. In this lesson we show you reprinted pages of these books to demonstrate their use. You may use any ephemeris and table of houses. The following is a sample of the computations for the erection of a natal horoscope. (Just to refresh your memory, we refer to a natal horoscope as a nativity).

In the erection of this chart we follow the method employed by Hugh MacCraig in the above-mentioned 200 Year Ephemeris. The Table of Houses which we use for this example is the A-P Table of Houses. With these two books, we are equipped with all the necessary data for calculating any astrological chart.

In all astrological work, it is at all times advisable to adopt a regular method of procedure, which will save you time and make your work more efficient and satisfactory. The following principles of procedure have been adopted by us, and we recommend them to you.

Principle I. Write down all the birth time information.

Ex: The birth information for our hypothetical chart is June 6, 1949, 11:20 AM. in Bronx County, New York City.

Principle II. Using MacCraig's Ephemeris, we find and make note of 1) the Longitude of the Bronx, 2) the Latitude, 3) the Longitude calculated in time. (Note: The Bronx is part of New York City, hence there is no separate listing for it Therefore, the longitude and latitude of New York City will suffice.)

Ex.: 1) Longitude: 73W57 2) Latitude: 40N45 3) Longitude in Time: 4:56. This is necessary for a slight time correction which will be explained in a future principle.

### The Concepts of Longitude and Latitude

On almost every map you will find lines drawn North and South. These are the longitude lines or meridians. The lines from East to West are called Latitude lines. Any city or town is located by:

1. The number of degrees east or west of London or rather, east or west of the Greenwich Observatory, which is the starting place of the zero degree of longitude. SEE [DIAGRAM I](#), LONGITUDE LINES
2. The number of degrees North or South of the Equator, which is the zero degree of Latitude. SEE [DIAGRAM II](#), LATITUDE LINES

It is obvious why longitude and latitude are so important when we are studying the concept of time in relationship to a given point on the Earth.

Principle III. We must determine:

1. Which Standard Time Zone the time is given in.
2. If Daylight Savings Time was in effect at this time.

Ex. 1) E.S.T. 11:20 A.M.–N.Y. is part of the Eastern Standard Time Zone.

Ex. 2) From the date June 6, we know that Daylight Savings Time was in effect. To correct this, we merely subtract one hour from the existing time.

$$\begin{array}{r} 11:20 \quad \text{A.M.} \\ - 1:00 \\ \hline 10:20 \quad \text{A.M.} \end{array}$$

Principle IV. The result from Principle III is True Standard Time. This must be converted into Local Mean Time. To do this we (1) find the number of degrees of Longitude the location (Bronx New York City) is East or West of the Time Meridian which sets the standard of the part of the world for which the chart is being erected. (2) Multiply this number of degrees by four. (3) a. If the location is East of this meridian which sets the Standard Time, add the number of minutes, b. If the location is West of this meridian which sets the Standard Time, subtract the number of minutes.

In other words, add four minutes for each degree of longitude the location is East of the Standard Time Meridian, or subtract four minutes for each degree it is West. The result will be the L.M.T. Always remember that the Earth is turning from West to East, and therefore time will be earlier in locations East of the Time Meridian than in locations West.

Ex.: The Standard Time Meridian in question (for Bronx, New York) is the 75th Meridian. The Meridian for the chart example is the 73rd. This is 2 degrees East of the Standard 75th Meridian. 2 degrees multiplied by 4 minutes yields eight minutes of time. Because it is East, we add.

$$\begin{array}{r} 11:20 \quad \text{A.M.} \\ + 00:08 \\ \hline 10:28 \quad \text{A.M. } \underline{\text{L.M.T.}} \end{array}$$

Principle V. Calculate the interval of time between the noon previous to the birth or event, and the actual L.M.T.

Ex.: 10:28 A.M.

From the noon previous to the birth this is 22 h, 28' 00". (NOTE: ' sign means minutes " sign means seconds)

Principle VI. This interval of time must be corrected at the rate of approximately ten seconds per hour. This correction is necessary for precision as the time found in Principle V is solar time and must be adjusted to make it equal Sidereal Time. This correction is always added to the interval of time as found by Principle V. Ex.: On page 17 in MacCraig's Ephemeris, there is a simple table which simplifies this process. It indicates that our correction amounts to the following (This table is reprinted here for your convenience): SEE [DIAGRAM III.](#)

22h corrects to	3' 37"
28' corrects to	<u>+ 5"</u>
	3' 42"

which must be added to our figure attained by Principle V. Thus we have:

22h 28' 00"	
<u>+ 00h 03' 42"</u>	
22h 31' 42"	or 22 hours 31 minutes 42 seconds

Principle VII. Remember in Principle II we made note of the Longitude in Time. We now must make use of the correction for this time. The Longitude in time must be corrected in the same manner as the time in Principle V by allowing approximately ten seconds for each hour, to adjust the location to the Sidereal Time. If the location of the birth or event is West of Greenwich, add this correction to the interval of time as found by Principle V and corrected by Principle VI. If the location is East of Greenwich, we must subtract it.

Ex. Once again referring to MacCraig's Chart on page 17 of the Ephemeris, we find that 4:56 corrects to 00h 00' 48", SEE [DIAGRAM III.](#) Thus:

22h 31' 42"	(Note: 90" = 1' 30")
<u>+ 00h 00' 48"</u>	
22h 32' 30"	

Principle VIII. We must now compute the Sidereal Time for the noon previous to the birth or event. On Page 7 of MacCraig's Ephemeris, there is a Master Table of Sidereal Time which provides us the necessary information to do this. This table is reprinted here for your convenience. SEE [DIAGRAM IV.](#)

Ex.: Following the directions from MacCraig, we now have as the Sidereal Time previous to the birth or event:

4h 47' 35"

Principle IX. To the Sidereal Time for Noon achieved by Principle VIII, add the time resulting in Principle VII. The result is the Sidereal Time of the Chart for the birth or event. If the Time thus obtained exceeds 24 hours, then we must subtract 24, and use the remainder. Ex.:

$$\begin{array}{r} 22\text{h } 32' 30'' \\ + \underline{4\text{h } 47' 35''} \\ 27\text{h } 20' 05'' \\ - \underline{24\text{h } 00' 00''} \\ 3\text{h } 20' 05'' \end{array}$$

Principle X. We now turn to the Table of Houses, and under the proper Latitude, we select the Sidereal Time which is nearest to the Sidereal Time for the chart, and from the Tables, find the Signs and degrees and place them on the proper House cusps of the chart.

Ex.: The nearest latitude listed in the A-P Table of Houses is 40° 43'. The nearest Sidereal Time listed under this latitude is 3h 22' 23". The Table for this time reads as follows:

X house	23°
XI house	28°
XII house	1°
ASC house	28° 52'
II house	22°
III house	20°

The Signs are thus inserted in your chart and the result is this: SEE [DIAGRAM V](#).

As you can see, only six Signs are listed in the Table of Houses. Please study the diagram and observe that for each Sign given, the opposite Sign goes on the opposite cusp, and the degree of the Sign given corresponds to the degree for the opposite Sign.

Please also make note of the interception of Cancer in the Eleventh House and Capricorn in the Fifth House. (The whole concept of interception will be studied in a future lesson dealing with delineation.)

There are two additional steps which Hugh MacCraig employs to obtain a more precise Medium Coeli and Ascendant. We do not feel that these additional steps are necessary, and therefore are omitting them from our study. They are amply explained in MacCraig's book if you wish to consider them, but your accuracy is unchallenged without them.

## CONCLUSION: LESSON XVI

Although this Lesson may appear short to you, its importance cannot be over-emphasized. At this stage of our study, quality and not quantity is of paramount significance. In this past Lesson, you have studied our method for determining the positions of the Signs in relationship to the Earth. You now also realize the intricacies of the different types of time and their relationship to our work. Remember that you should comprehend completely the facts which have been presented to you before you take your exam. In the next Lesson, we shall study the computations involved for ascertaining the exact positions of the planets for any time needed.

## *LESSON XVII*

### INTRODUCTION

In Lesson 16 you learned how to compute the positions of the signs of the Zodiac. Lesson 17 is a continuation affording you the knowledge necessary to calculate the positions of the planets. This material should be approached slowly and patiently. Remember that each principle is vitally important and forms the basis for the next one. The next few lessons will develop your powers of delineation, but we cannot even begin that step if we do not understand the principles of chart erection. Our calculation must have pinpoint accuracy.

Lesson 16 concluded with Principle X of our chart erection principles. There is only one more principle and that is XI; however, it involves several steps concerning the computations for planetary position. In 16 we charted the positions of the signs and now we will chart the positions of the planets.

### STATIONARY AND RETROGRADE

Before we can understand what is meant by planetary position, we must know that the concepts stationary and retrograde mean.

The term retrograde means apparent backward motion of certain planets when viewed from earth. At various times in our lives we have all traveled in trains that passed other trains. We have noticed when we pass a train which is going slower than the one we are on, the train we are passing seems to be moving backward. Actually, we know it is not. When our earth is moving faster in its orbit than a planet we are observing from earth, the same backward motion of that planet seems to take place. We say the planet is in retrograde. That is what retrograde means in astrology. In the ephemeris it is marked "R". If we were traveling on a train and another train was next to us traveling at the same speed, that train would seem to be stationary. When earth is moving in its orbit at a speed the same as a planet, the planet also seems to be stationary. That is what stationary means in astrology. In the ephemeris it is marked "ST." When a planet is about to go into retrograde from a seeming stationary position, it is marked "ST.M in the ephemeris. When a planet is about to move directly forward from a seeming stationary position, it is marked "ST.D." in the ephemeris. D. here means direct and indicates that the planet is going from stationary to the faster forward motion. NOTE: (You may use " " or " " to indicate retrograde.)

When inserting planets on your charts later, be sure to mark them on the chart: R for retrograde, ST.D. for going into direct forward motion or whatever else the ephemeris shows for the planet.

Although stationary and retrograde motion is apparent and not a reality, we, as astrologers, are considering how things appear from the Earth; hence we have to be careful to record all the real or apparent motions in the sky.

What is the effect of retrograde motion in a horoscope? In many circles it is considered evil or negative, but this is a misleading concept. Generally speaking, when a planet is in retrograde, some of the power of that planet is lost. Its potential influence in a horoscope is modified. For example, if, by aspect, a retrograde planet is radiating disharmony, it will not be as powerful as if there were no retrograde. In other words, a retrograde planet can be either good or bad in a horoscope. This will depend strictly upon the aspects involved. However, its influence will always be modified by its retrograde nature.

How do we compute the positions for retrograde planets?

The degree position of the slow moving planets, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune, and Pluto, may accurately be listed as that position recorded in the ephemeris for the first day of the month. In other words if, for the time in question; anyone of these slow-moving planets is marked ST.D or ST.M merely assume the position of the planet to be equal to the position listed for the first day of the month. In the planets Mercury, Venus and Mars a simple correction must be made to ascertain an accurate position.

Since we are dealing with retrograde planets the average speed per day for Mars, Mercury, and Venus (the Sun and the Moon never appear retrograde so we need not consider them when considering retrograde) varies from the normal speeds for these planets as listed in [diagram I](#).

The difference is as follows:

	<u>Normal Rate, Daily Distance</u>	<u>Corrected Rate, Daily Distance</u>
Mars	45'	3'
Venus	72'	10'
Mercury	84'	21'

For an example of our correction procedure read the following carefully.

In 1948 Mercury is ST.R from June 11th to July 6th. July 6th is the ST.D. position. (We always work from the ST.D. position when correcting the position of a retrograde planet.) The day of the event is June 25th. The number of days between June 25th and July 6th will be 11. Mercury's motion is 84' per day but it is retrograde and it's corrected retrograde speed is 21' per day. Our procedure from here is very simple. It involves basic multiplication and addition.

Daily corrected distance per day	21 mins.
<u>Number of days for correction</u>	<u>x 11 days</u>
No. of mins. for correction	= 231 mins.
231' converts into 3° 51' as follows:	60' / 231' = 3° 51'

So we have 3° 51' as our correction for the distance which retrograde Mercury will travel for the time in question. Position of Mercury for time in question 28° (Gemini)

#### Distance travelled by Mercury (retrograde)

Added = 31°51' but there are only 30° in Gemini on the chart so Mercury has moved 1° 51' into Cancer. (Remember, planets move counterclockwise.)

The position of our retrograde Mercury for the time in question hence is 2° Cancer. We say 2° because 1° 51' is so close we can call it 2° without disturbing accuracy.

This simple process can easily be applied in any case where Mars, Venus, or Mercury are listed in retrograde positions. As we have already stated in the case of the slower moving planets, Pluto, Neptune, Uranus, Saturn, and Jupiter we need not be concerned with this correction procedure. The Sun and Moon are never retrograde, so the correction is not necessary here either. Please reread this section before proceeding and you will see it clearly.

#### THE MOON'S NODES

The Nodes are those degrees on the ecliptic pathway of the Sun where the Moon moves from South to North Latitude, or vice versa. When the Moon moves from South to North, the point on the ecliptic is the ascending or North Node, commonly referred to as the Dragon's Head or Caput (Latin term for head). Its symbol is ☾. By the very nature of the Nodes, the South Node (Dragon's Tail, or Cauda) is placed in the Sign opposite that of the North Node, and in the same number of degrees. Its symbol is ☽.

The influence of the Nodes has yet to be completely determined. There is much opinion and controversy surrounding their impact, but nothing acceptable has been established. Until an understanding and agreement is reached regarding this influence, you need only regard them as points of reference. As a member of our Alumni after graduation you will be kept up to date on the developments in this and other theoretical areas.

#### THE PART OF FORTUNE

The Part of Fortune is one of the Sabian points and will be treated, along with the rest of the Sabian points in one of our advanced courses of study. You need not consider them at this time.

We are now ready to proceed with Principle XI which affords us the know-how to compute planetary position.

#### Principle XI

MacCraig's Ephemeris lists the geocentric longitude Sun, Moon, Moon's North Node, and the planets for Greenwich noon of the first day of each month for each year from 1800–2000

inclusive. The daily motion of the planets is listed on page 1 of this Ephemeris. That chart provides us with the following valuable information:

DIAGRAM I

<u>PLANET</u>	<u>Daily Distance Travelled</u>
Pluto	48"
Neptune	2'
Uranus	3'
Saturn	5'
Jupiter	12'
Mars	45'
Sun	59'
Venus	72'
Mercury	84'
Moon	13° 10' 36"
Moon's North Node	3'

On page 314 of Hugh MacCraig's Ephemeris are the tables necessary for the mathematical computations to secure the positions of the planets for the date in question. This page is reprinted here for your convenience. (See [Diagram II.](#))

Our example date from Lesson 16 is June 6, 1949. Referring to the table, we compute the positions of the planets in the following manner: See [Diagram II.](#)

Step 1 of Principle XI

Pluto – On the first day of June, 1949, Pluto is listed in 14° of Leo. In order to locate the position of Pluto on June 6, we merely refer to the [table p. 8](#) and make note of Pluto's daily speed. That rate of speed is then multiplied by 6, the number of days to the birth in question.

Pluto's Daily Travel:	48"
No. of days till birth:	x 6
	= 288"
Seconds in a minute:	60
Division:	60 / 288" = 4' 48"

This means that Pluto will travel 4' 48" in six days. Therefore, the geocentric longitude of Pluto on June 6, 1949 is 14° 4'.

*Note: It is not necessary to indicate the seconds when listing the position of a planet, because such precision is not necessary for our purposes.*

However, we discover by referring to the same [p. 314](#) that Pluto is Stationary D. at the time of our sample birth. So we merely take the position given on the first of the month. So our geocentric longitude for Pluto becomes 14° .

### Step 2

On June 1st, 1949, Neptune is listed in 13° of Libra . It is also listed that Neptune is Stationary Retrograde. Once again, as with Pluto, we may take the position listed on the 1st day of the month. In this case, the geocentric longitude for Neptune becomes 13° .

### Step 3

Uranus. On the first day of June, 1949, Uranus is listed in 0° and it is also listed as Stationary Direct. For this reason, we may assume the position of the 1st of the month. Hence, Uranus 0° .

### Step 4

Saturn is also listed as Stationary Direct and we may assume its position from the first of the month. Hence, our geocentric longitude for Saturn is 0° .

### Step 5

Jupiter is listed as Stationary Retrograde, therefore its position on the 1st of the month will suffice. Hence, the geocentric longitude for Jupiter is 2° .

### Step 6

Mars is not Stationary Retrograde or Direct, hence we apply the principle of multiplication and division in order to obtain Mars' geocentric position.

Mars' Daily Travel:	45"
No. of days to birth:	x 6
	= 270'
No. of minutes in a degree:	60
Division:	60 / 270 = 4' 30"

On the first day of June, 1949, Mars is listed in 24° .

Distance Mars travels in 6 days:	4° 30'
Geocentric position of the 1st of June:	+ 24°
	= 28° 30'

Hence we have Mars in 28° 30'.

### Step 7

The Sun is listed in 11° of Gemini on the first day of June, 1949.

Sun's Daily Travel:	59'
No. of days to birth	6
	= 354'
No. of minutes in a degree:	60
Division:	60 / 354 = 5° 54'
Distance travelled by Sun in 6 days:	5° 54'
Geocentric position for the 1st of June:	11°
	= 16° 54'

Hence: Sun 16° 54'.

### Step 8

On the first day of June, 1949, the position of Venus is listed in 23° of Gemini.

Venus' Daily Travel:	72'
No. of days to the birth:	6
	= 432"
No. of minutes in a degree:	60
Division:	60 / 432 = 7° 12'
Distance travelled by Venus in 6 days:	7° 12'
Geocentric position on the 1st of the month:	23°
	= 30° 12'

Hence Venus is in 0° 12'.

### Step 9

Mercury is listed in 14° Gemini but it is Stationary Retrograde. In this case, Mercury is Stationary Retrograde from May 24 to June 16. June 16th is the Stationary direct position. The day of the event is June 6th. The number of days between June 6th and June 16th is 10. The average motion of Mercury during Retrograde is 21' per day.

$$\begin{aligned} & 21' \\ & \times 10 \\ & = 210' \end{aligned}$$

210' converts into 3°30'

Geocentric position of Mercury on June 1st:	14°
Distance travelled by Retrograde Mercury:	3° 30'
	= 17° 30'

Thus we have Mercury in 17° 30' .

#### Step 10

For the first day of June, 1949, the Moon is listed in 6° Leo.

Moon's Daily Travel:	13°	10'	78°
No. of Days to birth:	<u>x 6</u>	<u>x 6</u>	<u>+ 1°</u>
	78°	60' or 1°	79°

Thus the Moon will travel 79° from it's position on the first day of the month which is 6° . Mark off 79° from this position and we pass through and the 79 degrees puts our sample Moon in 25° .

$$\begin{aligned} & 14^\circ \\ & 13^\circ \\ & 0^\circ \\ & 0^\circ \\ & 2^\circ \quad 12' \\ & 28^\circ \quad 30' \end{aligned}$$

16° 54'

0° 12'

17° 30'

25'

We insert the planets into our chart, and it looks like this: See [Diagram III](#). Take your time and be sure you see how each planet is inserted. You must understand this!

### Important Points to Note When Erecting a Chart

INTERCEPTION – Occurs when one Sign is contained wholly within one House where the Sign does not appear upon either House cusp.

It is more logical to consider the House as being intercepted than the reverse. In reality, the House is being intercepted by the intercepting Sign. 90% of astrologers are not aware of this concept, and we feel that it is very important.

You will note in [DIAGRAM IV](#) that Pisces is intercepted in the Twelfth House, Taurus in the First, Virgo in the Sixth, and Scorpio in the Seventh. This means that there are more influences playing upon these Houses than would be possible if one Sign only occupied the whole area, such as happens in the Second House, where only Gemini has influence. In the Twelfth House, for instance, two degrees of Aquarius are exerting influence (28–30 degrees), then all 30 degrees of Pisces, plus 25 degrees of Aries. All together, we have 57 degrees of influence of three different Signs, influencing the Twelfth House. To say the least, this complicates matters, and you have to consider the three Signs plus the Planet and Aspects involved. A heavy concentration of Planet activity here indicates that this is a pressure point of the chart, and much consideration must be given to the areas affected.

### COUNTER-CLOCKWISE MOTION OF THE PLANETS

Since the Planets move in a counterclockwise motion, this motion must be inserted in order of their increasing degrees. Referring to [DIAGRAM IV](#), although we have three planets in Libra, they are all less than 25 degrees, which is the degree of the Seventh House cusp, hence they are all placed in the Sixth House in order of increasing degrees. We also have three planets in Capricorn occupying from 10–22 degrees of the Sign, hence they are all placed in the Tenth House and not in the Ninth House. Uranus is less than 10 degrees, Cancer, hence it is placed in the Third House and not in the Fourth. The cusp degree acts as a dividing point. As you can see, this is a critical concept for delineation. A Planet in a Sign is not necessarily in the same House as the Sign, and the effect of this concept is critical for a delineation.

### WHAT IS A PARALLEL?

In order to understand the parallel, we must understand how we define the position of a Planet. We do it very much like we do a town on a map, that is to say, how far it is east or west of Greenwich, and also how far it is north or south of the equator. So we give:

1. The Planet's position on either side of the Sun's path, is celestial longitude, being measured in the heavens and not on earth, as on an ordinary geographical map.
2. The Planet's position north or south of the equator. This is its declination, and is comparable to the latitude lines on a map of the earth.

When we say two planets are conjunct, we do not mean that they have really touched one another, for they are all moving along their own orbits which never meet. We mean that they are each at the same angle, or number of degrees in the zodiacal Signs. When, however, two Planets are the same angle north or south of the equator, we do not say they are conjunct, we say they are parallel. We have, therefore, when making the index of the aspects, to see if there are any parallels. For example (see chart on next page):

Declination of all planets on July 4, 1872.

22 N. 51	19 N. 40
24 N. 56	24 N. 05
8 N. 31	23 N. 35
20 N. 7	23 N. 12
21 S. 58	4 N.

All you have to do with these is to find those that are within two degrees of one another, and call them parallel. If both are north then the parallel is like a conjunction in effect. If one is south and one is north, they are similar to the opposition.

The parallels are:

Sun	parallel	Moon
Sun	parallel	Uranus
Sun	parallel	Saturn
Sun	parallel	Mars
Sun	parallel	Venus
Sun	parallel	Mercury
Moon	parallel	Mars

Moon	parallel	Venus
Moon	parallel	Mercury
Uranus	parallel	Saturn
Uranus	parallel	Jupiter
Saturn	parallel	Jupiter
Saturn	parallel	Venus
Saturn	parallel	Mercury
Mars	parallel	Venus
Mars	parallel	Mercury
Venus	parallel	Mercury

## LESSON XVII

### CONCLUSION

You now possess the knowledge to compute the mathematics of chart erection simply and efficiently. Remember that a complete comprehension of these principles is mandatory. You should always check and then re-check your calculations because the slightest mistake can reshape the entire scope of a nativity. Your calculations must be careful, so a little extra time and patience in this area can spare you the embarrassing situation of erecting an incorrect chart. The importance of your precision here is obvious. A mistake can be very costly.

The principles involved in the past two lessons are crucial to your understanding of the construction of the horoscope. You now know the basics of chart erection and are prepared to synthesize all the facts you have been studying into a complete delineation. In the next two lessons, you will study our concise method of chart delineation. The process of your development has been very carefully designed to make these closing lessons as rewarding and fulfilling as possible. You will now reap the benefits of your hard work and perseverance.

# *LESSON XVIII*

## INTRODUCTION

You will now learn our complete method for a Nativity Delineation of the sample chart used in Lesson XVI. Our Method of Delineation is a step by step procedure which will provide you with all the clues necessary to understand the influences inherent in the birth chart. You will also be given a basis of direction to interpret the influences for any area of life which your client may be interested in. Proceed cautiously and make certain that you understand each step before you approach the next one.

The only way to acquire a proficient ability for delineation of a nativity or progression accurately is through continued application and hard work. A thorough knowledge of the significance of the Planets, Signs, Houses, and Aspects is a necessary prerequisite, and you should attempt to apply the knowledge, which we have afforded you, to as many horoscopes as you are able to come by. Famous individuals whose biographies are available are the best for this purpose, as you can check your interpretation with the established facts. Many of you have well-developed psychic faculties, and this will afford you very special insight into the interpretation of a nativity. However, this is the exception rather than the rule, and most students will discover that by conscientious concentration upon a rational approach to the problems of a horoscope interpretation, they will gradually develop and enhance their own intuitive powers. All of us have some degree of potential psychic power, but this must be developed if it is to become a reality. For instance, someone can be inherently the most gifted singer in the world, but if he never uses his voice, this talent will stagnate and fail to develop. The same principle applies to a person who has inherent psychic powers for the gifted insight of chart delineation; if the power is not utilized, it cannot develop. Let us then begin to develop our powers of chart delineation.

### Procedural Steps For Delineation of a Nativity

=====

#### 1. CONSIDERATION OF SUN SIGN

A complete delineation of a Sun Sign involves a consideration of the following precepts:

1. Sign Position of Sun
2. House Position of Sun
3. Sun Sign Ruler and Position
4. Aspects of Sun and Sun Sign Ruler
5. Delineation

The nativity which we computed in Lesson XVI will serve as our sample for delineation. (Also you will refer here many times to Lesson XVII Diagram III.)

### (1) Sign Position Of Sun

Referring to Lesson XVII [Diagram III](#), make note that the Sun is posited in the Sign Gemini which occupies the Tenth House. The Sun is in 16° Gemini 54' hence it is in the Second Decan. Therefore turning to our [Decanate Division chart](#) on p. 4 of Lesson 13 we discover that the sub-influence of Libra and its ruler must be evaluated. This decan impact although slight must nevertheless be considered.

[Lesson IV](#) indicates the meanings of the first six signs of the Zodiac. Turn to p. 11, and review the basic characteristics of the Sign Gemini. Gemini is an intellectual air sign, and its trademark is variety. It is the Sign of opinion and discussion and it embraces all forms of communication. The sub-influence of Libra provides the native with a sense of balance and justice which permeates the variety he seeks. A consideration of the planetary ruler of Gemini and also of its decan governor, Libra, will be undertaken later.

### (2) House Position Of Sun

The first point to be decided here is the basic meaning of Gemini in the Tenth House. [Lesson VII](#) describes the influence of the Houses. On p. 29 we find the basic precepts of the Tenth House. It is the House of profession, and it determines the parentage and social status of our native. Lessons XIII and XIV contain the signs and the houses. We find in [Lesson XIV](#), p. 39 that the Gemini native of the Tenth House should find the most success and happiness in a profession where his intellectual capacity is utilized. Our Gemini client operates most efficiently when he is constantly thinking and developing his intellectual prowess. The strength of Gemini is considerably enhanced because it is the Sun sign, and also because Mercury is dignified in Gemini, as it is the Sign which it naturally rules. [Lesson XII](#) p. 20 provides us with the necessary information to depict the influence of the Sun in the Tenth House. We find that our client possesses the natural ability to run his own business. He has tremendous capacities for organization and leadership. We discover that he must be able to coordinate his efforts with opportunity in order to turn his potential professional success into reality. [Lesson XII](#) p. 21 reveals the influence which Mercury exerts in the Tenth House. We find that there are avenues for professional success in the executive and administrative positions. Mercury here also indicates that the native has an inherent interest in politics and matters concerning the government.

### (3) Sun Sign Ruler And Position

As we already have made note, Mercury is the planetary ruler of Gemini, and it is posited in Gemini in the Tenth House. Once again, Mercury is dignified here, as it occupies the Sign it naturally rules. A careful consideration of the aspects of the Sun and Mercury will reveal the complete Sun Sign influence.

### (4) Aspect Considerations Involving The Sun Sign

The Sun and Mercury form a conjunction aspect in Gemini in the Tenth House. By the simple application of our Aspect Interpretation Rules we can decipher this influence.

## ASPECT INTERPRETATION CHART (See Page 8 [Lesson XV](#) if Necessary)

### A. Aspecting planets: Sun and Mercury

[Lesson VI](#) reveals the characteristics of the Planets to us. The Sun represents all life. It portrays man stripped of all his acquired habits and mannerisms, and all of the trappings of education and civilization. Without the Sun there would be no life, as we know it, in our solar system. It is easy to see why the Sun is such a prominent factor in a horoscope.

[Lesson VI, p. 17](#) indicates the characteristics of Mercury's influence. Mercury is the planet of mind, reason, and intellect. It implies intellectual movement and progress. Once again, please note that Mercury is in the position of its dignification and its power is naturally enhanced.

### B. Elemental and Sign Position of the Aspecting Planets

The Sun is 10th House 16° 54' and Mercury is in 17° 10th House. Both planets are in the air Sign Gemini, and planets in Signs of the same element produce the harmony of that elemental agreement.

We now check Lesson IX and X for the influences of the Planets in the Signs. [Lesson IX, p. 14](#) indicates that the Sun in Gemini strengthens the intellectual side of the nature. The mind becomes versatile and fond of change, yet positive and strong under this influence.

Once again, Mercury is dignified in Gemini, and this is beneficial. [Lesson IX, p. 23](#) shows us that Mercury in Gemini provides the native with a keen and alert mentality. Our client's intellect is naturally strengthened by this position.

### C. Nature of Aspect

The conjunction of the Sun and Mercury is potentially harmonious under the element of air. [Lesson VIII, p. 17](#) calls to our attention the precepts of the Air element. The Air Signs are most naturally associated with the channels of communication, thought, adaptability, and the gift of making and sustaining relationships with ease. The air native will feel comfortably at home when in the company of other people. Air Signs maintain that reason and logic have greater potency than the material aspects of human life.

### D. House Influence

Although we have already referred to Lesson X to study the influence of the Tenth House, it will do no harm to repeat the process. Basically, the Tenth is the House of profession. We must refer to [Lesson VII](#), to determine what type of House the Tenth House is. The Tenth House is one of the Four Angular Houses. They are referred to as Angular Houses because they occupy the angles of the chart. Planets posited in angular houses have a greater scope for dynamic action than planets in other Houses. In other words, a planet posited in an angular house has more chance to execute its influence than when in a decedent or cadent

Home. So then both the Sun and Mercury are, once again, strengthened by House position. As you can see, a great deal of potential strength is developing around the Sun Sign of our client. The Sun Sign is now strengthening from several angles, and we can expect a strong character. But before we begin to comment, let us complete our consideration of this part of our delineation. We simply feel that you should make a mental note of this build-up of strength.

#### E. Consideration of Other Aspects

Both the Sun and Mercury form the following other aspects. They both form the sextile aspect with the Planet Pluto, in Leo in the Twelfth House.

Leo is of the Fire element, and Gemini of the Air element, so there is the basic harmony between the two aspects. In other words there is a basic elemental agreement between both the Sun sextile to Pluto, and Mercury sextile to Pluto. However, the influence which these two aspects contribute to the overall aspect is negligible. The reason that the influence exerted here is minimal is simple: because of the recent discovery of Pluto, its total effect in a horoscope has yet to be completely evaluated. You should keep this in mind as you develop as an astrologer. Therefore all we need to say about the influence of these two aspects is that they strengthen the overall power of our basic conjunction. This strength is minimal and will not have a profound effect on our delineation.

*NOTE:*

*(There is another aspect here which we give some consideration. By referring to [Diagram III](#) in Lesson XVII we see both Uranus and Venus are in 0° of Cancer in the XI House forming a conjunction aspect.*

*Although a delineation of this aspect will be undertaken in the next Lesson it is mentioned briefly here because the proximity of the planets to the Gemini Sun Sign cause their radiation to still be felt.)*

Please refer to [Lesson IX, p. 30](#), [Lesson X, p. 17](#), and study the influence of Uranus and Venus in Cancer. Then turn to [pp. 27](#) and [29 of Lesson XII](#) to decipher the meaning of these same planets in the Eleventh House. We discover that this negative influence is responsible for sudden and painful emotional problems. The native must be very careful because he tends to make friends too easily. Remember that the influence of these planets is not powerful, and it must be given only that emphasis. The client should simply be warned about his tendency to become too emotionally involved in his friendships. This completes the Aspect chart – Now to the next step.

#### 5. Delineation Of Overall Sun Sign Influence

Now it is obvious from the strength of the position of the Sun and the Sun Sign ruler that our client is of a very strong and evolved character. He has tremendous powers of intellect and is very personable, finding it easy to communicate with almost anyone. The Gemini Sun

provides our client with versatility, indicating that he can appreciate many of the various areas of life.

Initially, the position of the Sun is strengthened by the harmonious conjunction formed with Mercury, and then it is doubly augmented by Mercury's position of dignification in Gemini. All of this is occurring in the Tenth House, which, as we have noted, is the House of profession. An additional contribution of strength is provided by the fact that the Tenth House is an Angular House, thus affording the planets therein more avenues to exert their power. The fact that Mercury is combust with the Sun is transcended by the overall concentration of strength, formally, Mercury's inherent potential would be limited because of this, but this is not the case. The overall power of the aspect inhibits the inherent impact of the combust concept. Our client should find a great deal of success in the professional world if he can learn to capitalize on his opportunities. We should advise him that the professional areas with the most demand for a sharp intellect will be the most rewarding for him. He possesses a natural charm, wit, and conversational ability which should ensure professional and social success.

The overall Sun Sign impact is excellent, but it is only one of countless influences. Let us proceed with our delineation and see just what kind of person our strong Gemini client is. An intricate consideration of the Moon Sign influence will reveal the emotional make-up of our Gemini client and serve as a valuable portrayal of his inner abilities.

## II. CONSIDERATION OF THE MOON SIGN

To insure a complete reading of the Moon's influence, we must examine the following:  
([Lesson 19 Diagram III](#))

1. Sign Position of Moon
2. House Position of Moon
3. Aspects of Moon
4. Delineation

### (1) Sign Position Of Moon

The Moon of our Gemini Sun client is positioned in 25° of Libra in the Third House. The Moon in Libra can be referenced in [Lesson 9](#), on page 7. We find that our Gemini is over-sensitive to the harsh speech of others, and he must strive to cultivate a sense of balance and humor. He must learn to accept that sometimes the speech of others will hurt, that this is part of his basic nature, and only he can modify it. Emotional upsets are inherent in his character, and can cause severe tension. This tension must be relaxed, and the best way for him to accomplish that is to accept exactly that which is causing the tension as a reality. The Moon in Libra furnishes him an acute desire for companionship. He constantly wants people around, and can find no peace of mind alone for any extended period of time. This augments the problem in light of the basic communication difficulties we have discussed. The more he is around people, the more probability of the verbal abuse he is so dreadful of. His humor and ability to accept such incidents for what they are is critical for his emotional

peace. We can surmise from this that our Gemini is a nervous person, and this must be controlled.

## (2) House Position Of Moon

We refer to [Lesson XI](#) concerning planets in the houses and since the Moon is in the Third House, this fundamentally suggests that our Gemini is very fond of travel. The Sign Libra on the cusp of the Third House (see [Lesson XIII](#) p. 32) implies that this travel will mostly be short-distance, and there will be a natural blend between business and pleasure travel. Companionship is essential to make any trip successful, because our client has no desire to travel alone. Gemini possesses an inherent ability to understand human nature and character, and therefore should find success and pleasure studying something similar to psychology, psychiatry, or astrology because these fields are closely related to character. He must pursue a life-style which affords him an outlet for the mental energy he naturally thrives on. If he cannot find sufficient avenues to express himself intellectually, severe emotional problems will complicate his basic stability. Can you sense that our Gemini client in all probability experiences extremes of happiness and sadness? He must comprehend the gap between the two, and strive to be happy when sad, and vice-versa. Only then will he understand the difference between the two, and not fear either, for it is impossible to fear or accept one without the other.

## (3) The Aspects Of The Moon

Referring to [Diagram I](#) (this lesson) we discover the Moon aspects Saturn Sextile.

ASPECT INTERPRETATION CHART (See page 8 [Lesson XV](#))

### MOON – SATURN

#### A. Aspecting planets: Moon-Saturn

Lesson Six, discloses the general characteristics of the planets. The Moon governs the emotions and the imagination. (See [Lesson VI](#) page 11) The Moon defines the personality which, to us, as astrologers, means the ability to realize that we are personalities, we are separate and distinct from others. It embraces memory, all our feelings and emotions, and to a certain degree, our reason, likes, and dislikes.

[Lesson VI](#), p. 24, also indicates the principle which constitutes Saturn's influence in a horoscope. We find that Saturn rules all form, whether it be the pillars of a church, the shell of an egg, or the skin of the body. Saturn governs composition and hence it rules the governments of nations and the executive bodies of large corporations. Saturn rules all that is intricately organized. It confers sobriety, prudence, good sense, dependability, and patience. But beware, Saturn can be just as destructive as productive in these areas.

#### B. Elemental and Sign Position of the Aspecting Planets

The Moon is in 25° of Libra in the Third House, and Saturn is in 0° Virgo in the First House. Libra is of the Air element, and Virgo is of the Earth element. Cosmically Air–Earth cannot mix, and there is a basic disagreement created. We must now consider the substance of the positions of Moon and Saturn before proceeding.

[Lesson Nine](#), Pp. 7 & 8, indicate that the Moon is well placed in Libra, and that other people and their friendship are crucial to our Gemini's development. We have already considered this influence so we need not elaborate on it again.

Turning to Lesson 10 which covers planets in the signs p. 12 advises us that Saturn is reasonably well posited in Virgo, so the aspect gains some strength. Saturn in this position provides our Gemini with an orderly, critical, and analytical mind. He has an original and capable intellect, one that is suited to consider profound subjects. The drawback here is that he possesses a seriousness about life which can produce gloom and sadness if it is not controlled. Our Gemini, as we have already noted, has a strong will–power, considerable firmness of character, and is not easily swayed once his mind is made up.

### C. Nature of the Aspect

The sextile of the Moon and Saturn produces elemental discord, yet the Sign position of the two planets modifies this. The discord lies within the native's emotional thought processes. Although he has a strong intellect, he has considerable difficulty applying it to his emotional constitution, and, what's worse is his difficulty accepting this. It creates that nervous tension we talked about. However, it is important that we note here that the potential to overcome these difficulties is also inherent in the chart.

If the aspect were in complete discord, our Gemini would be in for a life of constant emotional turmoil. However, this is not the case, for he possesses the ability to conquer his traumas and learn from them. He must accept that he is sensitive, and has some difficulty in his emotional balance. Once he has realized, accepted, and admitted the problem, he can more effectively counteract it.

### D. House Influence and E. Other Aspects

The Moon is in the Third House, and Saturn is in the First. Referring to [Lesson Seven](#), which concerns the Houses, on p. 13, we find that the Third House embraces travels, studies, relatives, and correspondence. The Moon is in the Third House, which is a cadent House. Planets in the cadent Houses do not have much room to express themselves. Their potential impact is limited, and thus we see the Moon is the less powerful planet within our aspect. There is a very distinct benefit for our Gemini client, though, because although cadent houses do not confer great stability, they tend towards adaptability, thought, communication of ideas, and the ability to get along with people. This is some help, which Gemini sorely needs, as we have seen. The First House is an angular House, and so Saturn has a greater scope for dynamic action than the Moon does. In other words, Saturn is simply more disposed to express itself and therefore it dominates the aspect. The First House of the horoscope governs the general disposition or temperament of the individual. Broadly

speaking, it will show how a person will think, feel, and act when entirely alone, and free from contact or association with anyone else. Because of basic disagreement in the aspect, we must assume that Saturn irritates the native when he is completely alone. His thought processes become fogged, and this creates the emotional turmoil. However, as we have noted, the potential to solve the problems remains.

The basic elemental discord present in the aspect is responsible for numerous emotional and personality difficulties. Our Gemini has a very bad habit of looking for too much from relationships, and then crying when reality sets in. Because of this, his nervous system suffers. He most probably has (or had) the sickening habit of biting his nails at some time in his life. His nerves will suffer simultaneously with his emotions. One is responsible for the other, and both must be understood. Once again, it is critical that we note that the potential to overcome such difficulties is provided, and our client must strive to overcome.

### III. CONSIDERATION OF ASCENDANT SIGN

We must interpret the following influence when estimating the scope of the Ascendant Sign: ([Lesson 17](#), Diagram III.)

1. Ascendant Sign
2. Chart Ruler and Aspects
3. Planets within the Ascendant and their Aspects

#### (1) Ascendant Sign

Our Gemini Sun and Libra Moon has Leo in the Ascendant position. Referring to [Lesson Seven](#), Houses of the Zodiac, on p. 9, we find that the First House governs the general disposition or temperament of a person. In other words, the Ascendant sign reveals the personality of our client. Think of Leo and what the sign encompasses, and you can get a fairly good indication of his personality. Leo is in the third decan, and by referring to [Lesson Thirteen](#), Signs in the Houses, on p. 13, we can obtain an excellent insight into the basic meaning of Leo here. Our Gemini client has a strong will–power and is very impulsive and persistent.

Yet he is persevering and ingenious, and operates best when not subject to relentless pressure. There is an aura of selfishness about him, yet he is sensitive to the traumas which befall his friends. He is very sympathetic and understanding, and wishes the best for everyone. He is orderly and critical, often self–centered, and he is rarely understood on first acquaintance.

#### (2) Chart Ruler and Aspects

The planet which rules the Ascendant Sign is considered the ruler of the whole chart, and it's position must be intricately studied. The most striking point here is that Mercury rules both Gemini and Virgo. In other words, Mercury rules Gemini (the natives Sun sign) and the Sun rules Leo (the natives ascendant). Therefore the Sun's influence here is intensified and

exerts a strong influence. In other words the native will be very heavily a Gemini. Mercury's rulership of Gemini also enhances our natives Gemini qualities because Mercury is dignified in Gemini.

Mercury forms a major conjunction aspect with the Sun, and two minor semi-square aspects with Venus and Uranus. Since we have already considered the impact of the Sun-Mercury conjunction earlier in the Lesson (during the Sun Sign consideration), our work is cut short. Once again, it is a rare occurrence. There are a certain amount of occurrences similar to this which you will come across. They are very interesting as they describe areas of concentration within a chart.

Referring back in this lesson, we can reconsider the influence of the Sun-Mercury conjunction which, as we have noticed, is so prevalent in our sample chart. Looking back, we find that the conjunction of the Sun and Mercury is potentially harmonious under the element of air. This aspect strengthens our client's overall character and intensifies his intellectual capacity. He is bestowed with the grace of versatility and appreciates variety of life. It should be apparent that the Sun is in an excellent position and that this contributes to the overall strength of the ascendant sign.

Let us look a little further into the ascendant and see if we can find anything which can lend us some assistance in deciding the outcome of this tug of war.

### (3) Planets Within The Ascendant and Their Aspects

The only planet which is posited in the ascendant is Saturn 0° Virgo 30'.

By referring to [Diagram I](#), we discover that Saturn forms three sextile aspects. One is with the Moon 25° Libra in the 3rd House, one with Venus in 0° Cancer in the 11th and one with Uranus also in 0° Cancer. It also forms a square aspect with Mars in 28° Taurus in the 10th House.

Once again we are fortunate because we have already considered the impact of the Saturn-Moon Sextile during our consideration of the Moon sign influence. We simply refer back to our earlier consideration of the Moon sign influence and reconsider this Sextile aspect between the Moon and Saturn. We recall that there is a basic elemental discord present in the aspect which is responsible for numerous emotional and personality difficulties in our Gemini client. The aspect is accountable for a nervousness which haunts our client. We see that his nerves suffer simultaneously with his emotions and the peace of one is dependant on the balance of the other.

We should also make note that the aspect is not in complete disagreement and this affords our client the potential to overcome the problems arising from the basic elemental discord. A major problem facing the native, as a result of this Sextile aspect, is that sometimes he approaches life too seriously and tends to become somber and ill-tempered when all does not go well. It is critical that our client maintain his sense of humor through thick and thin.

This cultivation of humor is crucial for his emotional stability. So, we can surmise that the ascendant House is weakened by this adverse aspect from the Moon and Saturn.

For the square aspect between Saturn in 0° Virgo 30' in the 1st House and Mars in 28° Taurus 30' in the 10th House we merely apply our aspect interpretation. (The steps are on page 8 of [Lesson XV](#))

#### A. The Nature of the Aspecting Planets

Once again, [Lesson Six](#), Page 24 supplies us with the basic precepts which constitute Saturn's influence in a horoscope. We find that Saturn governs all form and composition. It rules the governments of nations and the executive bodies of large corporations. It rules all that is intricately organized. Saturn provides the native with sobriety, prudence, good sense, dependability and patience. But remember, depending on the nature of the aspect, Saturn can either cause trouble in these areas or bring aid.

From [Lesson Six](#), (The Planets) Page 19, we can recall the influence which Mars exerts in a horoscope. Mars rules creativity, new outpourings of energy, construction, invention, ceaseless activity, force, power, work, strife, war and death. It promulgates the endless new stream of energy which brings about new forms; hence, it is said to rule the sex energies. Mars can either turn this force into extremely detrimental forces or it can exalt them into the noblest of virtues – courage, strength of character, self-confidence and power. The very symbol of Mars in its ancient form is that of the orb of power given to kings at their coronation. God, the father-creator, is distinguished from the other members of the trinity by the fact that he carries the orb (the symbol of Mars) denoting power and creation.

#### B. Elemental and Sign Position of the Aspecting Planets

Both Taurus and Virgo are of the earth element and cosmically signs of the same element mix harmoniously. So there is immediate agreement within the aspect and this is excellent. Before proceeding, we must estimate the impact of the sign positions of each respective planet. [Lesson 9](#), P. 37, informs us that Mars is detrimented in Taurus; hence, the power of the planet is limited and frustrated. Immediately, we find a substantial challenge to the inherent elemental harmony of the aspect. This position of Mars suggests that certain circumstances will restrict the native's natural desire for expression and interfere with the personal freedom for action. That nervous impatience appears here again and if our client cannot control this, a bad temper is indicated. (Note: If some point is strong in a chart, it may very well be indicated more than once.)

Saturn is posited in 0° Virgo and as we have noted before Saturn is reasonably well placed in Virgo. Saturn in Virgo provides our client with an original and capable intellect, one that is suited to deal with profound subjects. He has a strong will power, considerable firmness of character. Once he has made up his mind, he is not easily swayed from his decisions. So we have one planet which is detrimented and one which is well placed. Let us look into the nature of the aspect and see if we can determine any additional information which is valuable to our delineation.

### C. The Nature of the Aspect

We are considering the influence of the square aspect involving Saturn in Virgo and Mars in Taurus. The aspect has a basic elemental strength which is challenged by a detrimented Mars and strengthened by a well placed Saturn. It is an interesting aspect but it is a bit complex. Let us study the House position of each planet and see if we can find some enlightenment.

### D. House Influence

We must consider the impact of the 1st and 10th Houses. By referring to Lesson 7, we can delve into the meaning of these two houses.

[Lesson 7, P. 9](#), affords us insight into the impact of the First House. The 1st House of the horoscope as we have noted before describes the general disposition or temperament of the individual. Broadly speaking, it shows how a person will think, feel and act when entirely alone and free from contact or association with anyone else. As we have previously discovered earlier in our delineation, our Gemini naturally becomes frustrated and nervous when alone. Bear this in mind for it is important.

[Lesson 7, P. 29](#), provides us the necessary information to decipher the precepts of the 10th House. As we have noted earlier in the lesson, when depicting the influence of Sun-Mercury conjunction, the 10th House is basically the House of profession. The 10th House signifies such things as parentage, social status, but most essentially the profession which the native follows.

Both the 1st and 10th Houses are angular and this lends the aspect an air of explosiveness. The angular houses indicate east, north, west and south respectively. Planets posited in these angular houses have a greater scope for dynamic action than planets in the other houses. In other words, both Saturn and Mars have tremendous opportunity to express themselves. It seems that because Mars has the sign position trouble, we can assume Saturn to be the most powerful planet of the aspect. We may yet find something which will alter this but at this point we may assume that Saturn is the dominant planet. The overall aspect produces agreement yet we must realize that detrimented Mars detracts from this agreement. It does not, by any means, destroy the basic harmony within the aspect but it does limit the impact of Mars. Before we can talk about the complete significance of the aspect, we must consider the effect of other aspects which the aspecting planets form.

### E. Consideration of Other Aspects

As we have already noted, Saturn forms 3 Sextile aspects, the first one was the Moon. Once again our task here is merely a reference to the earlier part of the lesson when we considered this aspect. This Sextile aspect produces elemental discord which although prevalent is contested and modified by the sign position of the two planets. The discord created causes severe emotional difficulties which can cause identity crises. The problems perpetrated by this aspect are responsible for an acute nervous tension which our client

experiences whenever the patterns of his life are disrupted. You can easily rehash the intricacies of this aspect by simply turning back and rereading its delineation earlier in the lesson. As far as the impact of this aspect on the aspect in question is concerned, it simply weakens the power of Saturn. Please make note that earlier in the delineation we ascertained that Saturn was the dominating planet of the present aspect and yet now we discover that Saturn's expression is troubled by this Sextile aspect from the Moon. However, Saturn remains the stronger planet. This is simply because the discord, affecting Saturn emanates from another aspect while the trouble from detrimented Mars exists within the aspect we are considering at present.

Saturn also forms sextile aspects with both Uranus and Venus in Cancer in the 11th House. We need only evaluate these aspects elementally to determine if they strengthen or weaken the potential of Saturn. Both of these planets, Uranus and Venus, are posited in Cancer in the 11th House. Cancer is of the water element and Virgo, where Saturn is posited, is of the earth element. Cosmically, earth and water produce agreement; therefore, Saturn is provided with additional power from these two sextiles aspects. It is important to realize that the impact of these two aspects is not overwhelming. They simply offer Saturn some assistance for expression. Mars does not form any aspects of consequence which would effect its detrimented position positively or negatively. So we need not elaborate on any other aspects for Mars. Saturn remains the dominant planet of the aspect. This, in no way, implies that Mars has no power. It merely indicates that because of Mars' detrimented position we must make note that Saturn is the more powerful of the two planets.

Basically then, the Saturn–Mars square is harmonious and it strengthens the potential of the Leo ascendant. Our Gemini, because of his Leo ascendant, has the potential to lead an orderly, critical, well planned life. However, this potential is severely limited by his inner emotional tension. If he can curb this tension, then these potentials, we have discussed, can come to the fore and produce the contentment which our client so sorely desires.

Let us see exactly how strong a Leo influence our client has. The most striking point of interest when considering Leo here, as we have previously noted, is the position of the sun. The Sun is incredibly well placed, both by sign position (strong Gemini) and by aspect. It provides a strong intellect for the fundamental critical and orderly manner of Leo in the ascendant. It strengthens our client's potential grip on reality (Leo is one of the most realistic signs of the zodiac.) Once again, control of the ever present emotional tension our client experiences is crucial to this development. So our Gemini's Leo ascendant is strengthened by the beneficial position of his chart ruler.

Now we must evaluate the impact of our consideration of Saturn in the ascendant. Saturn forms two Sextile aspects with the Moon and Venus. The aspect to the Moon produces some difficulty in the emotional make-up of our client, thus weakening the potential Leo ascendant. However, the aspect with Venus provides our client with the latent potential to solve these emotional riddles and take advantage of his Leo strength.

Remember, if this were a real-life delineation you would advise your client that this potential to overcome the emotional trauma he faces must be utilized if it is to succeed. In

other words, it will take some genuine hard work to develop this feasibility. If our client just sits back and flounders in his emotional turmoil, that is where he will stay until he makes the effort to rise above his problems.

In summary, we see that the ascendant is fortified not only by the position of the chart ruler (strong Sun in Gemini) but also by the elemental agreement of the square between Saturn and Mars. Conversely, this fortification is contested by the elemental discord present in the Saturn–Moon Sextile. In other words, the ascendant is strengthened more than it is weakened, so the Leo ascendant influence is beneficial although there are these emotional problems to be ironed out.

You will follow the same procedure when considering any specific area of a horoscope. You weigh the aspects of any planets in that vicinity and estimate the impact of the Sign in which the position occurs. Also you make note of the House position, which determines the specific area of life you are considering. After you estimate the strengths and weaknesses of the position, you can study the potentials which are within it.

### CONCLUSION

What we've done in Lesson XVIII is considered the impact of the three main centers, (Sun Sign Influence, Moon Sign Influence, and Ascendant and Chart Ruler Influence) of the sample nativity which we erected in Lessons XVI and XVII. Before we can understand the fundamental nature of a nativity a careful consideration of these three centers is mandatory.

In the next lesson. Lesson XIX, we will study the particular areas of the horoscope and demonstrate a simple method whereby you can answer any question which a client might ask you. Can you see now how invaluable the lessons are to you. By referring to them you can decipher any influence present in a nativity. Soon you will be instructed in our method for erecting a progressed chart, for any time, and comparing it with a basic nativity. We gave you many cross references in this lesson. After you have done several charts you will know exactly where to turn to in the lessons for your material.

## *LESSON XIX*

Lesson XIX is a detailed continuation of the delineation of the sample chart which we erected in [lessons XVI](#) and [XVII](#). (June 6, 1949) In [Lesson XVIII](#) we considered the fundamental elements of the delineation. In this Lesson we shall evaluate the particular areas of the horoscope. The most effective way of accomplishing this in an orderly, efficient manner is to conscientiously depict the influence which each house exerts on our Gemini client. (We are using the same nativity for clarity so you will have a complete guide and reference for further use.) We will consider each house in the following manner:

1. Sign or Signs existing in each house.
2. Planets contained in each house and their aspects.
3. The overall significance of each house in this particular nativity delineation.

I recommend that before you read further you return to [Lesson VII](#) and review your fundamental knowledge of the twelve houses in detail. It is summarized below for you. As I have already instructed you, the same holds true for the Signs and Planets. If I seem redundant in continually reminding you of this, please understand that it is for your own benefit. I cannot over-emphasize the importance of a fingertip knowledge of the influence which the Signs, Planets and Houses exert in a horoscope. Many of those who profess teach astrology fail to recognize the importance of these fundamentals and expose you to the complexities of astrology before you even understand the basics thereby confusing the student.

### THE HOUSES OF THE ZODIAC

From Lesson VII, we learned these fundamental precepts of each house.

(1) The First House basically governs the general disposition or temperament of the individual. Broadly speaking it shows how a person will feel, think, and act when entirely alone and free from contact or association with anyone else.

(2) The Second House of the horoscope signals the personal financial interests of the native. It defines the individual's attitudes towards money, and it typifies the sources from which money can be obtained by personal effort and the ways in which it can be lost.

(3) The Third House of the Zodiac rules over all forms of travel, studies, relatives, and correspondence. It exerts influence over all forms of communication except television, which is associated with the Ninth House. The Third House also indicates the synthesizing powers of the mind and its ability to form sense impressions and mold destiny within one's own social environment.

(4) The Fourth House begins at the point of midnight. For this reason it is assigned to all endings, to old age, and to old people. It also influences the home life into which we are

born, i.e., the home life created either by the parents or, in certain instances, the foster parents or communal life of an institution.

(5) The Fifth House of the horoscope governs the principle of creation – physical, artistic, and financial. It implies the physical capacity for procreation, whether one is likely to have a large or small family. The artistic expression of a person is also determined by the influence of the Fifth House.

(6) The Sixth House describes the general health of the native and the type of sickness to which he is prone. It also pinpoints the conditions surrounding the work or the duty involved and the reaction where co-workers, employers, or employees are concerned. Whereas the Tenth House describes the particular profession a person will follow, the Sixth describes the conditions which will surround the profession.

(7) The Seventh House begins at the point of sunset. This House affects not the native as does the First House, but the other people with whom the native associates. It rules all partners with whom the native has contact, including the business or marriage partner. The conditions of this House indicate how the native acts in public and the type of public he attracts. It demonstrates the public's reaction to the native.

(8) The Eighth House is the house of sickness and death, legacies, insurance policies, regeneration, inheritance, and the partner's money. It has rule over the condition of death, both an individual's own death and the deaths of his acquaintances.

(9) The Ninth House is basically the house of law, religion, long-distance travel, and philosophy. A long-distance journey in astrology means one of over 24 hours. It stipulates the religious and associated interests concerning the higher-minded rather than the ordinary studies of an educational and kindred nature as ruled by the Third House. The nature of the sign on the cusp of the Ninth House will indicate the prospects of long-distance travel.

(10) The Tenth House is basically the house of professions. The Tenth House begins at the point of noon and is assigned to all the ways through which the native's nature is revealed to the world. It signifies things such as parentage, social status, and, most essentially, the profession which the native follows. The majority of professions now deal with both the man and the woman, and, although there still exists a degree of discrimination against women, more often than not qualifications and talent transcend sex.

(11) The Eleventh House indicates the friends you have acquired and those whom you circulate among. It exerts influence over your hopes and wishes and determines your main objective or goal in life. The Eleventh House has rule over friendships and associations and shows the degree of benefit or loss sustained through the influence or actions of friends and the nature of the associations that are formed.

(12) The Twelfth House defines your foundations, together with the subconscious and all that hampers and restricts your power of expression. It denotes the basic strength or weakness of your body and soul. It is one of the unfortunate Houses of the Horoscope and

indicates some of the difficulties which one can expect to encounter, particularly as a result of the unfriendliness, enmity, and unfair competition of other people.

Now that we have reviewed the basic precepts of the 12 Houses, let's get back to the delineation of our sample chart as erected in Lessons XVI and XVII and delineated in XVIII. This chart is reproduced here again as Diagram I for your convenience. The basic chart indicating the aspects and elemental nature of that same sample chart is also reprinted here as Diagram II. We are now ready to consider each house separately and individually and procure a deeper insight into the nature of our Gemini client. We are commencing a detailed analysis of our sample Gemini client.

### HOUSE DELINEATION

First House. When we considered the Ascendant sign back in Lesson XVIII, we simultaneously constructed an analysis of the First House. Our work here is shortened because we can refer back to [Lesson XVIII](#).

In [Diagram 1](#), we find that Leo is only slightly on the cusp of the ascendant, but Virgo has 23° the 1st House. Thus our Gemini client lacks determination and the drive to accept pressure. Yet he is persevering and ingenious and operates best when not subject to relentless pressure. There is an aura of selfishness about him, yet he is sensitive to the traumas which befall his friends. He is very sympathetic and understanding and wishes the best for everyone. He is orderly and critical, often self-centered, and is rarely understood upon first acquaintance.

In our fundamental summary of the ascendant, we find that Virgo is fortified not only by the position of the chart ruler (Mercury dignified in Gemini) but also by the elemental agreement of the square between Saturn and Mars. Conversely this fortification is contested by the elemental discord present in the Saturn-Moon . In other words the ascendant is strengthened more than it is weakened, so the Virgo influence is beneficial although there are these emotional problems to be ironed out.

Note: It would behoove you to review in [Lesson XVIII](#) p. 19 the complete influence of the Ascendant Sign in the First House before continuing. It can do nothing but enhance your comprehension of the influence of the First House, and the extra time will be well-spent. You must learn to follow through on all the cross references in the lessons. In this way when you are doing a new horoscope you will know where to look.

Second House. In the Second House we have two Signs exerting their influence. The presence of 7° of Virgo and 21° of Libra are simultaneously being felt in the Second House. Since there are more degrees of Libra contained within the house, we can assume Libra to be the dominating sign in the Second House. However we must also consider the influence of Virgo. On page 26 of [Lesson XIII](#) we can find the necessary information to delineate the impact of both Virgo and Libra in the Second House, with our emphasis on Libra. Virgo in the Second House simply means that our client is frugal, and although he does not shy away from spending money, he will always make sure that he is getting his money's worth.

However because the strength of Virgo in the Second House is slight, we can assume that our Gemini is not like this consistently. Libra, which we are more concerned with, provides a natural attraction for the native to the financial interests of life. Our Gemini client loves to be involved in monetary transactions. The luxurious side of life is intensely appealing and our client will sacrifice almost anything to obtain it. Yet he has this conflicting lack of sustained effort and wants his money to come easily without too much effort. The desire to make easy money must be very carefully watched, because Gemini may easily become involved in transactions of a fraudulent nature. This can lead to endless trouble and may even cause our Gemini some scuffles with the law.

The only planet which we must consider is Neptune in 13° Libra in Second House. By referring back to [Diagram II](#), we discover that Neptune is unaspected and therefore our work is shortened. To evaluate the influence of Neptune in 13° of Libra and in the Second House is a matter of reference. [Lesson X](#) reveals the influence of Neptune when posited in Libra. Our Gemini client has an abundance of charm and a flirtatious nature which renders him prone to innumerable infatuations with the opposite sex. If passing fancies are not evaluated for their actual worth, they can cause an immeasurable amount of agony for our Gemini's existing relationships. Gemini has the power of persuasion and uses it solely for his benefit. The influence of Neptune in the Second House can be depicted by referring to [Lesson XI](#), page 12. Once again we find that the prospects of easy money will always attract our client, and he must be very careful because it can ruin his life. He can easily be drawn into a life of crime.

Third House. The influence of the Third House has already been considered in the previous Lesson when we evaluated the influence of the Moon. So we need merely refer back in [Lesson XVIII](#) p. 12 to the delineation of the Moon Sign and rehash the influence of the Third House. (For a new horoscope you would refer to [Lesson Nine](#) p. 3 Moon in the Signs.) There we find that there is a basic elemental discord within the House, and this is responsible for numerous emotional and personality difficulties. Our Gemini has a very bad habit of expecting too much out of relationships and then crying inwardly when reality sets in. As a result of this his nervous system suffers along with his emotions. One is responsible for the other, and both must be understood. Once again, it is critical that we note that the potential to overcome such difficulties is provided.

Fourth House. We must consider the influence of 1° of Scorpio and all 28° of Sagittarius as it is intercepted in the Second House. (See [Diagram I](#)) This means that Sagittarius has 28° contained within that House and the influence is therefore very strong. Consequently we will give minor consideration to the influence of Scorpio and concentrate our delineation on the impact of Sagittarius. [Lesson XIII, page 39](#), tells us that Scorpio in the Fourth House indicates several residential changes and a somewhat turbulent and eventful home life. [Lesson XIII, page 40](#), provides us with the Sagittarius influence here. Sagittarius in the Fourth House implies that numerous residential changes will occur both early in life and continue into the later years. Life will be eventful domestically, mainly because the other members of the family will express a degree of independence compelling various changes. During the latter

years of life, interest concerning religion, writing, or the publishing field can become prominent. In general these later years will tend to be very active.

Fifth House. In the Fifth House 30° influence of intercepted Capricorn and 1° of Aquarius are being felt. Obviously the dominating sign is Capricorn, so we will concentrate more on it. In [Lesson XIV on page 8](#) we find that Aquarius in the Fifth House indicates that love affairs will often develop through social contacts. Sometimes a long-standing friendship will suddenly burst into a love affair, and lead on to marriage. In the same [Lesson XIV on pages 7 and 8](#) we discover that the native of this position constantly searches for a smooth-running love affair and, once he finds it, will do almost anything to maintain it. The Capricorn native (remember this is the strongest influence) shuns uncertainty and searches for the permanent love affair. He longs for this permanency, so he doesn't have to spend much time with his love life and can devote more of his energies and ambitions to other areas of life, namely his business. It implies a rather large family and indicates some rebellious spirits in the family due to the conservative, staid aura of training surrounding the raising of the children.

The only planet in the Fifth House is Jupiter (We consider Jupiter in the 5th House because Aquarius is moving into the 5th House and that influence is stronger. See [Diagram II](#)), and it is unaspected. So, once again, our work is shortened. [Lesson X](#), page 8, reveals the impact of Jupiter in Aquarius. We find that the position of Jupiter indicates the formulation of sincere and lasting friendships with much pleasure and benefit obtained through them. It strengthens the intuition and refines and spiritualizes the mind. The native has original and independent ideas. He favors the manifestation of almost any of the higher qualities of the mind, and he may have uncommon psychic or spiritual experiences.

Sixth House. In the Sixth House we have 29° 40' Aquarius being felt (see [Diagram 1](#)). [Lesson XIV](#), page 15, instructs us that Aquarius in the Sixth House indicates a physical robustness and implies a normal, healthy body. With the position of Aquarius, however, our Gemini client should be extremely careful of his blood and always attempt to maintain its purity. A poisoning of the blood stream can occur as a result of sluggish circulation and this can lead to morbid changes which are unfavorable for the health of the native.

Our Gemini desires work conditions to correspond with his personal hopes and desires. If this can be arranged, his efficiency at a job will be intensified, but if it cannot be arranged, the competency will be stymied.

Seventh House. In the Seventh House we have 23° of Pisces present. [Lesson XIV](#), page 23, signals the impact of Pisces in the Seventh House. Here we find that the influence of Pisces in the Seventh House suggests our Gemini has an idealistic approach to his emotional and marital affairs. Although this is an effective approach, the native must also cultivate a sense of practicality if he is to avoid the shock of reality. If he cannot acquire this sense of practicality, he can become very disillusioned with life and never find happiness. Partnerships may be very successful, but once again the native must not allow his idealistic tendencies to cloud the real issues.

Eight House. In the Eighth House we have the presence of 7° of Pisces and 21° of Aries. Obviously the dominating Sign here is Aries, and consequently our delineation will concentrate on the influence of Aries. The influence of Pisces in the Eighth House can be found in [Lesson XIV on page 30](#). The native of this position of Pisces must be extremely cautious where drugs and alcohol are concerned, because he has a tendency to over-indulge, and this can prove fatal. It seems that our Gemini client is highly susceptible to drugs and alcohol. The influence of Aries in the Eighth House which is dominating can be studied in [Lesson XIV on page 24](#). We discover that the influence of Aries in the Eighth House suggests cerebral disturbances are a primary cause of death. The native of this position should always be careful with his head and brain and anything connected therewith, because these are very sensitive areas. The native must be cautious when driving or riding in a car, for danger is imminent. The possibilities for inheritance are few, and even if one should occur, the amount of benefit obtained is minimal.

Ninth House. In the Ninth House we find 9° of Aries and 23° of Taurus. The impact of Aries in the Ninth House can be evaluated by referring in Lesson XIV to [pages 30 and 31](#). Aries in the Ninth House implies that philosophically the native is somewhat of a rebel. He does not agree with most of the accepted tenets of philosophy and prefers to formulate his own. [Page 31](#) of that same Lesson XIV shows us the impact of Taurus in the Ninth House. Philosophically the Taurus native will tend to accept the orthodox forms of religion. He will not contribute much more than his adherence to the philosophical development of his society. Whatever training and convictions his guardians developed in him will remain with him for the rest of his life. He is afraid of what he does not know, and this is a tremendous hindrance to his development.

Taurus in the Ninth House restricts the native's possibilities for overseas travel. The native more often than not is well-equipped financially to travel, but he lacks the initiative.

Can you see that our Gemini is somewhat confused philosophically? He has strong rebel tendencies in his character, but these are surrounded by an intense conviction to the ideals and precepts which his guardians engendered. He is torn between the two directions and is not sure of himself philosophically. His philosophical happiness and contentment lies somewhere in the middle, and he must strive for it, or he will spend his lifetime confused about what he really believes in.

The Moon's North Node is present in the Ninth House; however it is merely a point of reference, and we need not consider it in our delineation.

Tenth House. In the Tenth House we have 7° of Taurus and 8° Gemini making their presence felt. Please make note that Gemini is very strong in the Tenth House. The major part of this influence in our delineation was considered when we evaluated the Sun Sign influence in [Lesson XVIII](#) page 10, Part (5). We need merely refer back to that Lesson to delineate the effect of the Tenth House. We will concentrate on Part (5) of the delineation of overall Sun Sign influence from the preceding Lesson; however it is strongly recommended that you re-read the entire section dealing with the Sun Sign influence.

It is obvious from the strength of the position of the Sun and the Sun Sign that our client is of a very strong and evolved character. He has tremendous powers of intellect and is very personable, finding it easy to communicate with almost anyone. The Gemini Sun provides our client with versatility, indicating that he can appreciate many of the various areas of life.

Initially the position of the Sun, in the Tenth House, is strengthened by the harmonious conjunction formed with Mercury, and then it is doubly augmented by Mercury's position of dignification in Gemini. The influence of Taurus is very minor because of the power of the Sun Sign and the strength of the 28° Gemini sign. All of this is occurring in the Tenth House, which, as we have noted, is the House of Profession. An additional contribution of strength is provided by the fact that the Tenth House is an Angular House, thus affording the planets therein more avenues to exert their power. Our Gemini client should find a great deal of success in the professional world if he can learn to capitalize on his opportunities. We should advise him that the professional areas with the most demand for a sharp intellect will be the most rewarding for him. He possesses a natural charm, wit, and conversational ability which should ensure professional and social success.

The only influence in the Tenth House which was not considered when we evaluated the Sun Sign was that of Mars. However the complete effect of Mars was estimated while we delineated the influence of the Ascendant. Once again our work is shortened, and by a simple reference back to [Lesson XVIII](#) and the sector concerning the Ascendant we can review the influence of Mars here.

Mars, in the Tenth House, forms a harmonious square with Saturn in the First House, thus strengthening the Ascendant. Even though Mars is detrimental in Taurus, thus losing some of its power, the elemental agreement within the aspect is responsible for the harmonious nature of the aspect. So Mars is basically well-aspected and, even though it is in its position of detriment in Taurus, its overall impact is beneficial.

Eleventh House. In the Eleventh House there are 30° of Cancer and 2° of Leo making their presence felt. Obviously more consideration in our delineation will be given to Cancer since it is the dominating Sign. Nonetheless the influence of Leo, even the slight 2°, will be considered for there are no other major considerations as we had in the Tenth House. In [Lesson XIV](#) on page 46 we can estimate the slight impact of Leo. Basically the native has an easy-going disposition and has the good sense and control to maintain a cheerful outlook, even during the hardest of times. The more intense influence of Cancer, in the Eleventh House, can be studied by referring to that same page 46 of [Lesson XIV](#). Cancer in the Eleventh House implies that family and domestic interests and activities will be the main source through which friendships and associations will be developed. The native will often make some strong and lasting friendships at family gatherings, where the domestic ease and comfort are conducive to pleasant conversation. Our Gemini's hopes and wishes will center around the progressive development of the domestic situation. He wants nothing but the best for his family, and the majority of his hopes are for the improvement of his family's lot.

There are two planets within the same degree of Cancer in the Eleventh House. Hence they form a major conjunction which must be evaluated according to our Aspect Interpretation Chart.

### I Nature of Aspecting Planets

Referring to [Lesson VI, page 15](#) and [page 26](#) for Uranus, we can gain the necessary insight into the nature of the aspecting planets. Venus embraces the principle of love on earth, of attraction, joy, gifts, and benefits. It encourages man to make his surroundings beautiful and so it governs the arts. Uranus is the planet of insight and inquiry into the astounding laws governing nature. The insight appears in flashes and defines the times when material things can be beneficial and when to avoid them. It is the planet of the inventor and is original and scientific, almost never prone to emotion. It governs astrology and is sometimes referred to as the planet of revolutionaries, for it is never content to allow old institutions to continue without change.

### II Element and Sign Positions

Both aspecting planets Venus and Uranus are posited in Cancer, which is of the water element. Cosmically signs posited in signs of the same element produce harmony; hence the aspect is harmonious under the element of water in the Sign Cancer.

### III Nature of the Aspect

The aspect is in agreement, as we have just noted, under the water element.

### IV House Influence

The two aspecting planets are posited in the Eleventh House, and by referring to [Lesson VII, page 31](#), we can recall the principles of this House. The Eleventh House rules the friends you have acquired and among whom you circulate, also the groups you belong to. It exerts influence on your hopes and wishes, and it will determine your main objective or goal in life. The Eleventh House has rule over friendships and associations and shows the degree of benefit or loss sustained through the influence or actions of friends and the nature of the associations that are formed.

### V Consideration of Other Aspects

Both Uranus and Venus form sextile aspects with Saturn in the First House. We have already considered the influence of these two aspects when we evaluated the influence of the Ascendant in [Lesson XVIII](#). We find that both of these aspects are in elemental agreement and hence they strengthen the basic conjunction aspect of Venus and Uranus. Venus and Uranus also form two minor semi-square aspects with Pluto in the Twelfth House. These two aspects produce elemental disharmony, for Pluto is in Leo (Fire) and Venus and Uranus are in Cancer (Water). So there is a slight difficulty emanating from Pluto, but the overall strength of the basic Venus-Uranus conjunction is more than enough to compensate for this.

## VI Delineation of Aspect

Fundamentally, then, the aspect is in agreement, and hence it strengthens the overall influence of the Eleventh House. Our Gemini client should have no trouble at all in making lasting and enduring friendships and associations. His natural charm and wit is intensified and it is through this that the majority of his friendships will be formed.

Twelfth House. In the Twelfth House we consider the presence of 29° 40' Leo. By referring to [Lesson XIV](#), page 53, we can decipher the influence of Leo in this House. Leo in the Twelfth House implies that the majority of enmity in the native's life will come from people in authoritative or influential positions. The way in which the native reacts to this problem is indicative of the intensity of the problem. If he can handle it with maturity, he can overcome the problems, and they will not cause him too much trouble. If he approaches these problems on an immature level, the troubles will be of major consequence.

The only planet in the Twelfth House is Pluto, and, aside from the two semisquare aspects with Venus and Uranus which we have already discussed, it is unaspected. Since the two semisquare aspects with Venus and Uranus produce elemental discord, some of Pluto's power is inhibited. This must be kept in mind; however it is slight and does not exert much effect in our delineation. [Lesson XII](#), page 37, provides us with the information to delineate the influence of Pluto in the Twelfth House. Pluto in this House is another unsettling position, bringing danger of intrigue and subtle enmity. The native will find people doing things in the background causing mischief, and it is difficult for one to pinpoint the individual who is causing the trouble. It is also a position creating trouble for the native through anonymous letters. Obviously this is compounded by the negative aspects of Pluto.

When Pluto is in the Twelfth House, there is a tendency for the native to do things which have a boomerang effect.. This will many times lead to sorrow, and therefore the native should carefully plan ahead so as to avoid this. Usually this will be a direct result of his having to give way to the demands of others who are using him for their own interests.

### ELEMENTAL CONSIDERATIONS

Our considerations of the three main centers, Sun, Moon, and Ascendant, the houses and planetary aspects, is complete, and we must now consider our Gemini client's elemental chart to complete his nativity delineation.

Before we delineate the influence of the elemental chart it is essential that we review below the precepts behind each element which were covered in [Lesson VIII](#).

#### Fire

It is significant that this triplicity has its beginning in the Cardinal Sign Aries, ruling the Eastern Hemisphere or sunrise, the beginning of self. Hence the keyword of the Fire Sign is self. Although the word self may denote a vain egotistical person, it can also refer to one who is very refined and knows his place. It sometimes indicates a person who has matured

his intrinsic powers to such an advanced state that he is obviously a highly individualized person. He is not outrightly conceited nor is he ostentatious with his talents yet he knows within himself that he has certain powers under his control. All the plus and minus that concern the basic self of the native are postulated by this element of Fire.

### Earth

This triplicity has its beginnings in the sign Taurus and it depicts life as seen by others and the knowledge that the public has concerning social activity. The keynotes of this triplicity are those of possessions, materials, property, goods, information, tools and servants. It is by such standards that the average person forms opinions concerning a person's basic substance. The Earth Signs determine the source of supply available to the native. Just as the Earth cannot produce vegetation or animal life, nor maintain life without water, so too Earth Signs demand the presence of Water Signs in order to insure proper functioning. By the same token that too much water on the earth causes floods and destruction, so too in the Zodiac too many Water Signs will tend to limit or nullify the positive qualities of the Earth Signs.

### Air

This triplicity has its beginnings in Gemini and it characterizes the influence of other people on the native. The keyword of the Air triplicity is others. The Air native will feel comfortably at home when in the company of other people where he is afforded the vital opportunity to execute his innate powers of communication. Included in those "other people" are partners, friends, relatives and nearby acquaintances. The Air native will undoubtedly possess a precise talent for adaptability and will be able to modify himself to accommodate any changes on the social level. He is easily the most versatile person in the Zodiac and his true substance will emanate only as he performs in the company of others.

### Water

The Water triplicity commences with the Cardinal Sign Cancer, hence, emotion is the keyword. The Water Signs possess the distinct trend of returning back to the level from where they started. Just as flood waters will always return to a normal tide level, so too the Water native who gives up in an emotional outburst will always come back down again to the level of quiescence. They are generally digging themselves into ruts from which they need some Fire and Earth assistance to extricate themselves. However, if these practical Earth types prove to be too dominant insisting upon their own solution, water signs grow very moody and they might even resort to violence.

When delineating any horoscope it is essential that we study the planets in the various elements of Fire, Earth, Air and Water. Referring to [Diagram II](#), we can study and evaluate the elemental chart of our Gemini client. The diagram is of extreme value in recognizing the behavioral pattern of the native in respect to his outer man (the man he projects to the world) vs. his inner man (the man he feels within himself). Any Fire–Air combination describes the outer man whereas Earth and Water designate the constitution of the inner man. If the two complementing elements such as Fire–Air and Earth–Water are not in balance

with each other, the atmosphere of the native and his behavior pattern will look unbalanced as well. It is relatively easy to discover a lack of one or another element. It is pure logic that under normal conditions you cannot mix Fire and Water, or Fire and Earth, or Earth and Air, or Air and Water and still maintain normal or natural conditions. The same holds true in astrology for cosmically you cannot mix contrasting elements either.

By referring to [Diagram II](#), we note that our client has a balance between his Earth and Water planets and an imbalance between his Fire and Air planets. We can further note that he has a heavy concentration of Air planets (5) and this is of considerable significance. This cluster of Air planets provides our client with amazing powers of versatility and adaptability. He loves to communicate with people and can invariably be found where a lot of people are around conversing and expressing his intellectual capacity. It is very important that he keeps himself in close contact with friends because they can afford him very valuable outlets for expression. Changes and reversals are inconsequential to him as he can easily adapt to any new situation. Let us look a little deeper however and study the balance and imbalance within his nativity.

The imbalance between Fire and Air planets implies that he lacks the zeal or drive to utilize his intellectual capacities. Although his mind is sharp and his wits are quick sometimes he is just too lazy to capitalize on them. If not closely watched, this lack of drive can cause our Gemini client to miss numerous golden opportunities in life. If he is to be successful, he must cultivate a sense of drive and zeal which can incite him on the road towards accomplishment. Fundamentally his intense intellectual powers need to have outlets created for its expression.

Consequently, there is a balance between Earth and Water and this strengthens our client in numerous ways. This balance implies a basic emotional stability which must be maintained if Gemini is to be content. He is very realistic and can see things for what they are. He has an orderly logical, practical mind which can sustain him through the many downfalls of life.

Some Astrologers prefer to construct this diagram and study it prior to the actual delineation of the chart because they claim it is more enlightening. As far as we are concerned, the elemental diagram is just as enlightening whether it is considered before or after the heart of the delineation. This simple diagram, as we have already pointed out, can be incredibly accurate when determining compatibility between two people. You have to merely compare the balances and imbalances and you can discover where difficulties will arise in relationships. For instance, our Gemini native has a lack of Fire planets in his chart. If he can find a partner in business or marriage who possesses the Fire planets he lacks, then both stand a better chance for success. Correspondingly, if he should attempt to mate with someone with the same overabundance of Air planets, confusion only will follow. The exact same relationship holds true for Earth and Water. If one person has an abundance or a lack of planets in Earth or Water he must find someone who can balance this if he is to find contentment. Compatibility analysis can be extremely interesting and rewarding. The help and advice that you can afford people in this vital area of their lives is astounding. For

instance if you find that two people have an imbalance between fire and air or earth and water you do not have to tell them that they can't make it. Rather you can make them aware that they have their problem and it is neither one's fault. You have to make them realize that their problem is simply a result of their Astrology. Something over which they had no control. If they can come to realize and accept this their relationship can grow and flourish so much better. Astrology as you see, can do so much to make people's lives happier and so much more rewarding.

*Note: It is advisable that you reread the complete [8th Lesson](#) to strengthen your command of the knowledge of the elements.*

### CONCLUSION

In the last two lessons we have constructed a nativity delineation for our client born on the 6th day of June, 1949 at 11:20 A.M. in the Bronx, New York. I am sure that by now you are beginning to realize the significance of this course. With the booklets and the books we have recommended to you, you can construct and delineate a horoscope for anyone who wishes this done. You just have to follow the 30 steps indicated and refer to the proper course material in the Lesson Books. In the following Lesson, you will learn how to progress these nativities to any date you wish. The course is drawing to a close now but this in no way means that your studying should subside. Practice makes perfect and the more you practice what you have been taught, the better you will become at it. There is one more book which you will need and use always. It is called The Rulership Book. The keystone of astrological interpretation is through a knowledge of rulerships or correspondences. In the symbolic language of Astrology, the planets, signs, and houses are said to "rule" over everything on Earth and every facet of our lives. This book presents a practical list of these correspondences, conveniently arranged alphabetically as well as by signs, houses, and planets. Rulerships are included for all branches of Astrology including natal, mundane, and horary. The inclusion of anatomical items and diseases will be particularly helpful for medical interpretations. Space has been left throughout the book for additional entries by the reader.

Anyone who works with this book will find that it will become one of his most valuable reference books. A careful study of its pages will give a deeper insight into the nature of each sign, planet, and house than can be gained by general descriptions normally given in Astrology books. As one becomes more and more efficient at horoscope delineation, he turns away from other astrologer's descriptions of planets in signs and planets in houses and begins to blend the factors himself. The rulerships and keywords contained in this book are excellent guidelines for intuition. By blending the rulerships listed under a planet with a house, an extensive delineation can be given. By the blending this with the harmony or disharmony of an aspect and another planet, sign, and house, the pieces of the puzzle begin to fall in place and the student is on his way toward being a competent independent Astrologer.

## *LESSON XX*

In the past two lessons you have been instructed in our method for the delineation of a nativity. Although we recommend that you follow the methods we have taught we do not want to limit you. Every successful astrologer starts out by mastering the fundamentals of chart erection and delineation as you have done. However the truly competent astrologer eventually develops his own particular flair for chart delineation. In other words you will gradually progress and develop your basic knowledge of chart delineation far enough that you will be able to delineate with fewer and fewer references. You will in effect be giving the delineation your own personal touch. This will bring you very close to your clients. This is important because your clients must have confidence in you.

Lesson XX is a continuation of our sample chart delineation, but now we are approaching the more complicated area of progression and transits. When you understand our method for construction of progressions and transits you will be able to erect a chart for any time or place.

"1 Day for 1 Year". This is the phrase generally used in reference to the way which astrological progressions are computed. It is the basis for the calculation of a progression according to the procedure employed by us. The life of every human being on this earth is geared to earth's two cyclic movements, which are it's daily rotation on it's own central axis and it's yearly revolution around the central point of the Solar System, the Sun itself plus its movement through the Universe as a part of our galaxy. The day-cycle is the most basic period as it refers to the alternation of light and of darkness. It is determined by the rising and setting of the sun. The year cycle deals with seasonal changes and it is measured by the change in position of the setting, (or rising), sun, south and north of a middle position which is the equator.

There is an old saying to the effect that, "a temple is not built in one day". The building of the temple is a process. So too the building of a person's character is not accomplished in one day. It is a never ending process which correlates with the continual motion of the planets and the universe. Before the construction of the temple can begin a blue-print must be drafted which describes the basic type of building to be erected. So too the birth-chart (nativity) is a blue print of the fundamental character potential which we are born with. Just as the basic blue-print for the temple is subject to change and modification along the way our character and personality development is subject to change as we grow older. These changes in our continual maturation process are the subject of what astrologers call progression. Through progressions and transits (more about transits later) we can define and study the changes which the motion of the universe brings to each and every one of us. A progression is the calculation for any given date, time, and place, of the advanced positions of the Sun, Moon and Planets of the nativity. We then study this in the relationship to the individual involved.

We teach the 1 day = 1 year system of progressions. It is based on the orbital movements of the planets allowing one day's movement after birth corresponding to each year of life of

the native, or as we said above: 1 day for 1 year. You don't have to know the mathematics behind this rule you simply have to know the rule and how to use it. It involves the recalculation of the birth for a new time and place. The chart is erected according to the procedures outlined in [Lessons XVI](#) and [XVII](#) for the new day and a comparison is made between the location of the planets, in the positions to which they have arrived on the new day and their positions in the birth chart. Judgement is made from the angular relationships (aspects) so formed. When you, as an astrologer, wish to take a look at a chart, in order to get an idea of the development of a person's planetary pattern in any one year, you merely compute which day in the Ephemeris of the birth year corresponds to the year you wish to assess. You then compute the positions of the planets and signs as you were taught for that day just the same as you did for a nativity. The following shows you how to compute the day for the year you wish to assess.

### COMPUTATIONS FOR PROGRESSIONS

The same sample chart which we erected in [Lessons XVI](#) and [XVII](#) and delineated in [Lessons XVIII](#) and [XIX](#) will now be used to demonstrate how we set up the progressed chart. Our client was born on June 6, 1949 in Bronx, New York. The year we wish to progress our nativity to is 1973.

Following the rule of adding 1 day for each year of the native's life since birth we get:

<u>Calculations</u>	<u>day</u>	<u>month</u>	<u>year</u>
Birth Date	6	6	49
Age on birthday in 1973	<u>+ 24</u>	(one day for a year)	
By addition	30	6	1949

Hence the date we use for the progression of our sample chart to 1973 is June 30, 1949. Referring to [Diagram 1](#) in this lesson we can find the positions of the planets for the first day of June, 1949. Then by referring to [Diagram I pp. 8 of Lesson XVII](#) or pp. 1 of Mac Craigs Ephemeris we can make note of the daily rate of speed for each planet. By simple application of the procedure principles outlined in [Lesson XVII](#) we can ascertain the sign positions of the planets for the date in question. These are the progressed positions.

#### Step 1 – Principle XI

Pluto – On the first day of June, 1949 Pluto is listed in 14° of Leo. In order to locate the position of Pluto for June 30, the date of our progression, a simple multiplication process is normally necessary however by referring to Diagram I we discover that Pluto is in Stationary R at the time of our sample progression. So we merely take the position listed on the first of the month. Therefore the geocentric longitude for our progressed Pluto is P-14° Leo (we place a P in front of every progressed position) which is exactly the same sign position as in the nativity. (Its progressed position is not, however, placed on the nativity chart, but will be

later placed properly on the progressed chart after we progress the signs and erect the progressed chart.) This holds true for all progressed positions we are computing here.

### Step 2

On June 1st 1949 Neptune is listed in 13° of Libra. It is also listed that Neptune is Stationary Retrograde. Once again, as with Pluto, we may take the position listed on the 1st day of the month. In this case the geocentric longitude for our progressed Neptune becomes P-13° Libra which once again is exactly the same sign position as in the nativity.

### Step 3

On the first day of June, 1949 Uranus is listed in 0° Cancer and it is also listed as Stationary Direct. For this reason we may assume the position on first of month. Hence the geocentric longitude for progressed Uranus is P-0° Cancer which, once again is exactly the same sign position as in the nativity.

### Step 4

Saturn is also listed as Stationary Direct and we may, once again, take it's position on the first of the month. Hence our progressed geocentric longitude for Saturn is P-0° Virgo, once again, corresponding to it's natal sign position.

### Step 5

Jupiter is listed as Stationary Retrograde, therefore it's position on the first of the month will also suffice. Hence, our progressed geocentric longitude for Jupiter is P-2° Aquarius, also corresponding to the natal sign position.

### Step 6

Mars is not Stationary Retrograde or Direct, hence we apply our simple principles of multiplication and division in order to obtain Mars' geocentric position.

Mars' Daily Travel	45
# of Days to Progression	<u>x 30</u>
	= 1350
# of minutes in a degree	60
Division	60 / 1350 = 22° Distance traveled to progressed position

(Note – it is not necessary for us to list the minutes)

The position of Mars on the first day of June is 24° Taurus. In the thirty days which passes to our progression date Mars travels 22°. This means that it travels the last 6° of Taurus and the first 16° of Gemini. Hence our progressed geocentric position for Mars is P-16° Gemini.

### Step 7

The Sun is listed in 11° of Gemini on the first day of June 1949. Remember that both the Sun and Moon are never Stationary Retrograde or Direct hence the mathematical process is always a necessity when considering their position.

Sun's Daily Travel		59'
# of Days to Progression		<u>x 30</u>
		= 1770'
# of minutes in a degree	60	
Division	60 / 1770 = 29° Distance traveled to progressed position	

The Sun travels 29° during the 30 days to our progression date. Once again on the 1st of the month it is listed in 11° of Gemini. Hence it will travel the last 19° of Gemini and the first 10° of Cancer, therefore our progressed geocentric longitude for Sun is P 10° of Cancer.

### Step 8

On the first day of June the position of Venus is listed in 23° of Gemini.

Venus Daily Travel		72'
# of Days to Progression		<u>x 30</u>
		= 2160'
# of minutes in a degree	60	
Division	60 / 2160 = 36° Distance traveled to progressed position	

Hence Venus travels the last 7° of Gemini and the first 29° of Cancer before reaching its progressed date. So our progressed geocentric longitude for Venus is P 29° Cancer.

### Step 9

Mercury is listed in 14° of Gemini for the 1st day of June. Since Mercury moves so rapidly and we are dealing with the last day of June we simply use the July 1st position of Mercury from the Ephemeris which is 18° , therefore Mercury's position is P-18° Gemini. Note: Mercury's position must be approximated when it is near Stationary positions because it gathers speed as it moves to Direct and loses speed as it slows down to Retrograde. This is

also true of Venus and Mars. When these planets are not near Stationary positions you use the daily speed and compute the movement. When they are near stationary positions you can estimate their positions by estimating between the position on the first of the month in question which here is June and the 1st of the previous or following month. In this case we use July the following month, because it is only one day away.

Step 10

For the first day of June, 1949 the Moon is listed in 6° of Leo.

Moons Daily Travel	13°	10'
	<u>+ 30</u>	<u>+ 30</u>
	390°	300' or 5°
	+ 5°	
	= 395°	

Thus the moon will travel 395° from it's position on the first of the month which is 6° Leo. In other words for our sample progression the Moon travels through the complete zodiac once and stops in 11° of Virgo. Therefore, the progressed geocentric longitude for the Moon is P-11° Virgo.

*Note: We do not feel it is necessary to progress the position of the Moon's Nodes when considering a progression.*

We now must compute the Sidereal Time for Noon of the progressed date in question. We always use 12 Noon for the time to erect a progression. If our client is now living elsewhere than his birth-place of N.Y.C. then the corresponding new longitude and latitude for that place must be inserted instead of the old. At the present time our client has taken up residence in Chicago, Ill. and does not plan on moving in the near future. You always set up the progression for the present place of residence. It is our belief that if someone is living in one place at the present and yet moving in the very near future the progression should be erected according to the longitude and latitude for the future residence. Unless of course your client would like a progression for both and so requests this.

By following the principles outlined in [Lesson XVI](#) we can chart the basic progressed positions of the signs for our sample chart.

Principle I – Progression time and Birth Information

The date, time and place in questions for the erection of our sample progression is June 30, 1949 12:00 Noon in Chicago, Ill.

Principle II – Longitude and Latitude Information for Chicago, Ill.

Longitude	87 V 39
Latitude	41 N 52
Longitude in time	5h 51'

Principle III

1. Standard time Zone – Central. Chicago is part of the central standard time zone.
2. From the date June 30, we know that Daylight Savings Time is in effect. To correct this, we merely subtract one hour from the existing time.

12h 00'	noon
<u>- 01h 00</u>	
11h 00'	A.M.

Principle IV – Correction to Local Mean Time

1. The location is three degrees east of the 90th Meridian which sets the Central Standard Time.
2. 3 Degrees multiplied by 4 minute (per degree) yields 12 minutes in time

11h 00'	
<u>+ 00h 12'</u>	(we add here because it's East of the Meridian)
11h 12'	A.M. L.M.T.

Principle V – Calculation for the interval of time between the noon previous to the birth or event, and the actual L.M.T.

11h 12' A.M. is L.M.T.

From the noon previous to the birth the interval of time is 23h 12' 00"

Principle VI – For Sidereal Correction refer to [Diagram 3](#).

23h corrects to	3' 47"
21' corrects to	<u>+ 0' 03"</u>
	3' 50"

3' 50" which must be added to our figure as attained by Principle V. Thus we have:

$$\begin{array}{r}
23\text{h } 12' 00'' \\
+ 00\text{h } 03' 50'' \\
\hline
23\text{h } 15' 50''
\end{array}$$

Principle VII – Sidereal Correction for Longitude in Time as noted in Principle II.

<u>Longitude in Time</u>	5h 51'
05h corrects to	00' 49"
51' corrects to	<u>+ 00' 08"</u>
	= 00' 57"

which must be added to the time which we have obtained in Principle VI.

$$\begin{array}{r}
23\text{h } 15' 50'' \\
+ 00\text{h } 00' 57'' \\
\hline
23\text{h } 16' 47''
\end{array}$$

Principle VIII – Computations for the noon previous to the birth or event. Please see [Diagram 4](#). According to the instructions we have,

Sidereal Time from <a href="#">Table B</a> for 1949	18h 43' 13"
Sidereal Time from <a href="#">Table A</a> for Jan. 1st	<u>- 18h 39' 51"</u>
	= 3' 22"

3' 22" must be then added to the Sidereal Time for Noon on June 29, which is the noon previous to the progressed date taken from Table A.

$06\text{h } 25' 34''$	
$+ 00\text{h } 03' 22''$	
$06\text{h } 28' 56''$	corrected Sidereal Time for noon June 29.

Principle IX – To the Sidereal Time for Noon achieved by Principle VIII add the time resulted in Principle VII. The result is the Sidereal Time of the chart for the progression sought.

Ex.

$23\text{h } 16' 47''$	time resulting from Principle XVII
$+ 06\text{h } 28' 56''$	Sidereal Time for noon June 29
$29\text{h } 45' 53''$	

- 24h 00' 00"

= 5h 45' 53"

Sidereal Time for Chart

Principle X – We must now turn to the Table of Houses, and under the proper latitude select the Sidereal Time which is nearest to the Sidereal Time for the chart, and from the tables, find the Signs and degrees and place them on the proper House cusps of the chart.

Ex. The nearest latitude listed in the A P Table of Houses in 41 N 54 and the nearest Sidereal Time is 05h 46' 55". The table for this time reads as follows: (We furnish this information in the event that you do not have the A P Table of Houses.)

X house	27° Gemini
XI house	1° Leo
XII house	1° Virgo
ASC house	27° Virgo 17"
II house	23° Libra
III house	23° Scorpio

The Signs are thus inserted onto a blank horoscope sheet. (See [Diagram 2](#)) Consider this chart now in comparison with a copy of the original natal chart and note any basic changes. The most striking point is that the ascendant is now 27° Virgo 26' whereas in the natal chart it was 29° 40'. Our Gemini client is almost done now with the influence of Virgo as his ascendant. Libra is almost in the ascendant position and this fundamentally implies that our Gemini's natural criticism (provided by Virgo) should be evolving into a sense of justice and understanding. More about this later, but for now, before we insert the planets, let's note any other changes. Basically each sign has progressed to the next lowest house from the one which it originally occupied in the nativity. In other words, whereas Aries was on the 9th House Cusp in the natal chart it has now moved down to the VIII house Cusp. Whereas Gemini was intercepted in the 10th House in the natal chart it is now on the 10th House Cusp and Cancer is now intercepted in that same 10th House. In our natal chart we have Sagittarius intercepted in the 4th house yet in the progression Sagittarius is on the cusp of the 4th House and Capricorn is now intercepted in that same 4th House. Remember that the fundamental change is simply that all the signs have moved one house downward from their natal position.

We must now insert the progressed positions of the planets and this is done for you in [Diagram 5](#).

Please make note that when erecting our nativity we calculated sign position first and then planetary position. In our consideration in this lesson, of the progressed positions of these same signs and planets that order is reversed as we first consider planetary position and secondly the position of the signs. This was not done to confuse you but rather, to let you

know that it does not matter which you do first. Some astrologers feel more comfortable estimating planetary position first and others prefer to consider sign position first. It is of little consequence which you decide to compute first. After you have erected several charts you will know which way is most comfortable for you.

Referring to [Diagram 5](#) please note that before each listed planet is the letter P which indicates that we are considering a progressed planet. This is necessary to avoid confusion. Many astrologers prefer to list the progressed positions of the planets and signs on the same horoscope sheet as the natal chart. We feel that this is not practical because it merely clutters up the natal chart and makes it difficult to read. Whereas we stress simplicity and completeness we also recommend neatness. A progressed chart will be that much easier to read if you insert the planetary and sign information on a separate horoscope sheet. It is perfectly logical to assume that the task of comparing a progression and a nativity is an easier task when both the natal and progressed sign and planetary information are carefully inserted into two separate horoscope sheets. Probably the most effective way of noting the difference in planetary position between the natal and progressed charts is to list both sets of planets next to each other with the necessary sign and house information. Once this is done we can take mental note of the changes and start to weigh their impact on our client. The planets from the natal and progressed charts line up in the following manner.

#### Natal Planets

Sun 16° Gemini 10th House  
Moon 25° Libra 3rd House  
Mercury 17° Gemini 10th House  
Venus 0° Cancer 11th House  
Mars 28° Taurus 10th House  
Jupiter 2° Aquarius 5th House  
Saturn 0° Virgo 1st House  
Uranus 0° Cancer 11th House  
Neptune 13° Libra 2nd House  
Pluto 14° Leo 12th House

#### Progressed Planets

Sun 10° Cancer 10th House  
Moon 11° Virgo 12th House  
Mercury 18° Gemini 9th House  
Venus 29° Cancer 10th House  
Mars 16° Gemini 9th House  
Jupiter 2° Aquarius 4th House  
Saturn 0° Virgo 11th House  
Uranus 0° Cancer 10th House  
Neptune 13° Libra 1st House  
Pluto 14° Leo 11th House

There are some major differences which are now taking shape. The most striking and explosive changes are that both the Sun and the Moon have progressed into new signs. Whereas the natal Sun was in Gemini it has now progressed into Cancer and the natal Moon has progressed from Libra into Virgo. These two changes are radically important. Although our client is still experiencing the influence of his natal Gemini Sun and Libra moon he is now entering a new phase of his existence where a Cancer Sun and Virgo Moon are affecting him more intensely. We talk in detail about this in Lesson XXI which concerns, among other points, a delineation of the progression in light of the natal chart. Another striking point of critical significance is the heavy concentration of progressed planets in intercepted Cancer in

the 10th House. No fewer than three planets, Venus, Uranus, and the Sun, are making their presence felt here. There has been a considerable build up of power in this House since the nativity was erected. The delineation of this centralization of progressed planets is left for the next lesson and we are merely commenting on it at this time. Before we go any further to the delineation of this progression there are a few things we must understand concerning the intricate world of transits.

Basically transits are the movements of the planets, utilized to depict cycles based on the relation of progressed transiting planets to the natal planets of the native. To study planetary transits is to compare the birth chart and the "state of the heavens" for any selected time. You can think of a transit as an aspect which is formed by an angular relationship between a progressed planet and a natal planet. In our simplified approach to astrology we feel that, when evaluating the influence of a progression in relationship to a nativity, it is necessary to consider the influence of aspects which progressed and natal planets form. Transiting planets and their aspects are of serious consequence – only when studied in relationship to a nativity. Transits do not change a nativity, they simply expand it yet such expansions are directly dependant on the birth chart. In other words without the birth chart there would be no progressions. Hence to examine a progression without relating it to a nativity is meaningless and has no part in our study. Correspondingly the aspects which the progressed planets form with the natal planets are of paramount significance. The influence of these aspects, formed by the transiting progressed planets, is part of our study in Lesson XXI, however we are introducing the subject here so that you may become familiar with it.

The concepts of transits and progression are extremely important and it is critical that you can distinguish between the two. Think of it this way: when we erected our sample nativity in [Lessons XVI](#) and [XVII](#) we stopped the motion of all the planets for a particular time, date and place and then estimated the impact of their influence on our hypothetical client. Now in the present Lesson we have erected a progressed chart for that same client. What we have accomplished here, in effect, is that we have stopped the motion of the planets once again, but this time for a progressed date. When we say that a planet is transiting we are merely defining it's motion through the zodiac. When we talk about a progressed planet we simply are referring to a transiting planet whose motion we have halted for a specific progressed time and place. For example, in our sample progression computed earlier in this lesson we halted transiting Mercury at 18° of Gemini which becomes it's progressed position. Now when we speak of a transit we are defining an aspect which is formed between a progressed planet (remember a progressed planet is simply a transiting planet whose motion we have stopped at a particular position in the zodiac) and a natal planet. The relationship between these words progressed, transiting, transit, and natal planets is simple yet it can be confusing. If you do not feel that you understand the relationship go back and reread this section very slowly for it is imperative that you grasp this basic difference. The majority of published and material available on this matter is very confusing.

NOTE:

Although we have taught you to progress a chart using the Noon method, there is an additional method in common use which is well worth mentioning. Many astrologers ascribe to the method in which the time of birth is also used for computation in the progression. In other words, instead of using Noon to set up a progression, we use the same time (birth time) that we used in setting up the Natal. We feel that both methods are acceptable and although this lesson uses the Noon method, please feel free to use the other method if it is more comfortable to you.

### CONCLUSION

In the next Lesson we will carefully consider the progression in light of the nativity. You will be shown how to interpret the progressed aspects and how to identify the native's development. It is of paramount importance that you proceed cautiously, deliberately absorbing all the knowledge exposed to you along the way. Progressions are relatively complicated material, however, we have simplified the process so that all of our students may find success in this truly rewarding area of Astrology. In the next Lesson you will see how incredibly interesting your field can become. Through your patience and hard work you have developed a professional skill which enables you to help and guide people through the natural traumas of their lives. The self-satisfaction and contentment which follows such assistance is no small part of your reward.

# LESSON XXI

## INTRODUCTION

In this next to the last of your lessons, we shall construct a delineation of the progression, erected in Lesson XX, in relationship to the Nativity, erected and delineated in preceding lessons. Our work now, obviously, is somewhat more complicated, hence our level of concentration must rise to meet the new challenge. Your powers of focalization, as far as Astrology is concerned, are intensifying, and you are now capable of appreciating this higher demanded level of thought. You have very carefully been exposed to the beauty of Astrology in a comprehensive and organized yet simple method for the erection and delineation of a Natal Horoscope (Nativity). Now we are embarking on an equally effective manner for the evaluation of a Progressed Horoscope (Progression).

## PROGRESSED ASPECTS

There are two separate sets of aspects listed when considering a Progression: Those aspects which the Progressed Planets form with other Progressed Planets (which are listed in [Diagram IV](#)), and those aspects formed by the angular relationship between Progressed and "Radix Planets"\* as listed in [Diagram V](#). A major change in the relationship of a Nativity and a Progression is caused by the actual movement of the planets in the Zodiac. In this way a planet may move away from its natal location in the Zodiac and form new aspects to the other planets, also to its original place in the chart. The measure of time for a chart made by this seeming movement is one day for each year of life, i.e. the aspects formed during the first day define the phenomenon permeating the first 12 months and so on. After birth, the Signs and Planets all move away from the original places occupied in the birth chart, and because they all move at different rates, they form new aspects, not only to their various fixed places in the birth horoscope, but also among themselves as they advance. Therefore, a distinction must be made between a Radix Planet as it exists in the Nativity, and the same planet when being considered in relationship to a Progressed planet. In other words, a planet is considered to be Radix when studied in a Nativity, yet when evaluating the same planet in a Progression we refer to it as a Progressed Planet. We differentiate here simply so that you may understand thoroughly the concepts involved in a Progression. Throughout this lesson, whenever we wish to refer to planets from our sample birth chart, such as Mercury, we call it Radix Mercury, which means the position Mercury occupies in the Natal Chart. Mars will be Radix Mars; Moon, Radix Moon, etc.

We contend that the 2nd group of aspects, namely Progressed, to the Radix Planets is of far more significance than the aspects formed between the Progressed Planets themselves. Therefore, the major part of our delineation, here, revolves around the Progressed to the Natal planetary aspects. The initial group of aspects also is considered, but only according to their measure of impact, which is slight. We also maintain that because of the essential nature of transits, only the major aspects will be considered. However, the basic minor aspects are also listed in [Diagrams IV & V](#) and their significance is mentioned.

*\*The word RADIX means "root "or "beginning". We therefore call the Natal Chart "Radix" and the positions of Planets and Signs in the Natal Chart as "Radix positions".*

## TRANSITS

In the previous Lesson (XX) you were introduced to the basic precepts of a transit. Now we expand that knowledge so that the word "transit" becomes an integral word in your vocabulary. In light of the preceding statement sit back relax, and read carefully this fascinating concept. Remember what was said in Lesson XX; "When we say that a planet is transiting we are merely defining its motion through the zodiac. When we talk about a progressed planet we simply are referring to a transiting planet whose motion we have halted for a specific progressed time and place." (It would benefit you immensely if you would refer back to and restudy the section in [Lesson XX](#) concerning transits so this material is made fresh in your mind.) Within our present sample charts, both the Radix Chart and the Progressed Chart, let us define exactly what we have accomplished. When we erected the natal chart we stopped the motion of the transiting planets for the exact time, date, and place in question. The influences within this Nativity are of paramount significance as they stamp an indelible astrological pattern on our client. However, the pattern is not absolute and is subject to the changing nature of the universe. The transit of the planets and the signs through the Zodiac does not cease with the erection of the nativity but it continues, expanding and developing that pattern within the scope of the nativity. The workings of this expansion and development are the subject of a Progression. For our sample client we have chosen his 24th year to stop the transit (motion) of the planets and signs once again. We have done this to depict any major astrological changes which our client may be experiencing. Remember that the three major evaluations, in our nativity delineation were, in order, a detailed consideration of the Natal Sun, Moon, and Ascendant Signs. Our essential methods of procedure in estimating the impact of a Progression is similar. We commence with an investigation of the Progressed Sun and then continue into Progressed Moon, Ascendant and the aspects. There are several differences, however, within the basically same approach, when investigating a Progression. The major difference is within our appraisal of the Progressed Aspects and the transiting nature of the Progressed Planets through the set arcs of influence for aspects with Natal Planets.

Remember that there are various methods of progressing a Birth Chart in order to discover the trends working in a life during future years. We use the "day for a year" method.

## PROCEDURAL STEPS

### FOR DELINEATION OF A PROGRESSION

#### The Progression of the Sun:

The progression of the Sun from one sign to another correlates with a new upsurging of desires, feelings, and traits which were latent before. (Note: The Progressed Sun is of vital importance, hence a corresponding amount of time is devoted to its delineation.) It is similar to the culmination of something which has been developing inside all along. A change

occurs, yet most often, it is in the sub-conscious, and most people are not aware of it. You are no longer part of this endless futility. From now on you will be able to understand people in light of the natural changes they experience. You can now identify and study the change itself and the astrological phenomena behind it. The wealth of your conversation will astound people. Events may seem to cause these changes, or they may seem to cause the events, however, they are a basic reality which must be accepted. The ideas of correlation and synchronization with the planetary pattern of the universe seems to grasp so much more of the reality of life than the mere "cause and effect" theory which is so limited. You are now capable of explaining to people that a change is imminent and can help them prepare for, and adapt to it.

Let's examine the radical changes of our Gemini client and find out just how he feels about the world now. The Sun takes 30 years to travel through each sign, so it becomes obvious that only centenarians would experience such a change more than three times during their lifetime.

Our client's Radix Sun was positioned at 16 degrees of Gemini, however, for our Progressed date it has travelled to the 10 degrees of Cancer. Our client's Sun has progressed from the middle of Gemini (16 degrees) to the beginning of the middle of Cancer (10 degrees). This does not mean that our client loses his Gemini qualities, but simply that they are now modified by the Cancerian tendencies. Our quick-minded, adaptable, versatile Gemini is becoming very sensitive and emotional. Considering the elemental difference between the two signs is a most effective method of understanding the change. (Note: You can refer back to [Lesson 8](#), pp 17 & 18 and renew your knowledge concerning the basic precepts of the elements of Air and Water.) Gemini is of the Air element and Air encompasses all that is intellectual and social. The Air Signs are most naturally associated with the channels of communication, thought, adaptability, and the gift of making and sustaining relationships with ease. Gemini is the epitome of the Air Signs. Referring back to [Lesson 18](#) we can reconsider the potency of the Gemini impact on our client. He has a strong and evolved character with excellent intellectual powers. Gemini is extremely personable and finds it easy to communicate with almost anyone. The Radix Gemini Sun endows our client with a driving versatility, implying that he can appreciate that beautiful variety which is the spice of life.

Cancer is of the Water element. The Water Signs are signs of heavy emotion, psychic power, and the soul development. It is of no small consequence that both Gemini and Cancer commence their respective triplicities. The emotion that is Cancer essentially concerns the domestic sphere of life. An atmosphere of tranquility permeating the home life is of paramount importance for the Cancerian person. Any domestic problems will upset the emotional balance, and incite corresponding anxiety and worry. He is a very delicate person and the slightest problem can incite his emotions to a dangerous level of instability.

Can you identify now the vital change which our Radix Sun Gemini is undergoing? He is starting to settle down now, having usurped much of the restlessness which is Gemini. Whereas before his mind continually flowed from thought to thought, person to person

without much concern, he is now becoming increasingly sensitive to the intensity of the world around him. His emotional makeup is undergoing a drastic alteration and he must condition himself to accept this and mold into it. His impressions of people and life in general are becoming more acute. The Gemini precepts are still very much a part of him, however he is now, in a sense, employing his Gemini powers to tackle the emotional and psychic world of Cancer. (Note: Because the impact of the Radix Sun is so powerful our client will experience the effects of the Gemini influence throughout his life. Nevertheless, the Gemini impact will be covered over by the influence of, in this case, Cancer.) His versatility, natural charm, and wit are still within him yet, now, he feels them more intensely. Because our emotional balance is so vital to us, it is always hard for Cancer (being a highly emotional sign) people to accept the world for what it is. Now more than ever before he must strive to understand the harsh realities of life. If he cannot accomplish this his nerves will shatter. It is fortunate for our client that he is of strong character because this enables him to take the transition somewhat easier.

Before we can say any more about our client's Progressed Sun influence we must examine its aspects. As we have previously instructed you, we claim that the aspects listed in [Diagram V](#), namely, those which Progressed Planets form with Radix Planets are of greater significance than those listed in [Diagram IV](#), which concerns itself with the aspects between Progressed Planets themselves. In light of this principle we will delineate only those major aspects in Diagram V, yet mentioning the impact of the aspects in Diagram IV. Referring to [Diagram V](#) we discover that the Progressed Sun forms a semi-sextile aspect with Radix Mars, a square one with Radix Neptune, and a semi-sextile one with Radix Pluto. The applied application of your Aspect Interpretation Chart clearly unravels the secrets of any aspect. Hence, we apply the chart to the square aspect involving the Progressed Sun to Radix Neptune since it is the only major aspect formed by the Progressed Sun. However, the impact of the minor two aspects (the semi-sextile to Radix Mars, and the semi-sextile to Radix Pluto) will also be considered. The aspect in question is the square formed by the Progressed Sun in 10 degrees of Cancer and Radix Neptune is 13 degrees Libra, and through the conscientious application of the principles of our interpretation chart we can determine if the aspect creates harmony or disharmony within our client's life sphere. Remember that there are quite a few astrologers who automatically assume that the square is an evil aspect. This approach is an horrendous error and has been undermining the reality of aspects for many years. The application of our Aspect Interpretation Chart discloses the truth of the aspect. There is one additional principle which is necessary when considering aspects between Progressed to Radix Planets and that is the concept of transits. This simply involves the assessment of when the aspect in question occurs and how long it affects our client.

#### ASPECT INTERPRETATION CHART

##### 1) The Nature of the Aspecting Planets

By referring to [Lesson VI](#), pp. 7 & 28 we can establish the information necessary to define the fundamental precepts behind each planet. Since by now we assume that your knowledge of the planets is becoming fingertip, we simply describe some of the vital concepts of each

planet. The Sun represents life itself, not only in the heart, but in each cell. It is the heaviest influence in Astrology, whether we are considering a Nativity or a Progression, and this is essentially why we spend so much time estimating the effect of its impact. It is of principle importance that you bear in mind that we are examining the Progressed Sun of our client which is transiting through a square aspect with Radix Neptune.

The planet Neptune provides second sight, mediumistic power, and the knowledge of the past and the future. The effects of Neptune are the most eccentric of all the planets. It is pure fact that some of the most successful businessmen often have Neptune strongly accentuated in their horoscope. Such men have a mystic, uncanny knack of realizing the most effective way of making the corresponding right move. Neptune rules all things that are widely distributed, whether rumors or chainstore businesses.

## II) Elemental and Sign Position of the Aspecting Planets

The Progressed Sun is positioned in 10 degrees Cancer. Cancer is a sign of the Water triplicity. Natal Neptune is posited in 13 degrees of Libra. Libra is a sign of the Air triplicity. Cosmically, air and water do not mix, so the aspect ignites a certain amount of underlying elemental discord. However, we must journey deeper into the nature of the aspect before deciding on its potential. Granted that the elemental considerations of an aspect are most rewarding and enlightening, we still must examine the entire scope of the influence.

Neither the Sun nor Neptune is in the position of its exaltation or dignification, nor in the position of its detriment or fall, so we may proceed.

## III) The Nature of the Aspect

We already determined the nature of the aspect in the preceding principle, having ascertained that the aspect contained some elemental imbalance. A precise contemplation of a House influence unravels some more of the mystery.

## IV) House Influence

The two planets in question are the Progressed Sun, which is posited in 10 degrees of Cancer, in the 10th House and the Radix Neptune, which is posited in 13 degrees Libra in the 2nd House. By simple reference to [Lesson VII](#), pp. 11 & 29, we can depict the precepts of each House.

### 2ND HOUSE

The 2nd House of the Zodiac defines an individual's personal financial interests. It specifies an individual's attitude towards money and typifies the sources from which money can be obtained through personal effort. Remember the profession is indicated in the 10th House.

It is imperative to stress here that when we talk about money gained or lost we do not mean as a result of speculation or investment, for that comes under the influence of the 5th House. When it is gained or lost through legacy or an inheritance it is through the influence of the 8th House. In the 2nd House we are concerned only with the gain or loss of money through personal efforts. Individual physical labor and any other similar means.

Neptune in the 2nd House implies that the native has a strong urge to make money easily and quickly. He must exert extreme caution so that this urge does not interfere with his natural sense of discrimination between right and wrong. If matters are not going smoothly the temptation of crime and dishonesty may be too great for him to ignore. The prospects of easy money will always attract him and he has to watch himself.

### THE 10TH HOUSE

The transiting Progressed Sun occupies the 10th degree of Cancer in the 10th House. (Please note that the Radix and Progressed Sun for this Progression both occupy the 10th House.) Fundamentally, the 10th House is the House of profession. This House is assigned to all the ways through which your nature is revealed to the world. It signifies things such as parentage, social status, but most essentially, the profession which our client is best suited to follow.

The Progressed Sun in the 10th House implies, just as the Radix Sun, that our client possesses a natural ability to run his own business. Fundamentally, the Sun is well placed, in the 10th House, strengthening the overall character development and indicating a tremendous capacity for organization and leadership.

So we find that both the Progressed Sun and Radix Neptune are well placed as far as House Position is concerned. This lightens the negative effects produced by the essential elemental discord present within the aspect.

#### V) Other Aspects and Their Influence Here

The Progressed Sun forms but two other minor aspects with a Radix Planet and they are a semi-sextile with Radix Mars in 28 degrees of Taurus in the 10th House and a semi-sextile with Radix Pluto in 14 degrees of Leo in the 12th House. Since they are not major aspects, we need only to treat them briefly, expounding on the essential principles of harmony or disharmony within the aspects. As we have said before, the Sun is in Cancer and Cancer is of the Water element, Mars is in Taurus, which is of the Earth element. Cosmically, Water and Earth mix and together the aspect produces an elemental harmony. This serves to modify the underlying elemental discord with the major square aspect under contemplation. Pluto is in Leo which is of the Fire element, producing discord. Therefore, these two minor semi-square aspects negate each other.

Let's review exactly what originally is happening now. The Progressed Sun is transiting through a square aspect with Radix Neptune. The Sun is the transitor and Neptune is the planet being transited. We have evaluated this major aspect of the Progressed Sun and the

minor aspects formed with Radix Mars and Radix Pluto. Before we conclude our study of the Progressed Sun through this square aspect with Radix Neptune, we must take a look at Neptune's position in the Nativity. Referring to [Diagram II](#) herein, we discover that Neptune is unaspected in the birth chart. Sometimes this occurs and it shortens our work. The nature and duration of the transit of the Progressed Sun through the arc of influence of a square aspect with Radix Neptune is our next consideration. We concentrate on this transit of the Progressed Sun, yet at the same time we depict the estimated nature of all transits.

The first point we must consider is the duration of the transit. This depends on two things. (The following information we apply to this present transit, but it is applicable to all transits.) First, we note which planet is doing the transiting (Transitor) for, as you know, each planet moves through the Zodiac at its own rate of motion, the Moon being the swiftest and Pluto the slowest. Their order of speed is Moon, Mercury, Venus, Sun, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune, Pluto. In this case, the transitor is the Progressed Sun which transits the 12 Signs in approximately one year.\*

The following table provides some key information in connection with transits, as it defines the approximate period of time required for a planet to transit from its Radix position through the 12 signs and return to its original position in the natal chart.

*\*The sun transits the 12 signs each year but it takes 30 years for the sun to travel through each sign as far as progression is concerned. This is the 1 day = 1 year formula.*

GEOCENTRIC PERIOD OF  
PLANETARY TRANSITS THROUGH  
THE ZODIACAL SIGNS

The Moon transits the 12 Signs in 27 days 7 hours 43 minutes.

Mercury, Venus & Sun take approximately 1 year each

Mars takes approximately 22 months

Jupiter takes approximately 12 years

Saturn takes approximately 29 1/2 years

Uranus takes approximately 84 years

Neptune takes approximately 165 years

Pluto takes approximately 248 years

Our second consideration is whether or not the transits (Progressed Sun) turns retrograde before it moves out of the arc of influence for the aspect in question. As you know from [Lesson XVII](#), the Sun and the Moon never appear in a retrograde position, but an explanation of this concept is necessary for the other planets. Frequently a transiting planet reaches a certain point, turns retrograde and recrosses that same point; then turning direct in motion crosses it for the 3rd time, thus affecting any Radix Planet within the Arc of Influence of that aspect much longer than usual. We can easily discover when a planet is in retrograde by a simple reference to the Ephemeris.

The transit of the Sun through the Radix is the most decisive and influential of all transits. The good and adverse aspects which it forms to Radix Planets imply the favorable and unfavorable Solar periods in each year. We are now ready to define the duration of the transit of Progressed Sun through the Arc of Influence for a square aspect with Radix Neptune. The Sun moves forward about 1 degree each day in the Zodiac, hence it transits the square aspect with Radix Neptune for roughly 8 days because there is 8 degrees of influence here. For number of degrees of influence of each aspect see [Lesson XV](#), p. 35. The period immediately preceding the actual formation of the aspect and that period immediately following are also important as the impact of the aspect is being felt. This period before or after amounts to about 2 days on each end, hence the overall length of the aspect is 12 days. In other words, for 12 days, during the Sun's travel from 5 degrees to 17 degrees of Cancer. The Progressed Sun transits the arc of influence for a square aspect to Radix Neptune.

The aspect generates some essential elemental disparity, yet the Progressed Sun and Radix Neptune are fortified by Sign and House Positions. Radix Neptune is posited in the 2nd House of Finance. The period of this particular progressed aspect and transit is not a good time for our client to involve himself in financial matters. He should concentrate on domestic matters and delay finances for a later date. He can expect turmoil in his professional life during the duration of the aspect. It behooves our client to employ some sincere restraint in those areas mentioned whenever this phenomenon occurs. It will occur once a year for about 12 days.

The Progressed Sun forms no other major aspects with Radix Planets in the Zodiac, so our work here is finished. Before we go on to an evaluation of the impact of the Progressed Moon we wish to cover briefly what is called the Solar Periods. They afford the serious-minded astrologer a vitally effective way of considering the transit of the Progressed Sun through the Radix each year.

#### SOLAR PERIODS

As the Sun, in its apparent daily motion, transits through the Zodiac, it moves away from the place it held at your birth, passing through one sign each month and at the end of a year returns to that place corresponding with your birth.

Thus, in the sixth month, from the birth date in question, the Sun comes into an opposition aspect with your birth or the natal sign in question and tends to produce a trying

time where depression and problems occur. An application of the Aspect Interpretation Chart must be made to unveil the complete nature of the aspect, however, it is generally considered to produce difficult times. It is not such a good time to make any important moves or seek favors. In the 3rd and 9th months it forms a square aspect to the natal sign and there are also some indications of difficulty. However, once again, the application of our aspect chart is imperative.

#### ADVERSE SOLAR PERIODS EACH YEAR

From 78 to 97 days after birthdate

From 168 to 185 days after birthdate

From 258 to 275 days after birthdate

This 17 day period which occurs three times are times of potential stress and tension. It is a time to be cautious and not expect many benefits.

#### GOOD SOLAR PERIODS EACH YEAR

From 48 to 65 days after birthdate

From 108 to 125 days after birthdate

From 228 to 245 days after birthdate

From 288 to 305 days after birthdate

These are four of the basic good solar 17-day periods each year, and they are times of potential benefit for the native. He should aim to extend his interests and expand his business during these periods, as they are periods of high potential and success.

#### PROGRESSED MOON

The second major consideration we undertake in the delineation of our sample progression is an evaluation of the Progressed Moon Sign Influence.

The Progressed Moon is positioned in 11 degrees of Virgo in the 12th House, whereas the Radix Moon occupies 25 degrees of Libra in the 3rd House. The Progressed Moon changes Signs every 2 1/2 years and spends 29 years traveling the entire Zodiac. Remember when we say "Progressed" we mean the point at which we stop the Moon in motion at a point after the birth date. Before we weigh the impact of the Progressed Moon, let's review the essential influence of the Radix Moon since it remains a dominant influence. Just as with the Progressed Sun our client does not lose his Libran Radix Moon tendencies – they are simply now being colored by the Virgo Progressed Moon influence. The Natal Moon in Libra in the 4th House implies an over-sensitivity to the harsh speech of others. The problem is

magnified because the Moon in Libra also furnishes our client with an acute desire for companionship. He constantly wants people around and finds no peace of mind alone for any extended period of time. The more he is around people, the more probability of the verbal abuse he so dreads. His sense of humor and ability to accept such incidents for what they are is crucial for his emotional stability.

The position of the Radix Moon and its aspects implies that our client has a very bad habit of looking for too much from relationships and then crying when the reality of the situation comes to the fore. His nerves suffer simultaneously with his emotions. One is responsible for the other, and both must be understood. It is important to note that the potential to overcome such difficulties is provided and ought to be utilized. (Note: I recommend that before continuing, you refer back to [Lesson XVIII](#), pp. 12–18, and reread the complete section concerning the Radix Moon Sign Influence.)

The Moon has progressed to the 11th degree of Virgo in the 12th House. The impact of the Moon in Virgo can be referenced in [Lesson IX](#), p. 7. The essential precepts of the Moon in Virgo suggest that our client's normal approach to people and affairs is becoming more realistic, and in some respects, analytical in nature. He has conquered his basic phobia of the speech of others, and now realizes that the bitterness of someone's words is only a natural occurrence. Still, whenever the Moon transits (moves through) Sign Libra, he must be careful because this probability haunts him again. He now has a problem of controlling his own criticism and realizing when it is prudent and when it is foolish.

The placement of the Progressed Moon in the 12th House is of particular interest. This position of the Moon insures a natural and thriving love of the occult and related subjects. It also provides our client with the potential to experience the higher levels of consciousness and touch the deeper levels of his nature. It is an unfortunate position of the Moon insofar as it creates much sorrow and suffering as a result of the back-handed activity of some close friends and associates. He must be very leery of enemies and potential enemies while the Moon is in this house of sorrow and suffering. They can be a source of agony and worry.

An appraisal of the major aspects formed by the Progressed Moon to any Radix planet portrays the rest of the influence of the Progressed Moon's position. Referring back to [Diagram V](#) we discover that the first and most important aspect which the Progressed Moon forms is a square with the Radix Sun. The Progressed Moon is listed in 11 degrees of Virgo in the 12th House and Radix Sun is posited in 16 degrees of Gemini in the 10th House. The aspect can be written simply 11° R 16° Progressed Moon Sign 11 degrees Virgo square to Radix Sun 16 degrees Gemini.

An application of the Aspect Interpretation Chart enlightens us on the essential characteristics of the aspect.

#### ASPECT INTERPRETATION CHART

##### 1) The Aspecting Planets

The Moon defines our emotional make-up and our reactions to the different situations with which we must deal during the course of our lives. Whereas the Sun is the giver of life, the Moon is considered to be the soul which takes care of that life. The Sun is the authority of our Solar System. It provides existence and energy for everything and without it we would not function. The Sun represents the creative energy and the will to lead.

## II) The Sign Position of the Planets

The Progressed Moon is posited in the Earth Sign Virgo, while Radix Sun occupies the Air Sign Gemini. Earth and Air do not mix cosmically, and therefore the aspect is permeated by elemental discord. The Radix Sun is well placed in Gemini, while the Progressed Moon is not too well placed in Virgo.

## III) The Nature of the Aspect

The vital characteristics of the aspect imply a troublesome period. There is basic elemental disagreement and one of the two planets involved in the aspect also has some singular positional difficulty. However, let us continue our investigation and estimate the significance of the two houses involved in the aspect.

## IV) House Influence

Radix Sun is in the 10th House, and the Progressed Moon is in the 12th House. Referring to [Lesson VII](#) we can recall the concepts which fall under the domain of each House.

The 10th House begins at the point of noon. This House is assigned to all the ways through which our nature is revealed to the world. It signifies things such as parentage, social status, and most essentially the profession which our client will follow.

The 12th House defines our foundations, together with the subconscious and all that hampers and restricts the power of expression. This is the most unfortunate House of the Zodiac and contains some of the difficulties which one can expect to encounter, particularly as a result of the enmity and unfair competition of others.

Radix Sun in the 10th House strengthens the overall character development and indicates a tremendous capacity for organization and leadership, indicating that our client possesses a natural ability to successfully handle his own affairs.

The Progressed Moon in the 12th House indicates that the native's life will be full of limitations and restrictions whenever the Moon transits this House.

Hence, the Sun is well placed as far as House position is concerned. However, the Moon is not.

## V) Influence of Other Aspects

The Progressed Moon forms one other major aspect with a Radix Planet and two minor ones. First, it forms a major square aspect with Radix Mercury in 17 degrees of Gemini in the 10th House, then it forms two minor semi sextile aspects with Radix Neptune in 13 degrees of Libra in the 2nd House. We are only concerned with the major square aspect which reads P 11° R 17°. As you can note very simply, this aspect is very close to the one which we have just considered for Progressed Moon to Radix Sun. The only difference now is that we are discussing Radix Mercury in 17 degrees Gemini. Here we are simply interested in the basic harmony or disharmony of the aspect, and the effect it renders on the present aspect of our study, Once again, the Progressed Moon is posited in 11 degrees of Virgo which is a Sign of the Water triplicity. Radix Mercury is posited in 17 degrees of Gemini, one degree away from the Radix Sun, which is a Sign of the Air triplicity. Hence, there is a basic elemental discord present within the aspect which further weakens the strength of an already drained Progressed Moon within the major square aspect with the Radix Sun. However, we also make note that Mercury is dignified in Gemini and that this contests the elemental disagreement and affords the Moon a much-needed outlet from the pressure of its present location in 11 degrees Virgo in the 12th House. Essentially it weakens the potential of the Progressed Moon, however, it is not as bad as was originally feared because of the dignification of Radix Mercury.

The next point we must consider is the position of the Radix Sun, as far as aspect is concerned, within the natal chart. On pp. 10 and 11 in [Lesson XVIII](#) we can review the strength provided by the Sun within the scope of the nativity. Fortunately, the overall Radix Sun Sign positional structure is excellent. The complete picture surrounding this beneficial position of the Radix Sun can be easily re-studied, yet for our present purposes we need only note the positiveness of the position.

#### VI) Duration of Transiting Moon Within the Aspect

Transits of the Moon are of considerable consequence in deciding fortunate and unfortunate days during the year. It moves quickly and its direct influence determines the daily benefits and problems which our client can expect within his heavenly pattern. When the Moon is passing through any Sign of the Zodiac it incites the prominent and important affairs which come under the rulership of that respective Sign. The result of the transit, on this precept, depends on the condition of that particular Sign in the Radix. If the Ephemeris dictates that the Moon receives adverse aspects, on the day in question, it is pure logic to assume that the tendencies toward the misfortune of that Sign increase on such a day. Thus, if a Sign contained adverse planetary aspect at the time of birth, the Moon transiting through it will always tend to be more or less unfortunate.

As far as the present transit of the Moon under our consideration, (namely the transit of the Progressed Moon in Virgo through the Arc of Influence, of the square aspect with Radix Sun in Gemini) is concerned, it ignites a number of the negative Virgo characteristics. It causes our client some basic confusion as to when it is prudent to employ his critical faculties and when it is not. The overall strength of the Radix Sun in Gemini provides a substantial outlet for understanding and minimizing the problem. Our client need only

employ the services of his fortified Radix Sun to overcome the inherent difficulties caused by the aspect.

Based on the progression of our client's chart we may assume that this is a short-coming in his character. However, a chart never ceases its progression, and the realization of this incredible astrological phenomenon is a beautiful experience for you. (Since the transit of the Progressed Moon is so significant, it is imperative that you purchase a Moon Ephemeris. No serious astrologer can function without one. It renders the study of the Progressed Moon and its transits so much more illuminating. I recommend McCraig's Moon Ephemeris. It corresponds to the 200 Year Ephemeris and we hold high regard for its simplicity and comprehensiveness. With it you can study the present position of the Moon not only in relationship to the present Progression but also, more importantly, in light of the Radix.)

It is assumed that by now you have completed and basically delineated your own chart, and that you are enjoying the beauty within your own astrological pattern. When you have your Moon Ephemeris note the Moon's current longitude for any day you wish. Find that place in your own Radix chart and then note what aspects it forms for you. (Remember then, that the transiting Moon moves at the rate of approximately one degree every two hours.)

Do not confuse the transit of the Moon with the progression of the Moon which encompasses 2 1/2 years in each sign. This concept may seem a little confusing at first, but in actuality it is quite simple. Within the real motion of the Moon there are two separate movements to be considered. The Progressed Moon, which travels through the entire Zodiac once every 29 years spending 2 1/2 years in each sign, and the transiting Moon which takes roughly 2 1/2 days to travel each sign, or approximately 29 days through the entire Zodiac. (The reasons for this difference in motion are the subject of Astronomy. For your purposes just remember that the Moon has two motions – transiting and progressed.)

When we speak of our client's Radix Moon having progressed into the Sign Virgo, we are talking about the Progressed Moon. The same principle holds true for the Progression of the Sun, Planets, and the Signs. A Progression of this type should be computed at least twice a year to define the major trends and changes within the scope of the Zodiac. The transit of the Sun, Moon, and Planets, however, is a different story and can be studied daily as they, especially the Moon, determine the fortunate or unfortunate days of the year, depending on the aspects.

It is of no small consequence that you now can fathom the difference between progression and transit. We have expressed the reality of the concept to you very carefully so as not to confuse you. Just remember that there are two separate motions: 1. The progression, describing major changes in a horoscope, i.e. changing of Ascendant, or Sun and Moon Signs; 2. The transits which describe specific events or tendencies, on a daily, weekly or monthly basis. A progression, as we mentioned before, should be computed at least twice a year, while the transits should be studied daily.

Before we move on to a consideration of the progressed Ascendant, let us briefly analyze the major square aspect between the Progressed Moon and Radix Mercury. Remember that

this aspect is very similar to the square between the Progressed Moon and Radix Sun, as Radix Mercury is only 1 degree away from Radix Sun in Gemini in the 10th House in the Natal Chart. This shortens our work within the Aspect Interpretation Chart as we have already determined the positional strength, Sign and House of the Progressed Moon in 11 degrees Virgo. It is only briefly mentioned this time in our aspect consideration.

#### I) Aspecting Planets

Since we have already described the basic tenets of the Moon, in the preceding aspect consideration, it is not necessary to repeat it again. The Progressed Moon is in 11 degrees Virgo.

As to Aspecting Mercury, by referring back to [Lesson VI](#), pp. 17, we can review the major precepts of the planet Mercury. Mercury is the closest planet to the Sun and also the fastest moving of all the planets, as it takes only 88 days to pass through the entire Zodiac. Mercury is the planet of mind, reason, and intellect – it implies intellectual movement and progress.

#### II) Elemental Sign Position of the Aspecting Planets

The Moon, once again, is posited in Virgo which is a Sign of the Earth element, whereas Mercury occupies the Air Sign, Gemini. Cosmically, Earth and Air do not mix and hence the aspect creates some elemental problems. The Moon is not too well placed in Virgo whereas, once again, Mercury is in its position of dignification in Gemini.

#### III) Nature of the Aspect

Elemental disharmony is structured by the contrasting elemental Sign position of each planet. The Moon is posited in the Earth Sign, Virgo, while Mercury occupies the Air Sign, Gemini. Cosmically, Earth and Air do not mix and thus the resulting disharmony.

#### IV) House Influence

The influence of the 12th House, occupied by the Progressed Moon, has already been considered in the preceding aspect and the appraisal need not be duplicated.

The 10th House, which is the home of Radix Mercury, fundamentally is the House of Profession. (It would do you no harm whatsoever to go back to [Lesson VII](#) and reread the entire section dealing with each House!)

The effect of the Moon in the 12th House has previously been considered. Mercury in the 10th House merely implies that the profession best suited for our client would be one where he can exercise his endowed intellect.

#### V. Consideration of Other Aspects

The Progressed Moon is weakened by the square aspect with Radix Sun which we have just considered. The Moon also forms two semi sextile aspects with Pluto in Leo and Neptune in Libra, but the effect of their minor aspects is too slight to affect the potential of the Moon within our present considerations.

Not only is Radix Mercury in the sign of its dignification, but its plausible capacity is doubly augmented by the harmonious conjunction with Radix Sun in the Nativity.

It is interesting to note that both of the square aspects formed by the Progressed Moon with Radix Sun and Radix Mercury (even though both have the same essential elemental difficulty) are challenged by the beneficial natal position of both Radix planets involved in the aspects. This shows us that, regardless of the fact that both aspects within the progression create problems for our client, he is most definitely afforded the character to minimize any adverse effects.

For instance, within the present square aspect under our consideration, it appears that the aspect incites our client not only to misuse his critical faculties, but also to employ his intellectual capacity facetiously to thwart others on the professional level. Yet because of the dignification of Radix Mercury and the positive conjunction uniting Radix Sun and Radix Mercury he possesses the potential to modify and understand these tendencies. Whenever the transiting Moon passes through this aspect with these two Radix Planets this tendency intensifies and must be carefully watched. With your Moon Ephemeris the calculation for the precise days when this aspect occurs becomes a simple yet revealing task.

### CONCLUSION

At this time we feel that you have been exposed to enough material concerning progressions for one lesson. Your next and final Lesson treats the Progressed Ascendant, Progressed Ruler, and the Progressed elemental chart. The 22nd Lesson also instructs you in the business areas of your profession. How to set up shop, attract clientele, maintain it, and some suggested prices.

Remember that serious, competent astrologers do not predict events, they merely assess and define the various trends operating at that time. When mentioning potential hazards or beneficial periods, you must always remember to put these matters carefully to your client. You should never state something like this: "You will have an accident on the 21st of the month", but you could say that; "On the 21st of the month you are likely to be somewhat prone to risks, so take additional care when handling hot dishes or sharp knives". Of course this is an extreme example, but you get the idea. You are defining potentials within an individual's astrological pattern; you are not predicting his future.

## ***LESSON XXII***

### INTRODUCTION

Lesson XXII is the last of the lessons in your astrological course. Upon completion of Lesson XXII you will receive your diploma and become eligible to participate in our advanced study which will be introduced and explained to you very shortly. You are not required to take our advanced course but you are required to complete this course to be eligible to take the advanced course.

Lesson XXII is the continued delineation of our sample progression. In [Lesson XXI](#) we considered the Progressed Sun and Moon and several other crucial factors pertaining to the Progression concept. The first part of this lesson concentrates on a delineation of the Progressed Ascendant, the Progressed Chart Ruler, and a Progressed Elemental Analysis. Also some additional information embracing the transits is furnished. The 2nd part of the Lesson demonstrates the most efficient procedures to attract a clientele and how to proceed with each client on the professional level. The information supplied is invaluable and is the climax of your devotion to study, hard work and patience.

### THE PROGRESSION OF THE ASCENDANT

By referring to [Diagram I](#) please note that our sample client's Ascendant has progressed from 0° Virgo 29' to 27° Virgo 26'. As a new sign approaches the ascendant we must realize that, to a certain extent, it transfers the rulership of the Progressed Horoscope to its own ruling planet, though the impression of the original ruler of the Nativity remains paramount throughout life. Thus, in our present study, we perceive the beginning of Virgo ascending at birth and the end of Virgo at the time of our progression. Libra is rapidly approaching. Hence, Mercury is the chart ruler of the Nativity and the Progression, however it is anticipating a surrender of some of rulership to Venus as Libra nears the Ascendant Position. Mercury maintains prominence throughout life but now moves aside somewhat as Venus shines to the fore creating additional planetary importance.

For another example: suppose Gemini ascends at birth, Mercury is the ruling planet during the whole life; but when the Progressed Ascendant becomes Cancer, then the Moon begins to exercise a powerful influence over the temperament, though the Mercurial characteristics still reign supreme over the disposition as a whole.

Regarding the planetary ruler of the Progressed Ascendant, always bear in mind that the ruler of the Sign itself has, during the period of that Sign's Ascendancy, the major impact over life, but it has as an assistant and coadjutor, the planet ruling the decanate rising. For instance, in our sample Nativity we have 0° Virgo 29' rising which constitutes the first decanate of Virgo. Hence, the chart ruler is wholly Mercury. However for our sample Progression, we have 27° of Virgo rising which is the 3rd decanate of Virgo. Therefore the ruler is chiefly Mercury with a partial Venus influence since the 3rd decanate of Virgo is Taurus ruled by Venus. For example – if the first decanate of Aries is rising, then Mars is the

sole ruler of the chart; if the second decanate of Aries is rising, the ruler is chiefly Mars but with a sub Solar influence since the Sun rules Leo the 2nd decanate of Aries; if the 3rd decanate is rising the ruler is mostly Mars but with a sub-rulership accrued to Jupiter. (Note: You can refer back to [Lesson 13](#), pp. 4 and reconsider and study the Decanate Division chart so as to recall the essential principles of it's construction, or you can refer to it on the other side of the [Aspectarian](#). For our immediate consideration we must investigate the impact of the 3rd decanate of Virgo rising. This establishes that Mercury is the ruler of our Progression. (From previous study we also know that it is the ruler of the Nativity) and also that we must consider the sub-influence of Venus since it rules Taurus, the 3rd decanate of Virgo. This is interesting and rare in that Venus is about to become very prominent in the chart as Libra advances toward ascendancy. In any event, we shall consider the chart ruler completely in the following step. Presently our concern is for an evaluation of the Progressed Virgo Ascendant, then proceeding with an estimation of the planetary rulership consequence. By referring to [Diagram I](#) kindly observe that in the Progressed Ascendant House there are posited 3° of Virgo and 23° of Libra. Because Virgo is actually the sign on the Ascendant cusp it is considered the Ascendant. However, we devote a corresponding amount of time to treating the consequences of Libra in this position because it is dominant in the Ascendant House. The authority of Virgo's Ascendancy wanes some as Libra engulfs the position. As previously stated, however, even as Virgo moves away from the Ascendant, surrendering to new signs and new ways, it has regardless, marked it's indelible astrological stamp on our client. The Virgo Ascendant impact never leaves that client, it is simply colored by the following Libra in the Ascendant position. It is similar to the Progression of the Sun from one Sign to another. You always retain the vital precepts of your natal Sun Sign but they are modified or expanded as the Progressed Sun moves from Sign to Sign.

The 3rd decan of Virgo rising accentuates all the business and practiced tendencies of the Sign Virgo. It fortifies the intellect with intuition especially in financial or related areas. It appears that in the next few years our clients potential for procuring money is intensified and financial success is indicated. Numerous additional factors must be weighed in determining exactly how and through what channels he will accumulate this money. For our immediate purposes though, it is sufficient to observe that during the 3rd decanate of Virgo's Ascendancy the financial prospects are bright.

The impact of the progressed Virgo Ascendant provides our client with quick subtle mental qualities. He is orderly and critical and, at times, over analytical. It will seem that sometimes he gets lost in his continual analysis of all that is happening around him. He possesses a certain inclination towards pessimism which can make him overmagnify the unpleasant facts of life. When this does happen, he generally resorts to a self-pity which can destroy his social and mental attractiveness. The closer Libra moves to the Ascendant the less probable this tendency becomes. The Libra influences balances out this inclination and provides him a more realistic appreciation of the natural pitfalls of life.

The Progressed Virgo Ascendant renders our client persevering and ingenious. He continues to function most efficiently when free from the natural pressures of life. Remember that there is an aura of selfishness about him, yet he is extremely sensitive to the

problems which befall his friends. He is orderly and critical, often self-centered and is rarely understood on initial acquaintance.

The effect which Libra exercises on the Progressed Virgo Ascendant is of no small consequence. Already 23° of Libra occupy the Ascendant House therefore a delineation of Libra's impression here is crucial for exactness.

Once again we want to point out the difference between the Natal and the Progressed Ascendant. The Natal Ascendant was 0° Virgo whereas the Progressed is 27° Virgo. Our client has absorbed just about all of the precepts of his Natal Virgo Ascendant and is now ready for some much needed help from his Progressed Libra Ascendant. However, he still has a few years of Virgo left him although he is already feeling very intensely the effects of Libra and of Venus. (Venus rules Taurus which occupies the 3rd Decanate of Virgo.)

The authority of Libra in the First House approaching the ascendant cusp implies that our client now employs his critical faculties moderately and in a more realistic fashion. The positive and negative aspects of his personality are starting to blend and compliment one another. His intellectual capacities are intensified and he is afforded a natural inherent power to successfully meet the emotional challenge of his Progressed Cancer Sun. Libra ascending suggests courteous, affable, kind and affectionate disposition. The fate is mostly in the hands of others, as there is little ability to mold or alter circumstances. This creates problems for sometimes our client can become lazy and over-dependant on others. This can stunt his development in many areas of life and must be modified. He is controlled principally by feeling and intuition, more so than reason. He is keen of observation, fond of company and generally very artistic, refined and truly sympathetic. There is not much energy or incentive to action, and consequently life lends to run in grooves as he is prone to lean on others for support.

In summary, the unfolding of the Libra Ascendancy (1st decanate) ignites a change in the environment and causes our client to enter a much easier and more even period. This Progressed Ascendant unveils his potential faculties for comparison and enables him to take a more balanced and just view of life. In fact, he now tends to regard life far more from the standpoint of justice than ever before. In simple yet revealing words, he is maturing.

Before we study the position of the chart ruler, natal and progressed, we analyze the Progressed Elemental Chart and see if any major trends or changes are developing within it's construction.

By referring to [Diagram II](#) at the end of this lesson and [Diagram I](#) of Lesson XVIII, we can compare the Natal and Progressed Elemental Charts. There have been three major changes in the construction of the chart although the underlying balance remains essentially the same. Whereas the Moon, in the Natal Elemental Chart, was posited in the Cardinal Air Sign Libra, it is now, (in the Progressed Elemental Chart), in the Mutable Earth Sign Virgo. The delineation and progression of the Progressed Moon consequence has previously been considered earlier in this lesson. Here we are concerned with the basic changes, within the Progressed Elemental Chart. What has happened in effect, is that one planet has been taken

away from the total number of Air Planets while one has been added to the Earth Planets. But, be careful. A cautious examination of the chart reveals that the Earth Planets have also lost a planet, namely Mars, so that their relative strength remains at 2. Mars was posited in the Fixed Earth Sign Taurus in the Natal Chart, and now in the Mutable Air Sign Gemini for the Progression. This is the second major change worthy of notation. The third change we observe is that the Sun has moved from its Natal Mutable Air Sign Gemini to its Progressed Cardinal Water Sign Cancer.

Therefore what, in effect, has transpired is that the F. & E. planets strength has remained the same with the reduction of Mars and the addition of the Moon in the Earth Element. The Air planets have lost two, the Sun and Moon, but gained Mars, so their total loss is one planet. The Water Signs have gained one planet.

What this means is that where there was a perfect natural balance between Earth and Water planets in the natal chart, there is now some inherent minor imbalance as the Water Signs have picked up an extra planet. The essential imbalance between F – A remains, however it is not quite as acute now because Air has lost a planet and now the imbalance is 4 to 1 and not 5 to 1.

Before we go into the delineation of the Progressed Elemental Chart we suggest that you refer back to either one of two places in the course and review the basics behind each element. Study and review can never hurt you, quite the contrary, it can only help you. Either refer to [Lesson 19](#), pp. 24 to 26, or [Lesson Eight](#). You will continually employ your Lesson Booklets as points of reference throughout your career as an astrologer. They were written with that express purpose in mind so that they would become convenient reference material for you in your professional astrological career.

(Remember it is pure logic that under normal conditions you cannot mix Fire and Water, Fire and Earth or Earth and Air, or Air and Water and still maintain normal or natural conditions. This same principle holds true in astrology for cosmically you cannot mix contrasting elements either. Cosmically on F–A and E–W mix and no other combination will suffice.) By referring to [Diagram II](#) we note that our client still has a basic balance between his Earth and Water planets and an imbalance between his Fire and Air planets. He retains a heavy concentration of Air planets (4) and this is of considerable consequence. This cluster of Air planets maintains his versatility and adaptability. He loves to communicate and can invariably be found where a lot of people are conversing and expressing his intellectual capacity. However, it is important to realize that with the loss of both the Sun and the Moon from his Air concentration, he is beginning to slow down and take it all a bit more seriously. It is no longer so easy for him to jump from thought to thought, place to place, person, to person, without it affecting him.

The continuing imbalance between Fire and Air planets indicates that his lack of zeal or drive to utilize his intellectual capacities endures. This tendency is starting to balance out; however, until it does, an inclination toward laziness will stunt his natural mental development.

The substantial balance between Earth and Water retains its saliency although the Water element has procured an extra planet. This balance implies a basic emotional stability which must be maintained to balance out the intellectual restlessness. He retains his realistic approach to life and remains orderly and logical, capable of digesting all he comes in contact with.

### PROGRESSED CHART RULERSHIP ANALYSIS

The next step in our sample Progression Delineation is an evaluation of the Progressed Chart Ruler. Our sample clients Natal chart is ruled by Mercury and notably his Progressed Chart also falls under Mercury's domain. However, it is important to understand that the 3rd decan of Virgo now ruling furnishes a subrulership of Venus. Venus' inherent impact is doubly augmented when we realize that Libra is nearing ascendancy bringing with a Venus supremacy. However, Virgo is continues to occupy the Ascendant cusp. Hence we delineate Mercury as the ruler of the Progression with a corresponding mention of Venus' impending supremacy. In order to competently estimate the astrological potential of Progressed Mercury it is first necessary to recall the nature of the Radix position.

Radix Mercury is in its position of dignification in Gemini and the overall positional impact of Radix Mercury is excellent. So we have a strong Radix Mercury transiting through the Zodiac and retaining its chart rulership for the time of the Progression. To decipher the nature and impact of Progressed Mercury we must evaluate the Progressed Aspects. If you do not automatically recall that we put the weight of our investigation into the Progressed to Natal Aspects then you should refer back to [Lesson XXI](#) and reread that section. It is of paramount significance that you comprehend this principle. Remember this does not imply that aspects between Progressed Planets are meaningless or insignificant. It merely suggests that Progressed to Natal Aspects are more illuminating and relevant to the essential nature of our present study. Aspects between Progressed Planets are highly significant when evaluating mundane or political affairs.

As we have previously ascertained, the position of Mercury in the Radix is excellent. Progressed Mercury forms one major aspect with a Radix Planet. It forms a trine aspect with Radix Neptune in 13 degrees of Libra in the 1st House. The aspect can be written in the following manner: P 18° R 13° . The applied application of our Aspect Interpretation Chart provides the basis for a delineation of this Aspect.

### ASPECT INTERPRETATION CHART

#### A. Nature of Aspecting Planets

Mercury is the planet of mind, reason and intellect. Mercury implies intellectual movement and progress. It distinguishes the progressive from the unprogressive, who can only do what he has been trained to do in youth.

The effects of Neptune are the most eccentric of all the planets. Neptune represents the phenomenon of beauty and inclines towards the dreamer. Neptune provides second insight, mediumistic power and the knowledge of the past and the future.

#### B. Elemental & Sign Position of the Aspecting Planets

Progressed Mercury occupies the 18th degree of Gemini in the 9th House, whereas Radix Neptune occupies the 13th degree of Libra in the 2nd House. Gemini is a Sign of the Air element while Libra is also from the Air triplicity. Cosmically, Signs of the same element mix and therefore the Aspect produces essential harmony. However we must venture a little deeper to absorb the true nature of the aspect.

Mercury posited in Gemini bestows a keen and alert mentality. It is dignified in Gemini and provides our client a natural capacity to follow a variety of interests. This locality of Mercury also denotes a latent wit and humor, a love of detail, and a fondness for travel and knowledge of the different areas of the world.

Neptune in Libra indicates a flirtatious nature implying that our client is prone to innumerable infatuations with the opposite sex. If passing fancies are not evaluated for their actual worth, they can cause an immeasurable amount of agony for existing relationships.

#### C. The Nature of the Aspect

The aspect creates elemental harmony under the Air triplicity. The aspect is further strengthened by the dignification of Mercury.

#### D. House Influence

Progressed Mercury is posited in the 9th House of Religion and Long-distance Travel. Mercury, here, accentuates the potentialities of thought and inspiration. The mental outlook is mostly optimistic but there is an intellectual restlessness and changeability which can cause some confusion.

Radix Neptune occupies the 2nd Zodiacal House. Neptune, here, signifies that our client has a strong driving urge to make money easily and quickly, and as a result he must be very careful that this urge does not interfere with his sense of discrimination between right and wrong. The prospect of easy money will always be attractive and can be responsible for numerous problems.

#### E. Other Aspects

Progressed Mercury forms one other aspect with the Radix and that is a minor sextile aspect with Radix Pluto in 14 degrees of Leo in the 12th House. The aspect creates additional elemental harmony within the major aspect under consideration. Remember though that the aspect is minor and hence its impact is slight. It simply provides some additional strength for the aspect being investigated.

## F. Duration of Aspect

The transit of Mercury through the Zodiac is so swift that the duration of this aspect is short. These transits last only a day or two sometimes falling into groups during the year. Frequently several transits can occur in a month, encouraging a lively social round.

### TRANSITS

The following is some additional information concerning the vital constitution of the transit of the Sun, Moon and Planets. The slower a planet is in motion, the more action its transits ignites. Remember that any planet which is stationary within two degrees of some sensitive point in the horoscope is always important. The rule just elucidated, namely that a planet produces more effect when moving slowly than when moving quickly at the time of transit, is universally accepted and practiced in the astrological community. All other things being equal, the slower moving planets are much more marked in the results brought about than are those that move quickly because their influence extends over a much longer period. As a result of this concept, the planets can be divided for the purpose of transits into two groups; Pluto, Neptune, Uranus, Saturn and Jupiter, which are slow and the remainder which are quick. Mars however, is capable of producing effects by transit at critical times.

The slower moving planets mark general periods rather than specific dates. The impact of a slow moving planet is, of course, strongest on the day when its transit is exact, but the transit is meaningful through the entire orb of influence.

The transits of the quickly moving planets mark days rather than periods, for their influence seldom extends over more than two days. Mercury and Venus usually mark quite ephemeral events of only slight interest. The Moon, however, although the quickest in motion of all the heavenly bodies, is of greater all around importance than any other body.

As was previously explained to you in [Lesson XXI](#), the Moon is of considerable importance in deciding fortunate or unfortunate days. It moves quickly and its influence never extends more than a few hours before and after the hour when it is exact, but in spite of this, its position has a great deal of influence.

### TRANSITS THROUGH THE HOUSE

The 1st and 10th House, and especially their cusps, are the most important for transits; and the 4th and 7th are next to these. These constitute the four angles of the horoscope chart. Transits through the other houses are of much less importance, and their effects, of course, are felt mainly when Radix positions are affected by transit.

### TRANSITS OF MERCURY, VENUS

These planets pass through the houses with comparative regularity. Mercury and Venus add vitality and stimulus to the affairs of the house through which they pass.

Mercury on the cusp of the Ascendant or Midheaven implies a fortunate time for all things governed by the planet. The amount of good fortune indicated will depend on any aspects which transiting Mercury forms. These aspects formed with planets in the Radix, once again, are the most important.

The same concept holds true for Venus when near or on the cusp of the Ascendant or Midheaven. (Note: The nature of the transiting Sun and Moon has already been explained and need not be repeated.)

#### TRANSITS OF MARS

The transits of Mars are quick and soon over. They tend to precipitate matters rarely affording a concrete choice of action. The transit of Mars incites rapid and impulsive decisions and temperance should always be highly recommended.

Mars passing through the First or Ascendant House incites the temper and stimulates the desire towards action and impulse.

Mars passing through the 10th House implies scandal, loss of credit, and ill-repute.

#### TRANSITS OF JUPITER

The transit of Jupiter is a blessing which implies good fortune, The transits of Jupiter incite opportunities for improvement and progress in all departments of life, but mainly social and spiritual. It has a tendency to expand and intensify the emotional side of the nature.

Jupiter passing through the First or Ascendant House implies periods of good health, renewed vigor, increased vitality and much cheerfulness.

Jupiter passing through the Tenth House is excellent for honor and reputation. It strengthens the overall credit standing and often brings much good fortune.

An unfortunate nativity is often improved by the transits of Jupiter, but without the power on the part of the native to respond to the transits of this planet it will be to little avail. The secret of transiting Jupiter's influence, lies in expansion and fullness of expression.

#### TRANSITS OF SATURN

The work of transiting Saturn is to solidify and render the fundamental aura, surrounding life, more stable and secure. However, if the native is not ready to mold and develop within these astrological changes, it disturbs the mind, causing resentment at the conditions which it imposes.

Saturn passing through the First or Ascendant House of the horoscope produces a depression which if properly manipulated can entice the native to take a long, hard, honest

look at himself. Improvements and progress usually follow, but the native must be able to capitalize on this initiative.

Saturn passing through the 10th House or M.C. implies failure, scandal, trouble with superiors, and the loss of honor and credit.

### TRANSITS OF URANUS, NEPTUNE, AND PLUTO

These planets remain in one Sign for extended periods of time, hence their significance applies to the times, the generations etc., rather than specific instances. You must always remember that Pluto, Neptune and Uranus in the sign depict the tenor of the times, the characteristics of the generations, the mood, the society, the tempo. Naturally all of us are, to a certain extent, under the influence of the times in which we live. This being so, the Sign and House position of Uranus, Neptune, and Pluto provide valuable clues to individual personality and social traits.

### BUSINESS PROCEDURES

The following is an outline of procedures for you to follow when contracting with a client to erect and/or delineate a natal or progressed horoscope.

The majority of your potential clients undoubtedly will come under one of the following classes.

#### I. Natal Chart Analysis Procedures

These are the people who will approach you to engage your professional skills to erect and delineate their Natal Chart. You explain what they receive from you and how much your fee is. (The amounts listed are minimum fees arrived by us.) Although these proposed guidelines for fees can be lower, there is no ceiling. Depending on your own personal dedication and growth, your advanced quality of work may enable you to command higher fees.

Natal Chart Analysis, you take the following steps adhering to the procedures outlined in your lesson books:

- A. Erect the chart and insert the Natal Signs and Planetary positions with a corresponding explanation of the symbology involved.
- B. List the planetary aspects and an elemental chart.
- C. Delineate the impact of the Sun, Moon, and Ascendant Signs and the aspects of any planets involved. (Remember to concentrate on the major aspects yet considering the minor ones.)
- D. Delineate the Houses not covered in the Sun, Moon, and Ascendant.

E. Discuss the chart Rulership and Elemental Chart.

F. Summarize in a closing paragraph.

Our minimum suggested fee: \$35.00, \$10.00 upon getting birth information, \$25.00 when the client comes to see you or you go to see the client to discuss the typed delineation.

## II. Natal Chart Analysis and Corresponding Progression Procedures

A. Everything included in Group I.

B. Erect the Progressed Sign and Progressed Planetary positions.

C. List the:

1. The aspects formed between progressed planets themselves.

2. The aspects formed between Radix and Progressed Planets.

D. Delineate the Progressed Sun and Moon and Ascendant and the aspects involved. (Remember to concentrate on the 2nd group of aspects between Radix and Progressed Planets.)

E. Delineate the Progressed Chart Ruler.

F. Evaluate the implications within the Progressed Elemental Chart in a summary. Our minimum suggested fee for this type of Progressed Work is: \$60.00, \$30.00 down payment and \$30.00 at final conference.

## III. Compatibility Analysis Requests

These are generally couples who are in need of some advice on how to save a failing relationship or understand better a partially successful one. People may also seek this type of help as far as potential business associates, marriage, courtship or merely a friend is concerned. They may want to solve a fundamental domestic problem or just get some basic information. Whatever the situation may be, you proceed as follows:

A. Erect the Natal Sign and Planetary position for each client.

B. List the planetary aspects and elemental charts for both clients.

C. Delineate briefly the Sun, Moon and Ascendant Signs and aspects of each.

D. Make a detail comparison of both elemental charts. This will necessarily constitute the major part of the delineation as it is the specified area of concentration requested.

Our fee: \$50.00, \$20.00 down payment and \$30.00 at final conference.

IV. Those people who wish a certain question or set of questions answered.

Proceed as follows:

A. Erect the Natal Sign and Planetary positions with the corresponding explanation of the symbology involved.

B. Lift the planetary aspects and elemental chart.

C. Answer the question or set of questions in the summary paragraph. Our suggested fees: \$15.00 for Natal Chart erection I. above, and \$15.00 for each specific question.

As your experience factor increases in time you will realize what fee adjustments you will have to make based on your time availability. The quality of your delineation necessarily improves with practice so be patient with your development.

A FEW HELPFUL HINTS AND REMINDERS

One of the most frequent annoying flaws common to a number of astrologers is repetition. Verbosity within a delineation is a source of nuisance and boredom to a client. Once you have delineated something within a chart leave it alone. Sometimes a point repeated may be important enough to be repeated as it is repeated within the actual chart. Remember to explain any repetition of this kind to your client. Always concentrate on quality before quantity. The longest delineation in the world which merely rambles on and on can mean absolutely nothing to the shortest one which is concise and to the point.

PROFESSIONAL CONDUCT

The following are advisories for you in conducting yourself as a professional astrologer.

Stationery: Business cards and letterheads are important and absolutely necessary. Don't be frugal about this because it is your first introduction many times to a future client and creates a lasting impression.

Advertising: The very least (and a must) is to appear as soon as possible in the yellow pages of the phone book. This can be as inexpensive or as expensive as you wish. Local newspapers or bulletins are next best and after this you're on your own. You may indicate that you are a graduate of our School in your advertising if you wish. The School maintains and publishes an annual list of professional astrologers and teachers. If you wish to be on this list the charge is \$4.00 per year. (This should be remitted in an envelope marked Professional Listing, with your business address and phone number).

Fees: Do not go below the minimums established above. As you become experienced you can go higher. Some Astrologers receive as high as \$1500.00 for a delineated chart. However this is after considerable skill has developed over several years. Keep accurate records of your fees and be sure to pay all taxes on your income.

Office: If you cannot afford an attractive office don't open one until you can. You can always establish a separate room or area at your home to practice. It should be decorated and furnished in good taste with Astrological emphasis carefully avoiding any bizarre atmosphere. Partnership is excellent with other Astrologers or graduates from our School.

Ethics: As an alumnus of the school you will be an affiliated member of the Congress of Astrological Organizations and you will be expected to comply with the following Code Of Ethics adopted by that Congress To wit:

(1) Ethics: As an alumnus of the school you will be an affiliated member of the Congress of Astrological Organizations and you will be expected to comply with the following Code Of Ethics adopted by that Congress To wit:

(2) I agree to hold inviolate any confidences reposed in me by a client, or any confidential or private information obtained by me through astrological means in respect to a client, on the same basis of practice prescribed as ethical by physicians and attorneys.

(3) I agree not to discuss the horoscopes of individuals in public, nor to write about them for publication, except as (i) I am careful to give no possible clue to the actual identity of the native, or (ii) I have his permission in writing for the use of his horoscope in this matter, or (iii) I confine my observations to factors in his life which are commonly regarded as public property due to (a) the position he has attained in the arts, politics and other places of leadership, or to (b) his celebrity or notoriety in general.

(4) I agree to make a clear distinction at all times between the improper use of astrology as a form of fortune-telling, or a pretense of powers to predict specific future events with absolute certainty, and its proper use as a technique for determining the probabilities in human events, and to this end I agree further that:

A. If my conclusions are based on anything other than a horoscope calculated for a definite geographical location and an equally definite year, month, day and hour, I will indicate this fact and in general refrain from identifying anything else as a "horoscope." If I employ the "sunscope," "equilibrium chart," "solor chart," "natural chart," or any alternative methods of analysis, I will carefully explain my procedure, both to my client and in any public presentation of astrology.

B. If my conclusions are aided, strengthened or supplemented by any factors other than the examination of the astrological indications as such, I will indicate the nature of these, and be careful not to employ the term "astrology" except in reference to the strictly technical examination of the psychological factors provided by the horoscope and the various cycles of the heavenly bodies.

C. In view of the general public tendency to interpret the words "predict" and "prediction" as implying a claim of specific ability to forecast future events in the fortune-telling sense, I will avoid the use of these words without definite qualification, speaking rather of

"indications" or whatever other astrological language suggests "probability" in a truer scientific sense.

(5) I agree to make no use of astrology in connection with promotion schemes or business practices such as would be regarded as unethical in the field of medicine and law, and to refrain from employing membership or any office in the Congress of Astrological Organizations as an item of information or detail in formal advertising except as specifically permitted by the Congress through regulations published for all members, or through special permission in writing in any special case.

(6) I agree to employ no letters in connection with my name, to suggest or indicate academic or other degrees, except those representing actual degrees conferred by an institution of learning duly incorporated, chartered and authorized by law to confer such degrees.

(7) I agree to make every possible effort to contravene false or exaggerated representations of astrology, either by protesting directly to those responsible for such representations, or by reporting all facts and details at once to the Congress of Astrological Organizations for its action, or both.

Problems: Please send any question or problem which arises and you can't handle to the school for assistance. We are proud of our graduates and wish to help them anyway we can. If we can't answer your questions we will refer you to someone who can.

This course teaches you Numerology, Horary Astrology, Mundane (Stock Market) Astrology, Synastry, Relocation and other areas which you will be asked about as you practice Astrology. You will receive a more detailed letter about this with your diploma, license and certification.

**Conclusion: CONGRATULATIONS! YOU HAVE SUCCESSFULLY AND DILIGENTLY COMPLETED OUR PRESCRIBED AND ACCEPTED ESSENTIAL COURSE OF ASTROLOGICAL STUDY.**